

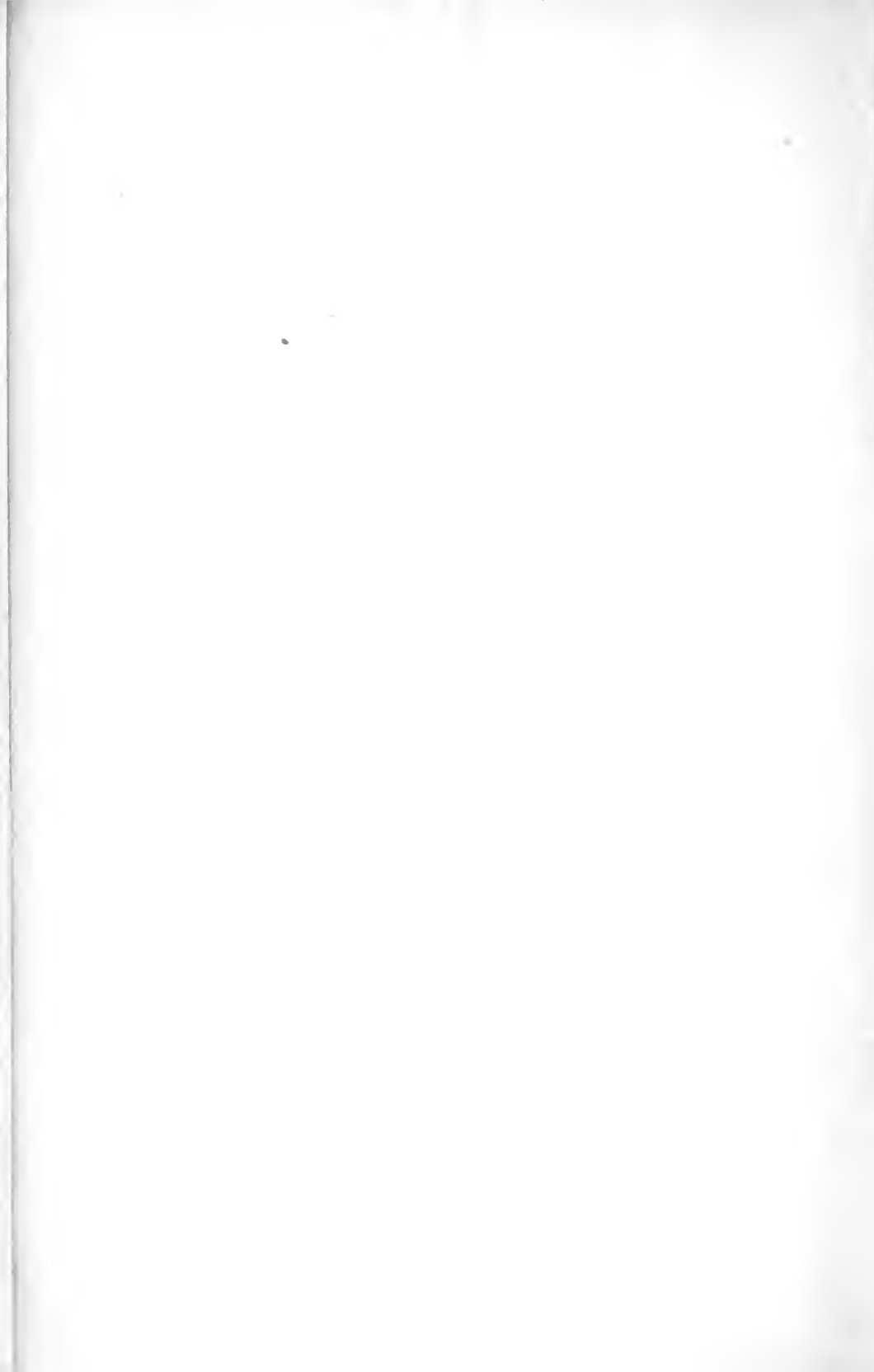
UC-NRLF



B 3 287 420

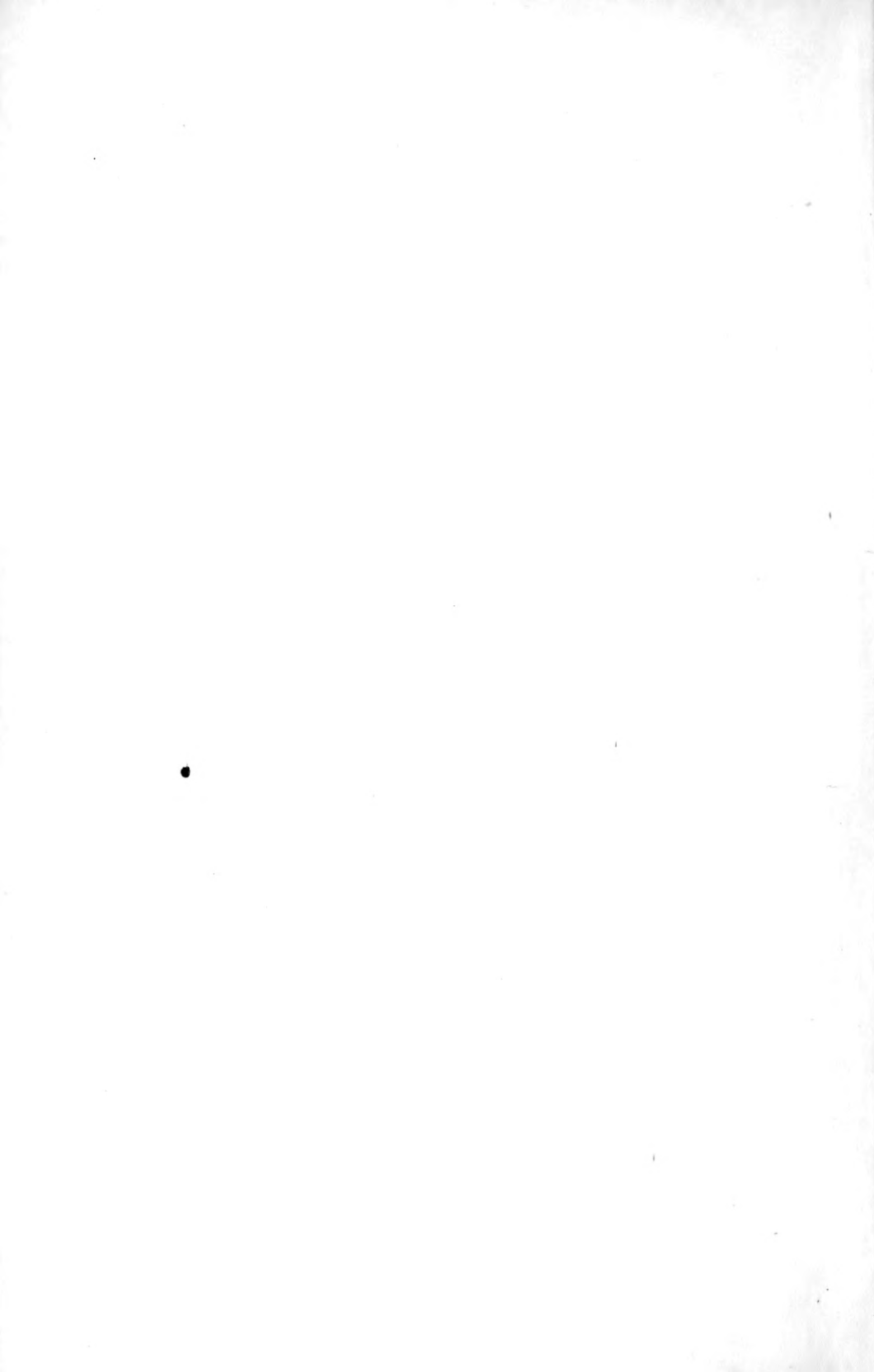
Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation











*INTRODUCTION TO ANGLO-SAXON.*

---

AN

ANGLO-SAXON READER,

WITH

PHILOLOGICAL NOTES, A BRIEF GRAMMAR,  
AND A VOCABULARY.

By FRANCIS A. MARCH, LL.D.,

PROFESSOR OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE AND COMPARATIVE PHILOLOGY IN LAFAYETTE COL-  
LEGE, AUTHOR OF "A COMPARATIVE GRAMMAR OF THE ANGLO-SAXON LANGUAGE,"  
"METHOD OF PHILOLOGICAL STUDY OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE," ETC.



NEW YORK:

HARPER & BROTHERS, PUBLISHERS,

FRANKLIN SQUARE.

1896.

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1870, by

FRANCIS A. MARCH,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Eastern District of  
Pennsylvania.

PE  
137  
137  
137  
137

## P R E F A C E.

---

It seems to be agreed that every English scholar ought to have some scholarly knowledge of the English language. Then every English scholar ought to study Anglo-Saxon. He ought to read representative passages in representative books of the literature thoroughly, dwelling on them line by line, and word by word, and making the text the foundation of general philological study. At least a daily lesson for one term ought to be given to this study in each of our colleges.

Enough such extracts for two terms' work are here given in a critical text. The notes contain, besides explanatory matter, outlines of the literature, biographical sketches of the authors, and bibliographical notices of manuscripts and editions. The author's Comparative Grammar opens with a history of the language, and illustrates the grammatical forms by those of the Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, Gothic, Old Saxon, Old Friesic, Old Norse, and Old-High German. It is part of the plan to give a full etymological vocabulary. Thus it is supposed that apparatus is provided for as thorough study of a portion of this tongue as can be given to Greek or Latin with our college text-books.

In this edition a brief grammar has been introduced, that it may be fitted for general use as an introduction to the study of Anglo-Saxon in High Schools and Academies where they might fear the Comparative Grammar. The etymological part of the Vocabulary is reserved for a future edition. It was thought best to make sure of the completeness of the list of words by working it over in class before giving it its final shape.

The selections were stereotyped, and the book and its plan announced in 1865.

F. A. M.

*Easton, Pa., June, 1870.*



# CONTENTS.

## I. READER.

| PROSE.                             |      |                               | PAGE |
|------------------------------------|------|-------------------------------|------|
| From the Gospels :                 |      | Alfred.....                   | 43   |
|                                    | PAGE | Ecgbyrht .....                | 44   |
| The Sower.....                     | 1    | Cnut.....                     | 45   |
| The Lord's Prayer.....             | 2    | Poets :                       |      |
| The Good Samaritan.....            | 3    | Orpheus.....                  | 46   |
| The Lord's Day .....               | 4    | Cædmon.....                   | 47   |
| The Sower.....                     | 5    |                               |      |
| Trnst in God .....                 | 6    | * POETRY.                     |      |
| The Prodigal Son.....              | 7    | The Traveler.....             | 51   |
| Love your Enemies .....            | 9    | Beowulf.....                  | 51   |
| Extract in Gothic.....             | 9    | Cædmon :                      |      |
| Dialogues of Callings :            |      | The First Day.....            | 52   |
| The Scholar.....                   | 13   | Satan's speech .....          | 52   |
| The Ploughman.....                 | 13   | The Exodus.....               | 54   |
| The Shepherd.....                  | 14   | Beowulf :                     |      |
| The Oxherd.....                    | 14   | A Good King .....             | 56   |
| The Hunter.....                    | 14   | Obsequies of Scyld.....       | 56   |
| The Fisher.....                    | 15   | Hrothgar and Heorot.....      | 57   |
| The Fowler.....                    | 16   | Grendel .....                 | 57   |
| The Merchant.....                  | 17   | Beowulf sails for Heorot..... | 58   |
| The Shoemaker.....                 | 18   | The Warden of the Shore.....  | 59   |
| The Salter.....                    | 18   | A Feast of Welcome .....      | 61   |
| The Baker.....                     | 18   | Good-night .....              | 62   |
| The Cook.....                      | 18   | Hunting, the Good Sword.....  | 62   |
| The Scholar.....                   | 19   | It fails at Need.....         | 63   |
| The Counsellor, Smith.....         | 19   | The Right Weapon .....        | 63   |
| The Scholar.....                   | 20   | Alfred's Meters of Boethius : |      |
| From the Anglo-Saxon Chronicle ... | 23   | Introduction .....            | 64   |
| Conversion of the Anglo-Saxons :   |      | Meter VI. ....                | 64   |
| Gregory .....                      | 35   | Meter X.....                  | 65   |
| Paulinus.....                      | 38   | Saws .....                    | 66   |
| Anglo-Saxon Laws :                 |      | Threnes .....                 | 68   |
| Æthelbirht.....                    | 41   | Deor's Complaint.....         | 69   |
| Hlothhere and Eadrie.....          | 42   | Rhyming Poem.....             | 70   |
| Iue .....                          | 42   |                               |      |

## NOTES,

CRITICAL, HISTORICAL, AND BIBLIOGRAPHICAL, pp. 71-93.

|                                    | PAGE   |                                     | PAGE   |
|------------------------------------|--------|-------------------------------------|--------|
| Outline of Anglo-Saxon Prose ..... | 83     | Outlines of Anglo-Saxon Poetry..... | 83     |
| Theological Writings:              |        | Ballad Epic:                        |        |
| Bible Translations .....           | 71     | Beowulf.....                        | 87     |
| Homilies of Ælfrie.....            | 75     | Bible Epic:                         |        |
| Philosophy:—Boethius.....          | 81     | Cædmon.....                         | 84, 85 |
| History:                           |        | Ecclesiastical Narrative.....       | 84     |
| The Chronicle.....                 | 73     | Secular Lyrics:                     |        |
| Beda.....                          | 75, 81 | The Traveler.....                   | 84     |
| Orosius.....                       | 83     | The Wanderer .....                  | 92     |
| St. Guthlāc.....                   | 83     | Deor's Complaint.....               | 92     |
| Law.....                           | 76-81  | Gnomie Verses.....                  | 91     |
| Alfred.....                        | 77     | Didactic:                           |        |
| Natural Science.....               | 83     | Alfred's Boethius.....              | 90     |
| Grammar:—Ælfrie .....              | 72     | Task Poem .....                     | 93     |

## II. GRAMMAR.

|                               |     |                                   |         |
|-------------------------------|-----|-----------------------------------|---------|
| Historical Introduction ..... | 95  | Participle.....                   | 121     |
| PHONOLOGY:                    |     | Potential.....                    | 122     |
| Alphabet .....                | 98  | Other periphrastic .....          | 122     |
| Punctuation.....              | 99  | Passive Voice .....               | 123     |
| Sounds.....                   | 99  | <i>Weak Verb.</i>                 |         |
| Accent.....                   | 100 | Active Voice.....                 | 125     |
| Vowel Variation.....          | 100 | Passive Voice.....                | 127     |
| ETYMOLOGY:                    |     | Varying Presents.....             | 127     |
| Nouns—Declension 1.....       | 102 | Syncopated Imperfects .....       | 128     |
| “    2.....                   | 105 | <i>Weak and Strong.</i>           |         |
| “    3.....                   | 106 | Umlaut in Present.....            | 129     |
| “    4.....                   | 106 | Assimilation in Present.....      | 129     |
| Proper Names .....            | 107 | Varying Imperfects .....          | 130     |
| Adjectives—Declension.....    | 108 | <i>Irregular Verbs.</i>           |         |
| Comparison .....              | 110 | Preteritives .....                | 130     |
| Pronouns.....                 | 112 | No connecting Vowel, <i>eom</i> , |         |
| Numerals.....                 | 114 | <i>dān, gān, etc.</i> .....       | 113     |
| Verb.....                     | 116 | SYNTAX.....                       | 133-141 |
| Conjugations.....             | 117 | PROSODY:                          |         |
| <i>Paradigms.</i>             |     | Rhythm, Feet, Verse.....          | 142     |
| <i>Strong Verb.</i>           |     | Cæsura, Rime, Alliteration....    | 143     |
| Indicative .....              | 118 | Common Narrative Verse.....       | 145     |
| Subjunctive.....              | 120 | Rhyming Verses.....               | 146     |
| Imperative.....               | 121 | Long Narrative Verse.....         | 147     |
| Infinitive .....              | 121 |                                   |         |

## III. VOCABULARY..... 143

|                |     |
|----------------|-----|
| Appendix ..... | 165 |
|----------------|-----|





# ANGLO-SAXON READER.

[In pages 1-12, accent the first syllable of every word, unless an acute accent is printed over some other syllable. Words not in the Vocabulary are in the notes. §§ refer to the Author's Grammar.]

## 1. THE SOWER.

Luke, viii., 5-8.—Sum man his sæd seôp : þā hē þæt seôp, sum feôl pið þone peg, and pearð fortred'en, and heofenes fugelās hit fræton. And sum feôl ofer þone stān, and hit forseranc', forþam' þe hit pætan næfde. And sum feôl on þā þornās, and þā þornās hit forþrys'môdon. And sum teôl on gôde eorðan, and porhte hundfealdne pæstm.

Mark iv., 3-9.—Ût eôde se sædere his sæd tō sāpenne, and þā hē seôp, sum feôl pið þone peg, and fugelās cōmon, and hit fræton. Sum feôl ofer stān'-scyl'ian, þær hit næfde mycele eorðan, and sōna up eôde, forþam' hit næfde eorðan þienesse. Þā hit up eôde, seôc sunne hit forspæl'de, and hit for-seranc', forþam' hit pyrtruman næfde.

1. *Sum*, a, § 136, 3, so English *some* in the plural; *man*, man, § 84; *his*, from *hē*, § 130; *sæd*, es, n., seed, acc. sing.; *seôp*, sowed, imp. ind., from *sāpan*, imp. *scôp*, *scôpon*, p. p. *sāpen*, conj. 5, § 208; *þā*, when; *þæt*, that, from *se*, § 133; *feôl*, fell, imp. ind. sing., 3d, from *feallan*, imp. *feôl*, *feôllon*, p. p. *feallen*, conj. 5, § 208; *pið þone weg*, along the way, § 359; *pearð fortred'en*, was trodden out, passive, imp. ind., sing., 3d., from *for-tredan*, imp. *træd*, *-trædon*, p. p. *-treden*, conj. 1, § 199, *for-*, Ger. *ver-*, § 254; *heofenes*, heaven's, from *heofon*, § 79; *fugelās*, fowls, from *fugol*, § 79; *hit*, it, from *hē*, § 130; *fr-æton*, ate up, imp. ind. pl., 3d, from *fr-etan*, imp. *-æt*, *-ætton*, p. p. *-eten*, conj. 1, § 199, *fr-* < *for-*, § 254; *ofer þone stān*, over the stone, on the rock; *for-seranc'*, shrank away, imp. ind. sing., 3d, from *for-serinean*, imp. *-seranc*, *-seruncon*, p. p. *seruncen*, conj. 1, § 201; *for-þam' þe*, for this that, because; *pætan*, wet, moisture, from *pæta*, n, m., § 35; *næfde*, had not, *ne-hæfde*, imp. of *habban*, §§ 45, 222; *on þā þornās*, among the thorns, *þorn*, es, m., § 341; *for-þrys'môdon*, choked out, from *for-þrysmian*, imp. *-þrysmode*, p. p., *þrysmôl*, conj. 6; *gôde eorðan*, good earth, sing. acc.; *porhte*, worked, produced, imp. sing., 3d, from *pyrcan*, imp. *porhte*, *porhton*, p. p. *geporht*, conj. 6, § 211; *hundfealdne pæstm*, hundred-fold fruit, *hundfeald*, adj., strong form, § 103.

*Ût eôde*, out yode, went forth, irreg. imp. of *gân*, § 208; *se sædere*, the sower, *sædere*, s, m.; *sæd*, es, n.; *tō sāpenne*, to sow, gerund, §§ 173, 175, from *sāpan*, conj. 5, § 208, 2, to denote purpose, § 454; *cōmon*, came, *cuman*, imp. com, *cōmon*, p. p. *cumen*, conj. 1, § 200; *fugelās*, *fr-æton*, see above; *stān-scyl'ian*, stone-shelly place, *stān-scyl'i-e*, -an, f.; *mycele*, much, f. sing. acc. from *mycel*, § 104; *sōna up eôde*, soon up yode (sprang); *þienesse*, sing. acc. from *þienes*, se, f., thickness; *seôc sunne*, *seô*, fem., from *se*; *hit for-spæl'de*, swealed it away, parched it, *spælan*, imp. *spælde*, conj. 6; *for-seranc*, see above; *pyrtruman*, root, *pyrt*, wort,

And sum <sup>certain</sup>feól on þornás; þá stigon þá þornás, and forþrys' mōdon þæt, and hit pæstm ne bær.

And sum feól on gōd land, and hit sealde, up stigende and pexende, pæstm; and ān brohte þrýtigfealdne, sum syxtigfealdne, sum hundfealdne.

Gehýr'e, se þe eáran hæbbe tō gehýr'anne.

## 2. LORD'S PRAYER.

Matthew, vi., 9-13.—Fæder ūre, þū þe eart on heofenum, sī þīn nama gehál'gōd. Tō be-cum'e þīn rice. Gepeord'e þīn pylla on eorðan spā spā on heofenum. Ūrne dæg'hpamlic'an hlāf syle ūs tō dæg. And forgyf' ūs ūre gyltās, spā spā pē forgyf'ad ūrum gyltendum. And ne gelēd' þū ūs on costnunge, ac ālŷs' ūs of yfle. Sōðlice.

Luke xi., 2-4.—Ūre Fæder, þū þe on heofene eart, sī þīn nama gehál'gōd. Tō cume þīn rice. Gepeord'e þīn pylla on heofene and on eorðan. Syle ūs tō dæg ūrne dæg'hpamlic'an hlāf. And forgyf' ūs ūre gyltās, spā pē forgyf'ad æleum þāērā þe pið ūs āgylt'. And ne lēd þū ūs on costnunge; ac ālŷs' ūs fram yfele.

plant, *truma*, *n*, m., trimmer, strengthener; *stigon*, stied, ascended, *stigan*, imp. *stāh*, *stigon*, p. p. *stigen*, conj. 2, § 205; *þornás*, *forþrysmōdon*, *pæstm*, see above; *bær*, bore, *beran*, imp. *bær*, *bæron*, p. p. *beren*, conj. 1, § 199; *sealde* (sold), gave, *sellan*, imp. *sealde*, conj. 6, § 269, *b*; *stigende* (styng), springing, p. pr., neut. sing., nom., from *stigan*, conj. 2, § 119, *a*; *pe-xende*, from *pecan*=*peaxan*, wax, grow, imp. *p(e)ōx*, *p(e)ōxon*, p. p. *pexen*, conj. 4; *ān*, one, some; *brohte*, brought, bore, *bengan*, imp. *brohte*, p. p. *broht*, conj. 6, § 209, *c*; *þrýtigfealdne*, thirty-fold, from *þrýtigfeald*, adj., m. sing. acc., with *pæstm*. *Ge-hýr'e*, let him hear, subjunctive for imperat., § 421, 3, *ge-hýr'an*, imp. *ge-hýrde*, p. p. *ge-hýrde*, conj. 6; *se þe*, who, demon, *se* with relative sign *þe*, § 380, 3; *hæbbe*, subj. pres. of *habban*, §§ 169, 427; *tō ge-hýr'anne*, to hear, gerund, § 452.

2. *Fæder*, father, sing. voc., §§ 87, 100; *ūre*, of us, our, plur. gen. of *ic*, § 150; *þū þe*, who, *þū*, thou, sing. nom., § 130, *þe* relative sign changing *þū* to a relative, §§ 134, 381, 2; *eart*, from *com*, § 213; *heofenum*, heavens, pl. dat. of *heofon*; *sī gehál'gōd*, be hallowed, passive, subj. pres. sing., 3d, from *hālgian*, conj. 6, §§ 179, 187, subj. for imperative, § 421, 3; *Tō be-cume*, let come to us, subj., 3d, for imperative, *cuman*, imp. *com*, *cōmon*, p. p. *cumen*, conj. 1, § 200; *þīn rice*, thy reign, compare *-rie* in *bishopric*; *gepeord'e*, subj. for imperative from *ge-peordan*, imp. *-peard*, *-purdan*, p. p. *porden*, Ger. *werden*, Old Engl. *worth*, be, be done; *eorðan*, sing. dat., from *eorde*; *spā spā*, so so, as; *ūrne*, pron., poss. sing., acc. masc., from *ūre*, § 132; *dæg'hpamlic'an*, weak, sing. acc. masc., from *dægþamlic*, daily, §§ 105, 109; *hlāf*, loaf, bread; *syle*>sell, give, imperat., from *sýllan*=*sellan*, conj. 6, § 188, *b*; *ūs*, pl. dat., from *ic*, § 297; *tō dæg*, to day, *tō*, prep., at, on, *dæg*, day, sing. acc. after *tō*, *tō þissum dæge* (on this day) has the same sense, § 352; *and*, general sign of connected discourse, § 463; *for-gyf'*, imperat., from *for-gifan*, conj. 1, § 199, *for-*, § 254; *gyltās*, debts, guilt, pl. acc., from *gylt*; *pē*, we, from *ic*, § 130; *ūrum gyltendum*, our debtors, pl. dat. after *for-gyf'ad*, § 297, *gyltend*, *es*, m.; *gelēd'*, pres. imperative, from *gelēdan*, § 185; *costnunge*, sing. acc., from *costnung*, *c*, *f*, temptation; *ā-lŷs'*, imperat., from *ā-lŷsan*, loose, release; *of*, from *yfle*, sing. dat., from *yfel*, §§ 79, 391, 395, 348; *sōðlice*, soothly, amen, interj.; *þārd*, of those, pl. gen of *se*, § 133; *āgytt*, is indebted, ind. sing., from *ā-gylltan*, imp. *-gytte*, p. p. *-gytt*, § 192.

## 3. THE GOOD SAMARITAN.

Luke, x, 25-37.—Pā ārās' sum ægleāp man, and fandōde his, and epæd: Lāreōp, hpæt dō ic þæt ic ēce lif hæbbe? Pā epæd hē tō him: Hpæt ys geprit'en on þære æ? hū rætst þū? Pā and'sparō'de hē: Lufā Dryhten þinne God of ealre þinre heortan, and of ealre þinre sāple, and of eallum þinum mihtum, and of eallum þinum mægene; and þinne nēhstan spā þē sylfne. Pā epæd hē: Ryhte þū and'sparō'dest: dō þæt, þonne lyfāst þū. Pā epæd hē tō þam Hælend, and polde hine sylfne geriht'pīsan: And hpyle ys mīn nēhsta? Pā epæd se Hælend, hine up be-seōnd'e: Sum man fērde fram Hier'usal'em tō Hiericho, and becom' on þā sceadān, þā hine bereāf'edon, and tintregōdon hine, and forlēt'on hine sām-cuc'ene. Pā gebyr'ede hyt þæt sum sacerd fērde on þam ylcan pege; and þā hē þæt geseah', hē hine for-beāh'. And ealspā se diācon, þā hē pæs pið þā stōpe, and þæt geseah', hē hyne eac forbeāh'. Pā fērde sum Samar'itān'isc man pið hine: þā hē hine geseah', þā pearð hē mid mild'-heort'nysse ofer hine āstyr'ed. Pā geneā'lēhte hē, and prād his pundā, and

3. *Ā-rās'*, arose, *ā-rīs'an*, imperf. *-rās'*, *-rīs'on*, p. p. *-rīs'en*, conj. 2, *æ-gleāp*, law-clever; *fandōde*, tried, examined, *fandian*, imperf. *fandōde*, p. p. *fandōd*, akin to *fandan*, find; *his*, genitive after *fandōde*, § 315, III.: *epæd*, quoth, *epedan*, imperf. *epæd*, *epædon*, p. p. *epeden*, conj. 1, § 197; *lāreōp*, teacher, from *lār*, lore; *dō*, shall do, subj. pres. sing., 1st, from *dōn*, imperf. *dide*, p. p. *dōn*, irreg., § 213; *ē-ce* (for *aye*), everlasting; *hæbbe*, subj. pres.: *ys=is*; *ge-prit'an*, imperf. *ge-prāt'*, *ge-prit'on*, p. p. *ge-prit'en*, conj. 2; *æ*, law, f. ind., § 100; *rætst*, readest, *rædan*, imperf. *rædde*, p. p. *ræded*, *ræd*, conj. 6, *rædest* > *rætst*, irreg. like *bintst*, § 192; *lufā*, impera. of *lufian*; *of*, out of, from, with dative of source; *nēhsta*, n, m., superlative of *neah*, highest one, neighbor; *þē*, acc. of *þū*; *sylf*, self, declined like an adjective, § 131; *ryhte*, adv., =right; *dō*, imperat.; *þonne*, then; *lyfāst*, pres. for fut., from *lifian*, conj. 6, §§ 222, 413, 4. *Hælend*, Savior, healing one; *polde*, would, *pillan*; *ge-riht'-pīs-ian*, justify, conj. 6; *riht-pīs*, wise in right, Engl. righteous; *hpyle*, which, who = *hpā-līc*, Latin *qualis*; *hine up be-seōnd'e*, looking up at him, a translation of Latin *suspiciens*, which some copies have for *suscipiens*; *seōnde*, p. pr., from *scōn*, imperf. *seah*, *sægon*, p. p. *ge-sep'en*, conj., §§ 197, 199; *fērde* > *fēran*, fare, go; *Hier'usal'em*, es, m., but here dative undeclined; *Hiericho*, acc., undeclined; *be-com'*, came, *becum'an*; *on þā sceadān*, among the thieves (those who seathe), § 341, II.; *be-reāf'edon*, bereft, stript, *be-reāf'ian*, imperf. *-reāf'ede*, p. p. *-reāf'ed*, conj. 6; *tintregōdon*, tormented, *tintreg-ian*, imperf. *-ōde*, p. p. *-ōd*, conj. 6; *for-lēt'on*, left, *for-lāt'an*, imperf. *-lēt'*, *-lēt'on*, p. p. *-lāt'en*, conj. 5, *for*, Ger. *ver-*, as in *for-sake*, *for-bid*, § 254; *sām-cucene* (semi-quick), *cucene* for *cucenne*, acc. of *cucen* = *epicen*, §§ 144, 119, c; *gebyr'ede hyt*, it was brought about, *ge-byr'ian*, imperf. *-byr'ede*, p. p. *byr'ed*, conj. 6, akin to *beran*, bear, *hyt*, bad spelling for *hit*; *sacerd*, es, m., priest, from Latin *sacerdos*, akin to *sacerd*, *sacerdotal*; *fērde*, *fēran*, conj. 6; *ylcan*, same, weak decl., § 133, 3; *ge-seah'*, saw, *ge-seōn'*, imperf. *-seah'*, *-sæg'on*, p. p. *-sep'en*, conj. 1, § 199; *hine for-beāh'*, turned away from him, *for-būg'an*, imperf. *-beāh'*, *-bug'on*, p. p. *-bug'en*, conj. 3, Engl. bow; *eal-spā*, all so, also; *diācon*, es, m., deacon, Levite; *hē*, repeated subject, § 287; *hine=hine*, bad spelling; *ēac*, Ger. *auch*, Engl. *ake*, also; *pið* (with), beside; *þā* . . . *þā*, when . . . then; *pearð ā-styr'ed*, imperf. passive *ā-styr'ian*, imperf. *-styr'ede*, p. p. *-styr'ed*, stir, conj. 6; *mild'-heortnys*, sc, f. (mild-heartedness), compassion; *geneā'lēhte*, drew nigh, *ge-neā'-læcan*, imperf. *-læhte*, p. p. *-læht*, conj. 6; *prād*, bound up, *prāt'an*, wreath, imperf. *prāt*, *pridon*, p. p. *priden*,

on-âgeát' ele and pin, and hine on his nýten âset'te, and gelâd'de on his lâce-hûs, and hine gelâc'nôde, and brohte ôðrum dæge tpegen penegás, and sealde þam lâce, and þus epæd: Begým' hys; and spá-hpæt-spá þû mære tó ge-dêst', þonne ic cume, ic hit forgyld'e þê. Hpyle þêrâ þreórâ þyncd þê þæt sig þæs mæg þe on þâ sceadum befeól? Þá epæd hê: Se þe hym mild-heortnysse on dyde. Þá epæd se Hâlend: Gâ, and dô ealspâ.

#### 4. THE LORD'S DAY.

Matthew, xii., 1-13.—Se Hâlend fôr on reste-dæg ofer æcerás; sôðlice his leorning-enihtás hingrede, and hig ongun'non pluccian þâ ear and etan. Sôðlice þâ þâ sundor-hálgan þæt ge-sáp'on, hi epædon tó him: Nû þine leorning-enihtás dôð þæt him âlþ'fed nis reste-dagum tó dônne. And hê epæd tó him: Ne rædde gê hpæt Dauid dyde þâ hine hingrede, and þâ þe mid him pæron, hû hê in-eó'de on Godes hûs, and æt þâ offring-hláfás þe næron him âlþ'fede tó etanne, ne þâm þe mid him pæron, búton þâm sacerðum ánum? Oððe ne rædde gê on þære æ, þæt þâ sacerðás on reste-dagum on þam temple gepem'mað þone reste-dæg, and

conj. 6, § 205; *pund*, e, f., wound; *on âgeát'*, poured in, *â-geót'an*, imperf. -geát', -gut'on, p. p. -nut'en, conj. 3, akin to *gush*, *guzzle*; *nýten*, beast, akin to *neat*; *â-set'te*, set, *âsett'an*, conj. 6; *lâce-hûs*, es, n., leech house, hospital, hotel; *ge-lâc'nôde* (leech'd), doctored, *ge-lâc'nian*, imperf. -lâc'nôde, p. p. *lâc'nôd*; *brohte* < *bregnan*, conj. 6, § 209; *ôðrum* < *ôðer*, other, second, next, dative of time, § 304; *penegás*, *peneg*, es, m., penny, stamped money, akin to *paven*, Latin *pannus*; *sealde* < *sellan*, conj. 6, § 209; *lâce*, s, m., leech; *epæd*, quoth, < *epedan*, conj. 1; *begým'*, imperat. *be-gým'an*, imperf. -gým'ðe, p. p. -gým'ed, conj. 6; *hys*, bad spelling for *his*, genitive after *begým*, § 315; *mære*, neuter acc. with *spá-hpæt-spá*; *tó ge-dêst'*, doest to him, *ge-dôn't*, irreg. § 213; *cume*, *forgyld'e*, pres. for future, § 413; *þyncd*, seemeth, *þyncan*, imperf. *þuhte*, p. p. *geþuht'*, conj. 6, § 211; *þæt*, that, conjunction; *sig* for *sî*, may be < *con*; *þæs mæg*, the kinsman of him; *þe*, that, who; *mild-heortnysse*, acc., see above; *on dyde*, did, showed, from *dôn*. *Gâ*, go, *gân*, irreg., imperf. *eôde*, p. p. *gân*, § 213; *dô* < *dôn*, § 213; *eal-spâ*, all so, likewise.

4. *Fôr* < *faran*, imperf. *fôr*, *fôron*, p. p. *faren*, conj. 4, fare, go, in fare-well; *reste-dæg*, es, m., rest-day, dative irreg., § 71; *æcerás* < *æcer*, acre, Lat. *ager*, Gr. *ἀγρός*, Ger. *acker*, field; *leorning-enihtás*, learning knights, disciples, Ger. *knecht*, servant, -enih't, es, m.; *hingred*, it hungered, impersonal imperf. of *hingrian* (*y* > *i*), conj. 6, governing the acc. of the persons hungering, § 290, c; *on-gun'non*, imperf. of *on-ginn'an*, conj. 1; *pluccian*, pluck, imperf. *pluccole*, p. p. *pluccól*, from Romanic *piluccare*, Lat. *pilus*, hair; *ear*, es, n., ear; *þâ þâ*, when the; *sundor-hálgan*, n, m. (sundered holy), Pharisees; *ge-sáp'on* < *ge-scôn'*, -seah't, -sáp'on, p. p. *sep'en*, conj. 1; *epædon* < *epedan*, § 197; *dôð* < *dôn*, irreg., § 213; *þæt*, what; *nis* = *ne + is*, § 213; *tó dônne*, gerund < *dôn*; *Ne rædde gê*, read ye not, *ræðan*, read, imperf. *ræð'de*, conj. 6, *rædde* for *ræddon* before the subject, § 170; *pæron*, § 213; *in-eó'de*, in yode, entered, irreg., from *in-gân'*, § 213; *æt* < *etan*: *offring-hláf*, es, m., offering-loaves, show-bread; *næron* = *ne + pæron*, were not, § 213; *sacerðum*, plur. dat. *sacerd*, es, m. < Lat. *sacerdōs*, priest, akin to sacred, sacerdotal: *ánum* < *án*, alone; *æ*, f. indec., law; *ge-pem'man*, pro-

synd bûton leahre? Ic secge sôðlice eôp þæt þes is mærra þonne þæt templ. Gif gē sôðlice piston hpæt is, Ic wille mild-heortnesse and nā on-sægd'nesse, ne genid'rāde gē æfre un'seyldig'e. Sôðlice mannes sunu is eac reste-dages hlāford.

9. Pā se Hælend þanon fôr, hē com in tō heorā gesom'nunge; pā pæs þær ān man se hæfde fôr-serune'ene hand. And hig æsôdon hine, þus cpeðende: Is hit ālȳf'ed tō hælanne on reste-dagum? þæt hig prehton hine.

Hē sâde him sôðlice: Hpyle man is of eôp, þe hæbbe ān secāp, and gif þæt āfȳlt' reste-dagum on pyt, hū ne nimd hē þæt, and hefð hit up? Ditodlice mielē mā man is secāpe betera; pitodlice hit is ālȳf'ed on reste-dagum pel tō dōnne. Pā epæð hē tō þam men: Åpen'e þine hand. And hē hī āpen'ede; and heô pæs hāl gepord'en spā seô ôðer.

## 5. THE SOWER.

Matthew, xiii., 4-8.—Sôðlice, út eôde se sêdere his sâd tō sâpenne; and þā-þā hē seôp, sume hig feôllon pið peg, and fuglās cōmon and æton þā.

Sôðlice sume feôllon on stānihte, þær hit næfde mycle eorðan, and hræðlice up sprungon, fôr-þam'-þe hig næfdon þære eorðan

fane, imperf. -pen'de, p. p. -penn'ed, conj. 6; *synd* < *com*, § 213; *leahre*, dative from *leahor*, es, m., blame, crime; *þes*, this man; *mærra*, adj. comp. masc.=*māra* (more), greater; *templ* = *tempel*, § 73, 6; *piston*, irreg. < *pitan*, know, Engl. wit, wist, § 212; *mild-heortnesse*, se, f., mercy; *on-sægd'nesse*, se, f., sacrifice, akin to *say*, as that which is vowed, dedicated; *ge-nid'rāde*, imperf. subj. plur. -de for -don before *gē*, § 170, *ge-nid'rian*, imperf. -nid'rāde, p. p. *nid'rād*, conj. 6, humiliate, condemn, from *nider*, nether, beneath; *un'seyldige*, adj. plur., the guiltless, *seyldig*, Ger. *schuldig*, akin to *shall*, owe, § 212; *hlāf-ord*, es, m., lord, loaf-master, -ord akin to Ger. *wirth*, Fries. *werda*, host, housekeeper; *com* < *geuman*; *ge-som'nung* = *ge-sam'nung*, assembly, akin to *sam*, same; *fôr-serune'an*, imperf. -seranc', -serune'on, p. p. -serune'en, shrunken away; *hig* < *hi*, they; *tō hælanne*, gerund from *hælan*, imperf. *hælede*, p. p. *hæled*, heal, akin to *hāl*, hale, whole; *prehton*, subj. imperf. from *preccan*, attack, conj. 6, § 209, akin to *wreak*; *sâde* < *secan*, imperf. *sægdē* > *sæde*, p. p. *sægd*, *sæd*, conj. 6, § 209; *āfȳld'*, fallet, pres., *ā-feall'an*, imperf. -feôll', -feôll'on, p. p. -feall'en, conj. 5, § 208; *pyt*, as, m., pit, from Lat. *put-cus*; *hā*, inter. sign, § 397, b; *nimd* < *niman*, take; *hefð*, heaveth, *hebban*, § 207; *pitodlice*, verily, so then; *mielē mā*, more by much, § 302, d; *secāpe*, dat. after comp. *betera*, § 303; *men*, dat. of *man*, § 84; *ā-pen'e*, stretch forth, *ā-pen'ian*, imperf. -pen'ede, conj. 6, akin to Lat. *tendo*; *hī*, acc. sing. fem. of *he*, § 130; *ge-pord'en*, p. p. from *gepord'an*.

5. For unexplained words, see pp. 1-2.—*Sôðlice* (soothly), truly, lo! interj.; *þā-þā* (then when), when; *hig*=*hi*, *g*, dissimilated, § 27; *sume hig*, some they fell=some of them fell, appositive for partitive, § 287, c; *þā*, them, plur. acc. from *se*; *sôðlice*, and, but, general connective, § 463, 8; *stānihte*, acc. sing. *stāniht*, e, f., stony ground; *þær hit næfde*, where it had not, careless for *hig næfdon*, *sæd* might be either sing. or plur.; *hræðlice*, quickly, akin to Engl. *rath*, rather; *sprungon*, sprang, *springan*, imperf. *sprang*, *sprungon*, p. p.

dýpan: sóðlice, up ásprung'enre sunnan, hig ádrup'edon and forserunc'on, for-þam'-þe hig næfdon pyrtrum:

Sóðlice sume feóllon on þornás, and þá þornás peóxon and forþrys'módon þá:

Sume sóðlice feóllon on góðe eorðan, and sealdon pæstm, sum; hundfealdne, sum syxtigfealdne, sum þrittigfealdne.

## 6. TRUST IN GOD.

Matthew, vi., 26-33.—Beheald'ad beofenan fuglās: forþam'þe hig ne sápað, ne hig ne rípað, ne hig ne gaderiað on berne; and eóper heofonlice Fæder hig fêð. Hú ne synd gê sêlran þonne hig? Hpyle eóper mæg sóðlice gepenc'an þæt hê ge-eác'nige áne elne tó his anlicnesse?

And tó hpi synd gê ymb'-hýð'ige be reáf? Besceáp'iað æceres lilian, hú hig peaxað; ne spineað hig, ne hig ne spinnað: ie seege eóp sóðlice, Pæt furðon Salomon on eallum hys puldre næs oferprig'en spá spá ún of þysum.

Sóðlice, gif æceres peód, þæt þe tó dæg ys, and byð tó morgen on ofen ásend', God spá scrýt, ealá gê gehpáð'es ge-leáf'an, þam myelê má hê scrýt eóp.

Nellen gê eornostlice beón ymb'-hýð'ige, þus cpeðende, Hpæt ete pê? oððe hpæt drince pê? oððe mid hþam beó pê oferprig'ene? Sóðlice ealle þas þing beóðá sêcað: pitodlice, eóper Fæder pát þæt gê ealrâ þyssá þingá beþurf'on.

Eornostlice sêcað árest Godes rice and his riht'pis'nesse, and ealle þas þing eóp beóð þærto ge-eác'nóde.

*sprungen*, conj. 1; *dýpan*, n, m. acc., depth: *á-sprung'enre*, p. p. sing., f., dat. absolute from *áspring'an*, conj. 1, the sun having (-sprung up) risen, § 304, d; *ádrup'edon*, dried, *á-drup'-ian*, imp. -ede, -edon, p. p. -ed, conj. 6; *pyrtrum*, es, m.=*pyrtruma*, see page 1.

6. *for-þam'-þe*, for this that, for; *sápan*, sow, imp. s.óp, scópon, p. p. *sápen*, conj. 5; *ne ne*, emphatic, § 400; *rípan*, reap, imp. *ráp*, *rípan*, p. p. *rípen*, conj. 2; *berne*, es, n., barn, <*ber-cern*, barley house, § 229: some texts read *ber-cern*, acc. plur. like the Greek; *fêð*<*fêðed*, § 194, 36, 5; *synd*=*sind*, from *com*, § 213; *sêlran*<*sêl*, §§ 123, 125; *eóper*, §§ 130, 312; *mæg gepenc'an*, § 176. *ge-eác'nian*, imp. -ode, p. p. -od, conj. 6, add. eke, -ige, subj., §§ 184, 425; *eln*, c. f., Lat. *ulna*, ell; *anlicnes*, sc. f., likeness, stature: *tó hpi*, to what end, wherefore, § 552, IV., 135; *ymb'-hýð'ig*, adj., anxious about, worried: *be-sceáp'ian*, imp. -ode, p. p. -od, behold (*seáp*>*show*), conj. 6; *lili-e*, -an, f., lily; *spinean*, imp. *spæc*, *spuncon*, p. p. *spuncon*, conj. 1, Old Engl. swink, toil; *spinnan*, spin, imp. *span*, *spunnon*, p. p. *spunnen*, conj. 1, § 201; *oferprig'an*, imp. -práh', -prig'on, p. p. -prig'en, conj. 2, § 206, cover over, dress (rig); *peód*, es, n., weed; *þæt þe*, that that, which, § 380; *ásend'*, p. p., § 190; *scrýt*<*scrýðan*, §§ 192, 36, 5, akin to *shroud*; *gehpáð'e*, adj., little; *þam myelê má*, more by much than that, §§ 303, 302, d; *ete*<*etad*, § 165; *þingá*, gen., § 317, b; *riht'pis'nes*, sc. f., righteousness; *ge-eác'nian*, conj. 6, add. see over.

## 7. THE PRODIGAL SON.

Luke, xv., 11-32.—11. Sôðlice sum man hæfde tpegen suna.

12. Pâ cpæð se gingra tō his fæder, Fæder, syle mē minne dæl minre æhte þe mē tō gebyr'ed. Pâ dæðde hē hym hys æhte.

13. Pâ, æfter feāpa dagum, ealle his þing gegad'erōðe se gingra sunu, and fērde prælice on feorlen rice, and forspil'ðe þar his æhtā, lybbende on his gælsan.

14. Pâ hē hig hæfde ealle āmyrr'ede, þa pearð mycel hunger on þam rice; and hē pearð pæðla.

15. Pâ fērde hē and folgōde ānum burh'-sitt'endum men þæs rices: þa sende hē hine tō his tūne, þæt hē heōlde hys spyn.

16. Pâ gepil'nōðe hē his pambe

gecfill'an of þām beān'-codd'um þe þa spyn æton; and him man ne sealde.

17. Pâ beþoh'te hē hine, and cpæð, Ealā hū fela yrdlingā on mīnes fæder hūse hlāf genōh'ne habbað, and ic hēr on hungre forpeord'te!

18. Ic ārīs'e, and ic fare tō mīnum fæder, and ic seege him,

19. Ealā fæder, ic syngōde on heofenās, and befor'an þē, nū ic neom pyrde þæt ic beō þīn sunu nemmed: dō mē spā ænne of þīnum yrdlingum.

20. And hē ārās' þā, and com tō his fæder. And þa gyt, þa hē pæs feor, his fæder hē hyn-geseah', and pearð mid mild'-heort'nesse āstyr'ed, and agēn'

12. *gingra*, comparative of *geong*, young, § 124; *æhte*, akin to *āgan*>Engl. *owe*, *own*; *ge-byr'ed*, from *ge-byr'ian*, imp. *ge-byr'ede*, p. p. *ge-byr'ed*, conj. 6, be-falleth, akin to *bear*, *is borne*; *dæðde*, dealt; *hym*, *hys*, bad spelling for *him*, *his*.

13. —*feāpa*, few, here undeclined, dat. plur., *feāpum*, *feāum*, *feām*, are the common forms; *gegað'erian*, imp. *gegað'erōde*, p. p. *gegað'erōd*, conj. 6, gather; *præ-lice*, adv., exile-like, abroad, akin to *wreth*; *feor-len*, adj., far; *rice*, Engl. *-rie*, Ger. *reich*; *for-spill'an*, spill away, destroy, imp. *spill'æ*, p. p. *-spill'ed*, conj. 6; *lybbende*, bad spelling for *libbende*, living; *gælsan*, riotousness, luxury, Ger. *geil-heit*, akin to Engl. *gala*, *gælsa*, n, m.

14. —*hig*<*hi*, plur. of *hē*, them; *ā-myrr'an*, imp. *-myrr'ede*, p. p. *-myrr'ed*, destroy, dissipate, akin to Engl. *mar*; *pearð*<*peordan*; *hunger*, es, m.; *pæðla*, n, m., pauper, vagabond, akin to *padan*, go about>wade, waddle.

15. —*burh'-sitt'endum*, borough-sitting, dat. sing. from *burh'-sitt'ende*, adj.; *men*, dat. sing. of *man*, § 84; *tūne*, dat., § 352 (town), inclosure; *healdan*, imp. *heōld*, *heōldon*, p. p.

*healden*, conj. 5, *heōlde*, subj. imp., might (hold) keep; *hys spyn* (*y*, *ȝ* for *i*, *ȝ*).

16. —*pambe*, e, f., Engl. *comb*, belly; *beān'-cod*, *des*, m., bean cod, husk; *man*, (indefinite) one, § 136, 2; *sealde*<*sellan*.

17. —*beþoh'te*, bethought, *be-pene'an*, imp. *-þoh'te*, p. p. *-þoh't*, conj. 6, § 209; *hine*, himself, § 131; *fela*, many, indecl., Ger. *viel*, Gr. *πολις*, akin to *full*; *yrdlingā*, gen. plur. par-titive, Engl. *earthling*; *hlāf*>*loaf*; *genōh'ne*, acc. sing. of *ge-nōh*, adj., enough; *hunger*, see over; *forpeord'an*, be away, perish, imp. *-pearð*, *-purā'on*, p. p. *-pord'en*, conj. 1, Ger. *werden*, O. E. *worth*, *for*, Ger. *ver*., as in *for-sake*, § 254.

18. —*ārīs'e*, pres. for future, § 413.

19. —*syng-ian*, sin, imp. *-ōde*, p. p. *-ōd*, conj. 6, imp. for perf., § 414; *neom=ne+com*, am not, § 213; *pyrde*, worthy; *dō*, imperat. of *dōn*, do, make; *mē*, acc.

20. —*ārās'*, *ārīs'an*; *þā*, then; *com*, from *cuman*; and then yet, when; *feor*, prep., far from, § 336; *hē*, § 288, b; *hyn*, bad spelling for *hine*; *geseah'*<*geseōn*; *pearð*<*peordan*; *ā-styr'-ian*, imp. *-ōde*, p. p. *-ēd*, conj. 6, stirred; *mild'-heort'nes*, se, f., mild heart, compassion;

hine ærn, and hine beclyp'te, and cyste hine.

21. Pā epæð his sunu, Fæder, ic syngōde on heofen, and befor'an þē, nū ic ne eom pyrðe þæt ic þīn sunu beō genem'ned.

22. Pā epæð se fæder tō his þeōpum, Bringað rade þone sēlestan gegyr'elan, and scrýdað hine; and syllað him hring on his hand, and gescýf' tō his fōtum;

23. And bringað ān fæt styrie, and ofsleað; and uton etan, and gepist'full'ian :

24. forþam' þes mīn sunu pæs deað, and hē ge-ed'eucōde; hē forpearð', and hē ys gemēt'. Pā ongun'non hig gepist'læc'an.

25. Sōðlice his yldra sunu pæs on æcere; and hē com; and þā hē þam hūse geneā'læh'te, hē gehýr'de þone spæg and þæt pered.

26. Pā clypōde hē ænne þeōp, and æcsōde hine hþæt þæt pære.

27. Pā epæð hē, Þin brōðer com, and þīn fæder ofslōh' ān fæt cealf; forþam' þe hē hine hālne onfēng'.

28. Pā gebealh' hē hine, and nolde in gān': þā eōde his fæder út, and ongan' hine biddan.

29. Pā epæð hē, his fæder and'spariend'e, Efne, spā fela gearā ic þē þeōpōde, and ic næfre þīn gebod' ne forgy'm'de,

*ægēn'*=*oncean'*, against, towards; *irnan*, imp. *urn*, *urnon*, p. p. *urnen*, metathesis for *rinan*, *rim*, conj. 1, § 204; *be-clipp'an*, imp. *be-clyp'te*, p. p. *be-clyp't'*, conj. 6, § 189; *be-clip*, embrace; *cýssan*, imp. *cyste*, p. p. *cyst*, conj. 6.

21. —See verse 19.

22. —*þeōp*. O. Engl. *theow*, servant, akin to Ger. *diens*, *diene*, O. Engl. *therne*; *bringan*, imp. *brana*, *brungan*, p. p. *brungen*, conj. 1, bring; *rade*>*rathe*. Bring the *rathe* primrose, Milton, Lycidas. 142. comp. *rather*, sooner; *sēlestan*, superl. of *sē*, good, akin to Ger. *seelig*, O. Engl. *seely*, Engl. *silly*; *ge-gyr'elan*, n, m., robe, akin to *gear*, *garb*; *scrýðan*, akin to shroud; *hring*, es, m., ring, Ger. *ring*, Lat. *circus*, Gr. *κύκλος*; *fōt*, Ger. *fusz*, Lat. *pes*, Gr. *πῶς*, declension, § 84.

23. —*fæt*, te, adj., fat; *styrie*, es, m., sturk, calf, Ger. *sterke*, akin to *steer*, Ger. *stier*, Lat. *taurus*, Gr. *ταῦρος*, Sansk. *sthāra-s*; *of-sleað'* <*of-sleān'*; *uton*, subj. of *þūan*, go, §§ 176, 224, 443, like Lat. *eamus*, Fr. *allons*, let us (20 to) eat; *ge-pist'-full'ian*, imp. *-ōle*, p. p. *-ōl*, conj. 6, *pist*, existence, victuals, from *pesan*, be, *pist'-fullo*, fullness of victuals, a feast, *ge-pist'-full'ian*, to feast, be merry.

24. —*ge-ed'euc'ian*, imp. *-ōle*, p. p. *-ōl*, conj. 6, *ed'*, §§ 15, a, 254, back, again, *euc* <*epic*, quick, alive, Lat. *viv-us*, Gr. *bios*, Sansk. *gñe-a-s*; *for-pearð'*, see verse 17; *ys*, bad for is; *ge-mēt'-an*, imp. *-mēt'ed*, p. p. *-mē'*, met, found; *on-ginn'an*, begin; *ge-pist'*

*læc'an*, *-læh'te*, *-læht'*, conj. 6, see verse 23, *læc*, *læcan*, akin to *-lock*, *wed-lock*, §§ 229, 233, 250.

25. —*yltra*, comp. of *cald*, old, § 124; *æcere*, see over; *geneā'læh'te*, *geneā'læc'an*, come near; *spæg*, akin to *sough*, and to Ger. *schreygel-pfeife*; *pered*, company, akin to *per*, man, Goth. *vair*, Lat. *vir*, Sansk. *vira*.

26. —*clyp-ian*, imp. *-ōle*, p. p. *-ōl*, conj. 6. O. Engl. *clepe*, *yelept*, in heaven *yelept* Euphrosyne, Milton, L'Al. 12; *æcsōde* > asked, metathesis; *pære*, subj., <*pesan*, §§ 423, 425.

27. —*of-sleān'*, imp. *-slōht'*, *-slōg'on*, p. p. *-slag'en*, conj. 4, § 207; *hālne*, acc. of *hāl*, (w)hole, hale, Ger. *heil*, Gr. *καλός*; *on-fōn'*, imp. *-fēng'*, *-fēng'on*, p. p. *-fung'on*, conj. 5, §§ 208, 216, Ger. *fangen*, fang, catch, receive.

28. —*gebealh' kine*, swelled himself, was angry, § 290, *d*, *ge-belg'an*, imp. *-bealh'*, *-bulg'on*, p. p. *-bulg'en*, conj. 1, akin to bulge, belly, bellows; *nolde*=*ne pohte* <*pillan*, § 212; *gān*, imp. *cōle*, p. p. *gān*, irreg. go, (yode) went, gone, § 213; *biddan*, Ger. *bitten*, bid, ask.

29. —*and'spariend'e*, answering, and', § 15, a, Lat. *ante*, Gr. *ἀντι*, in return, § 254, *sparian*, swear, speak emphatically; *efne*, akin to *ofen*, even, § 263; *fela*, so many of years, see verse 17; *þeōpōde* <*þeōþian*. see *þeōp*, verse 22, *ge-bod'*, from *beōðan*, Ger. *bieten*, bid, order, *beōðan* and *biððan* (see verse 25) nūite in Engl. *bid*, akin to *bead*; *for-gym'd-an*, imp. *-gym'de*, p. p. *-gym'ed*, Goth. *gāumjan*, Ger. *gaumen*, O. Engl. Scot. *yeine*, *goam*, to see



and ne sealdest þû mē næfre ān  
ticeen, þæt ic mid mīnum frēon-  
dum gepist'fullōde;

30. ac syððan þes þīn sunu  
com, þe his spēde mid mylt'-  
ystrum āmyr'de, þû ofslōg'e him  
fiet cealf.

31. Pā epæð hē, Sunu, þû eart  
synle mid mē, and ealle mīne  
þīng synd þīne: þē gebyr'ede  
gepist'full'ian and gebliss'ian:  
forþam' þes þīn brōðer pæs  
deād, and hē ge-ed'cucōde; hē  
forpearð', and hē ys gemēt'.

## 8. LOVE YOUR ENEMIES.—*Matthew*, v., 38–48.

### ANGLO-SAXON.

38. Gē gehȳr'don þæt ge-  
cped'en pæs, Eāge for eāge and  
tōð for tōð,

39. Sōðlice ic seege eōp, Ne  
pinne gē ongēn' þā þe eōp yfel

### GOTHIC OF ULPHILAS.

38. Hāus'idēð'uþ þatei kviþan  
ist, Augô und āugin, jah tunþu  
und tunþau.

39. Ip ik kviþa izvis ni and'-  
stand'an allis þanma un'sēl'jin;

8. This extract is prepared to give definite knowledge of the relation between the Gothic of Ulphilas and the Anglo-Saxon, and for introduction to Comparative Grammar, especially to etymology and phonology. Each Gothic word is first turned into an English word of the same root, so far as may be. These are helped out by other words in italics, so as to form a sort of translation to one who knows the meaning of the passage. The words are then explained, and laws of change referred to as given in the Grammar. Grimm's law applies to almost every word, and is here referred to once for all, §§ 18, 41.

care for; *ticeen*, *es*, n., kid, Ger. *zicke*, kid, *ziege*, goat; *frēond*, Ger. *freund* < *frēon*, to love; *gepist'*fullōde, see verse 23.

50. —ac, but, § 262; *siddan* (since), as soon as; *spēl* > Engl. *speed*, haste, success, wealth; *mylt'ustr-e*, an, f., harlot, from *myltan*, melt, yield (in virtue), -estre, §§ 228, 232; *āmyr'de* = *āmyrr'ede*, see verse 14; *ofslōg'e*, verse 27.

31. —*synle*, always, akin to *same*, Lat. *simul*, *semper*; *mīd*, Ger. *mit*, Gr. *μετά*, § 254; *þē gebyr'ede*, it became thee, see verse 12; *gepist'*full'ian, see verse 23; *ge-bliss'-ian*, imp. *ōde*, p. p. -ōl, conj. 6, be blissful, akin to *bliss*; *ge-ed'cucōde*, see verse 24; *forpearð'*, *gemēt'*, verse 24.

8.—38. Hear-did-ye that-which queth-en is, Eye for eye, and tooth for tooth. *Hāusi-dēðuþ* = *hȳr-don*, *hāusjan*, A.-S. *hȳran* > hear, Ger. *hören*, *āu>ēā>ē*, *g*, §§ 18, 38, *s>r*, § 41, 3, *b*, -*dēluþ*, A.-S. -*don*, did, Ger. -*te*, weak inflection, § 168; *þat-ei*, A.-S. *þat* > that, Ger. *das*, -*ei*, § 468; *kviþan*, A.S. *cpedan* > O. E. *quethe*, he-quetheth, quoth, O. H. G. *chedan*; § 197; *ist*, A.-S. *is* > is, Ger. *ist*, Lat. *est*, Gr. *ἐστίν*,

Sansk. *ásti*, § 213; *pæs* > was, Goth. *was*, Ger. *war*, § 213, 41, 3, *b*; *augô*, A.-S. *eāge* > eye, Ger. *auge*, vowel change, §§ 18, 38, declension, § 95; *und*, A.-S. *ōð*, Ger. *unt*, § 254; *for*, Goth. *faur*, Ger. *für*, § 254; *ja-h*, and, A.-S. *ge*, O. H. Ger. *jo-h*, Lat. *ja-m*, § 262; *tunþu*, A.-S. *tōð* > tooth, Ger. *zahn*, Lat. *dent-is*, Gr. *δ-δόντ-ος*, Sansk. *dant-as*, § 37, declension, §§ 86, 93.

39. But I queth to-you not to-stand-against at-all the unseely; but if any-one-who-ever thee strike by dexter thine chin, wind to-him also the other. *Ip*, but, A.-S. *ed*-, *od-de*, O. H. G. *ed*-, Lat. *at*, § 262; *ik*, A.-S. *ic* > I, Ger. *ich*, Lat. *ego*, Gr. *ἐγώ*, Sansk. *aha'm*, § 130; *kviþat*, verse 38, inflection, § 165; *seege* > say, Ger. *sagen*; *izvis*, *cōp* > you, § 130; *ni*, A.-S. *ne*, n-ot, O. H. G. *nī*, *ne*, Lat. *ne*, Gr. *ν-η*, Sansk. *na*, § 254; *and'-stand'an*, *and*-, A.-S. *and* > an, in answer, Ger. *ant*-, Lat. *ante*, Gr. *ἀντι*, Sansk. *ānti*, § 254, *stand'an*, A.-S. *standan* > stand, Ger. *stehen*, Lat. *sta-re*, Gr. *ἵστημι*, Sansk. *sthā*, § 216; *pinne* < *pinnad* before *ge*, § 165; *ongēn'* for *ongecūn'*, Ger. *ent-gegen*, § 251; *allis*, A.-S. *alles*, Ger. *alles*, § 251

dôðt; æc gýf hþá þê sleâ on þîn  
spýðre þenge, gegear'pá him  
þæt ôðter.

40. And þam þe pylle on  
dôme pið þê hlitan, and niman  
þíne tunecan, lét him tó þínne  
pæfels.

41. And spá-hpá'-spá þê ge-  
nýt' þúsend stapá, gá mid him  
ôðre tpá þúsend.

42. Sytle þam þe þê bidde, and  
þam þe æt þê pille borgan ne  
pýrn þá him.

43. Gê gehýr'don þæt ge-

ak jabái hvas þuk stáutái bi  
taihsvôn þeina kinnu, vandeí  
imma jah þó anþara.

40. Jah þamma viljandin miþ  
þus stáua jah páida þeina niman,  
aflét' imma jah vastja.

41. Jah jabái hvas þuk ana-  
náup'jái rasta áua, gaggáis miþ  
imma tvôs.

42. Þamma bidjandin þuk gi-  
báis, jah þamma viljandin af þus  
leihvan sis ni us'vand'jáis.

43. Háus'idêð'uþ þatei kvíþan

*þamma*, A.-S. *þam*, him, Ger. *dem*, Gr. *τῷ*, Sansk. *tá-smātī*, § 104; *þá þe*, § 104; *ýfel*, verse 45; *uul'seljín*, *un-*, § 254, *sêls*, A.-S. *sêl*, *sêlig* > seely, silly, Ger. *selig*, akin to Lat. *salvus*, Gr. *ῥάος*, declension weak, § 107; *ak*, A.-S. *ac*, O. H. G. *oh*, but, § 262; *jabái*, A.-S. *gif* > if, O. H. G. *ihu*, § 262; *hvas*, A.-S. *hpá* > who, Ger. *wer*, Lat. *quis*-s, Sansk. *kas*, § 135; *þuk*, A.-S. *þec* > thee, Ger. *dich*, Lat. *tē*, Gr. *τί*, Sansk. *trá*, § 130; *stáut-ai*, Ger. *stos-zen*, Lat. *tund-o*, Gr. *τῶν-ος*, Sansk. *tud*; *sleá* < *sleán* > slay, Ger. *schlagen*, Goth. *slahan*; *bi*, A.-S. *bi* > by, Ger. *bei*, § 254; *taihsvôn*, Lat. *dexter*; *spýðre*, right, comp. of *spít*, strong; *þeina*, A.-S. *þín* > thine, Ger. *dein*, Lat. *tuus*, § 132; *kinnu*, A.-S. *cinne* > chin, Ger. *kinne*, Lat. *gena*, Gr. *γένυ-ς*, declension, § 93; *þenge*, s, n., wang, check, Ger. *wange*; *vandeí*, *vand-jan*, A.-S. *pendan* > wend, Ger. *venden*; *imma*, A.-S. *him* > him, Ger. *ihm*, § 130; *þá anþara*, A.-S. *þæt ôðter* > that other, Ger. *die andere*, Gr. *ἑτερος*, Sansk. *antará*, § 126.

40. And the-one willing with thee a-law-suit and tunic thine to-him, let off to-him also vest. *Jah*, verse 38; *þamma*, verse 39; *vil-jandin*, p. pr. *viljan*, A.-S. *pillan* > will, Ger. *zollen*, Lat. *volo*, Gr. *βούλομαι*, Sansk. *var*, *val*, § 212; *miþ*, A.-S. *mid*, Ger. *mit*, Gr. *μετί*, Sansk. *mī-thás*, § 254; *pið* > with, Goth. *vīþra*, Ger. *wider*, § 254; *þus*, see *þuk*, verse 39; *stáua*, judge, judgment, Grimm says from *stabs*, A.-S. *staf* > staff, Ger. *stab*, and so *staff-bearer*; *jah*, verse 38; *páida*, A.-S. *páð*, Ger. *pfeil*, Gr. *βαῖον*, a borrowed word, akin to *pæð* > weeds, O. H. G. *wát*; *tunec-e*, -an, f., from Lat. *tunica*; *þeina*, verse 39; *niman*, A.-S. *niman* > nimu, Ger. *nehmen*, take, § 165;

*af-*, A.-S. *af-* > off, of, Ger. *ab-*; *létan*, A.-S. *létan* > let, Ger. *lassen*; *imma*, verse 39; *jah*, verse 38; *vastja*, Lat. *vest-is*, vest, Gr. *ἑσθης*, A.-S. verb *perian* > wear (s > r, § 41); *pæfels*, better *pæfels* < *pefan*, weave.

41. And if any-one-who-ever thee need rest one, go with him two. *ana-náup'jái*, *ana*, verse 45, *náupjan*, A.-S. *nýðan* > need, Ger. *noth*; *ge-nýt'* < *ge-nýðan*, compel, inflection, §§ 170, 192; *rasta*, A.-S. *reste* > rest, Ger. *rast*, resting-place, mile; *þúsend* > thousand, Ger. *tausent*, Goth. *þusundt*, § 159; *stape*, s, m. > step; *áua*, A.-S. *án* > one, an, s, Ger. *ein*, Gr. *ἓν-ος*, Lat. *un-us*, § 139; *gaggáis*, A.-S. *gá* > go, Ger. *gehen*, § 213; *tvôs*, A.-S. *tpá* > two, Ger. *zwei*, § 139.

42. To-the-one bidding thee give, and from-the-one willing of thee to-take-a-loan self not wend. *Bid-jandin*, p. pr. *bidjan*, A.-S. *biddan* > bid (ask), Ger. *bitten*; *gib-áis*, A.-S. *gífan* > give, Ger. *geben*; *sytle* > sell; *leihvan*, A.-S. *líhan*, Ger. *leihen* > lēn > loan; *borgian* > borrow, Ger. *borgen*, to give on borowee, security < *beorgan* > bury, secure; *sis*, dative of *seina*, A.-S. *sín*, Ger. *sich*, self, § 131; *us'-vand'jáis*, Ger. *abwenden*, us-, A.-S. *or-*, Ger. *ur-*, away, *vandjan*, verse 39; *pyrnán*, imp. *pyrnde*, p. p. *pyrned*, conj. 6, warn off, repel, deny, akin to *parnian*, Ger. *warnen*, warn.

43. Hear-did-ye that-which queth-en is, be-Friend highest thine, and be-foe fiend thine. *Háus'idêð'uþ* -ist, verse 38; *fri-jos*, A.-S. *fréogan*, Ger. *freien*, love, kiss, woo, Sansk. *pri*, Gr. *πρῆ-ος*, hence *fréond* > friend, Ger. *freund*, p. pr.; *lufian*, Goth. *liuban*, Ger. *lieben*, Lat. *libet*, *libet*, Gr. *ἡρ-τομαι*, Sansk. *lubh*; *nêh-*, A.-S. *nêh-stan*, *nêxtan*, Ger. *nêhet*,

eped'en pæs, Lufā þinne nêxtan, and hatā þinne feōnd :

44. Sōðlice ic secge eōp, Lufiæd eōpre fýnd, and dōt pel þām þe eōp yfel dōt, and gebidd'ad [for eōpre êhterās and] tælendum eōp ;

45. þæt gē sīn eōpres Fæder bearn þe on heofonum ys, se þe dōt þæt hys sunne up āspringeð' ofer þā gōðan and ofer þā yfelan, and hē lēt rīnan ofer þā riht' pīs'an and ofer þā un'rihtpīsau.

ist, Frijōs nêhvundjan þeinana, jah fīais fīand þeinana :

44. aþþan ik kviþa izvis, Frijōþ fījands izvarans [þiuhþāiþ þans vrikandans izvis] vāila tūn-jāiþ þāim hatjandam izvis, jah biðjāiþ bi þans us'þriut'andans izvis ;

45. ei vairþāiþ sunjus attins izvaris þis in himinan, untē sunnōn seina ur'ranneip ana ubilans jah gōðans, jah rigneip ana garaiht'ans jah ana in'vind'ans.

nearest ; *fīais*, hate, *fījan*, A.-S. *fian*, O. H. G. *fīen* > *fīand*, A.-S. *fēond* > *fīend*, Ger. *feind*, p. pr., hating, used as a substantive ; *hat-ian*, imp. -ōde, p. p. -ōd, conj. 6, hate, Goth. *hatan*, Ger. *hassen*, perhaps akin to Lat. *odi*.

44. *But*-then I queth to-you, be-Friend fiends yours, bless those wreaking on-you, well do to-them hating you, and bid by those out-thrusting you. *aþ-þan*, Lat. *at*, but, see verse 39 and § 262, -*þan*, demons. particle, § 262 ; *þiuhþāiþ*-izvis, εὐλογεῖτε τοὺς καταρωμένους ὑμᾶς, is omitted in the Latin, and so in the Anglo-Saxon ; *þiuhþan*, do good, bless < *þiuh*, good, not in other tongues, root *þiv*, grow, akin to A.-S. *þeop*, *þipe*, boy, servant : *þans*, acc. plur. of demons., §§ 104, 107 ; *vrikandans*, cursing, *vrikan*, A.-S. *precian* > wreak, Ger. *rächen* ; *vāila*, A.-S. *pel* > well, Ger. *wohl* ; *tūn-jāiþ*, A.-S. *tapian* > taw, Ger. *zaugen*, make, equip, do, a kindred stem to *dōn* > do, Ger. *thun*, Gr. *θε*, τι-θη-μι, Sansk. *dhā* ; *þāim*, dat. plur., A.-S. *þām* > them, Ger. *dem* ; *hatjandam*, verse 43 ; *biddan*, verse 42 ; *us'þriut'-andans*, p. pr., us-, verse 42, *þriutan*, A.-S. *þrōtan*, Ger. *ver-drissen*, Lat. *trudo*, extrude ; *êhtere*, s, m., persecutor ; *tælendum*, p. pr., *tæl-an*, imp. -de, p. p. -ed, conj. 6, speak evil, akin to Gothic *taljan*, A.-S. *tellan* > tell, Ger. *zählen*, tale, tally.

45. *That you-may-worth sons of-Father your the-one in heavens, since sun his up-runneþ on evil and good, and he-raineth on righteous and on in-wound. Ei*, that, if, pronominal, probably from relative *ja*, and so akin to Gr. *εἰ*, Lat. *s-i*, § 262 ; *vāirþ-āiþ*, A.-S. *peorðan* > O. E. worth, be, Ger. *werden* ; *sunne*, A.-S. *sunu* > son, Ger. *sohn*, Gr. *ἰσός*, Sansk. *sā-nus* > *su*, bear ; *bearn* > *bairu*, Goth.

*barn* < Goth. *bairan*, A.-S. *beran* > bear, Ger. *ge-bähren*, Lat. *fero*, Gr. *φέρω*, Sansk. *bī-bhār-mi* ; *attins*, father, O. H. G. *atto*, Ger. child-speech *ette*, Sansk., Gr., Lat. *atta*, similar words far and wide beyond the Indo-European tongues, so as to suggest that they are interjectional. The linguals in this use are as common as the labials *pā-pā*, *ab-bā*, *mā-mā* ; *dā-dā* > Engl. *dad* ; is wide-spread ; *þis*, genitive of article, verse 39, § 104 ; *in*, A.-S. *in* > in, Ger. *ein*, Lat. *in*, Gr. *ἐν*, Sansk. *anā*, § 254 ; *himinam*, plur. dat. of *himins*, declined as in § 70, Ger. *himmel*, and in the other Teutonic tongues except A.-S., from root *him*, cover, and so analogous to Low Ger., O. Sax., A.-S., *heofon* > heaven, root *hib* > heave ; *untē*, O. H. G. *unza*, unto, until, since, compare *und*, verse 38 ; *sunnōn* < *sunno*, f., § 95, e, A.-S. *sunne* > sun, Ger. *sonne* ; *sein*, A.-S. *sīn*, Ger. *sein*, his, § 132 ; *ur'-rann'eip*, *ur-* = *us-*, verse 42, *rannjan*, cause to rain, *rann-eip* = -*jip*, 3d sing., § 165, *ð*, < *rinnan*, imp. *ran*, A.-S. *rinnan* > run, Ger. *rennen* ; *ā-spring'an*, conj. 1 ; *ana*, A.-S. *an*, on > on, Ger. *an*, Gr. *ἀνά*, Lat. *an-*, Sansk. *anā*, § 254 ; *ubilans*, declension, § 107, A.-S. *yfelan* > evil, Ger. *übel* ; *gōð-*, A.-S. *gōð* > good, Ger. *gut* ; *rigneip* < *rigujan*, inflect., § 165, a, A.-S. *rinan* > rain, Ger. *regen*, Lat. *riġo*, Gr. *ῥέγ-ew*, root *vragh*, Sansk. ; *ga-raiht'ans*, declension, § 107, A.-S. *riht-pīs* > righteous, Ger. *recht*, Lat. *rect-us*, root *rg'*, Gr. *ῥέγ-ew*, Lat. *reg-o*, Goth. *rakjan*, A.-S. *rēcan* > reach, Ger. *reichen* ; *in'-vind'ans*, § 107, *in-*, see over ; *vindan*, A.-S. *pindan* > wind, Ger. *winden*, twisted, perverted, wrong ; *un'-riht pīs*, adj., unrighteous.

46. Gyf gē sôðlice þā lufiað þe eôp lufiað, hpylce mēde habbað gē: hū ne dôð mánfulle spā?

47. And gyf gē þæt ān dôð þæt gē eôpre gebrôð'ra pylcuniað, hpæt dô gē mære? hū ne dôð hæðene spā?

48. Eornostlice beoð fulfrem'ede, spā eôper heofonlīca Fæder is fulfrem'ed.

46. Jabái auk frijôþ þans frijôndans izvis áinans, hvô mizdônó habáiþ? niu jah þái þiudô þata samô táujand?

47. Jah jabái gôleiþ þans frijônds izvarans þatáinei, hvê managizô táuiþþ? niu jah mótarjós þata samô táujand?

48. Sijáiþ nn jus fullatôjái, svasvê atta izvar sa in himinam fullatôjis ist.

46. If eke *you-be-friend* those *be-friending* you *al-one*, what mede have-*you*? Do-not they also of-the-datch that same do? *áuk*, A.-S. *eac* > eke, Ger. *auch*, § 254; *frijôþ*, verse 43, inflect., § 165, *d*; *áinans*, acc. pl., verse 41; *hvô*, verse 39; *hpylce* < *hpá-līc*, Ger. *welch*, which, § 135; *mizd-ônó*, gen. pl. of *mizdô*, decline, § 95, A.-S. *meord*, Gr. *μεορ-ός*, akin to A.-S. *mēd*, *e*, *f*. > meed, Ger. *mieche*; *habáiþ*, inflect., § 170, A.-S. *habbað*, have, Ger. *haben*, akin to Lat. *habeo*; *nū-a*, A.-S. *ne*, not, verse 39, *hū ne*, emphatic interrog., §§ 252, 397; *þái*, they, § 104; *þiudô*, gen. plur. < *þiuda*, declens., § 88, A.-S. *þeod* > O. Engl. thede, people, O. H. G. *diota*, akin to A.-S. *þeodisc*, people, Ger. *deutsch* > Dutch: *mān-ful*, adj., sinful, *mān*, shn, akin to *mēne* > mean, Goth. *ga-māins*, Ger. *ge-mein*, common, *ful* > full, Goth. *fulls*, Ger. *voll*, Gr. *πλεος*, Lat. *ple-nus*, Sansk. *pār*, § 229; *samô*, A.-S. *same* > same, O. H. G. *samo*, Lat. *sim-ilis*, Gr. *ομο-ος*, Sansk. *sam-as*, see *sam-*, § 254; *spā*, § 252; *táujand*, 3d plur., inflect., § 165, verse 44.

47. And if *you-greet* those friends yours that-*al-one*, what more do-*ye*? Do-not also meters that same do? *gôleiþ*, *gôljan*, greet, akin to A.-S. *gāl* > O. Engl. *gole*, glad, Ger.

*geil*, Goth. *gáiljan*, rejoice, and perhaps to A.-S. *galan* > -gale, nightin-gale, Ger. *gellen*, yell, cry; *pyl-cuniað*, imp. -ôle, p. p. -ôð, conj. 6, Ger. *willkommen*, welcome < *pil-cuma*, a wished-for comer, *pillan*, verse 40, *cuman* > come, Goth. *kriman*, Ger. *kommen*, Sansk. *gā* > *grā* > va, Lat. *ve-nio*, βα, Gr. *ε-βη-v*, parasitic *v* and Grimm's law, § 33; *managizô*, comp. of *manags*, much, many, A.-S. *maneg* > many, Ger. *manch*, comparative endings, § 123, *a*; *mære* > more, Goth. *māiza*, Ger. *mehr*, Lat. *maior*, Gr. *μεῖζων*, Sansk. *māh-jās* (§ 123, *a*); *mótarjós* < *móta*, Ger. *maut*, tax, Grimm says akin to *mēde*, verse 46; *hæðen* > heathen, Goth. *hāþnô*, Ger. *heidn* < A.-S. *hæð* > heath, Goth. *hāþi*, Ger. *heide*, dwellers on the heath, compare *pagan* < *paganus*.

48. Be now you full-done, so-so Father you, the in heavens full-done is. *sijáiþ*, 2d plur., pres. subj. of the verb to be, A.-S. *sīn*, §§ 213, 170; *nū*, A.-S. *nū* > now, Ger. *nu-n*, Gr. *νῦ*, Lat. *nunc*, Sansk. *nu*, § 252; *jus*, § 130; *fulla-tôjái*, *fulls*, verse 46, *tôjái*, do, akin to *táu-jan*, verse 44; *svasvê*, A.-S. *spā* > so, Ger. *so*, § 252; *sa*, A.-S. *se*, Sansk. *sa*, Gr. *ο*, article, § 104.

## 9. THE LORD'S PRAYER IN GOTHIC.

Matthew, vi., 9-13.—*Atta unsar þu in himinam, I'eihnai namô þein. Krimai þiudinassus þeins. I'airþai vilja þeins, svê in himina jah ana airþai. Illaif unsarana þana sinteinan gif uns himina daga. Jah aflet' uns patei skulans sijaima, svasvê jah veis aflet'am þaim skulam unsaraim. Jah ni bringais uns in fraistubnjai, ak lausei uns af þamma ubilin; untê þeina ist þiudangardi jah makts jah vulpus in átrins. Amen.*

THE next part of the Reader is prepared on a plan somewhat like that proposed by Thomas Jefferson to the University of Virginia. Facing each page of Anglo-Saxon will be found its counterpart in a sort of English. Each word is changed into the form which it took when the inflections weakened and it became English. Many are long since obsolete. Such are explained in the foot-notes. A good deal of knowledge of Anglo-Saxon and of the growth of English may be gained very fast and very easily by such apparatus.

In the translation, words in italics are not of the same root as the Anglo-Saxon which they represent, or are added.

In the foot-notes—

(Ch.) means that the word before it is in Chaucer.

(H.) Halliwell's Dictionary of Archaic and Provincial Words.

(P. P.) Piers Ploughman.

(S.) Stratmann, Dictionary of the English of the 13th, 14th, and 15th Centuries.

(Wycl.) Wycliffe.

(?) not found by me as yet.

When there is no sign of this sort the word is in Webster's Dictionary. Look for parts of compounds; especially drop *i*-, *be*-, and the like. If the proper meaning is not seen in Webster, look at what he says in the etymology, or look at the Vocabulary of this Reader.

Two pages of poetry (p. 52\*, 53\*) are prepared in the same way.

## DIALOGUES OF CALLINGS.

---

### 1. TEACHER AND SCHOLAR.

The learner saith :

We childer<sup>1</sup> bid<sup>2</sup> thee, O lo lore-master, that thou teach us to-speak in Latin i-rerd<sup>3</sup> rightly, forthat<sup>4</sup> un-i-lered<sup>5</sup> we are, and i-wemmedly<sup>6</sup> we speak.

The lore-master answereth :

What will ye speak ?

S. What reck we what we speak, but<sup>7</sup> it right speech *be*, and behoove-*full*, not idle or frakel<sup>8</sup> ?

T. Will ye be (be-)swinged on learning ?

S. Liefer<sup>9</sup> is to-us to-be (be-)swinged for lore, than it ne<sup>10</sup> to-ken ; ac<sup>11</sup> we wit thee bile-whit<sup>12</sup> *to-be*, and to-nill<sup>13</sup> (on-bi-)lead<sup>14</sup> swingels<sup>15</sup> on-us, but<sup>16</sup> thou be to-i-needed<sup>17</sup> from us.

T. I ax<sup>18</sup> thee, what speakest thou ? What hast thou of work ?

S. I am monk, and I sing each day seven tides<sup>19</sup> mid<sup>20</sup> i-brothers, and I am busied in reading and in song, ac<sup>11</sup> though-whether<sup>21</sup> I would between learn to-speak in Latin i-rerd<sup>3</sup>.

T. What ken these thy i-feres<sup>22</sup> ?

S. Some are earthlings<sup>23</sup>, some shepherds, some oxherds, some eke<sup>24</sup> so-like<sup>25</sup> hunters, some fishers, some fowlers, some chap-men<sup>26</sup>, some shoe-wrights, some salters, some bakers.

---

### 2. TEACHER AND PLOUGHMAN.

T. What sayest thou, earthling<sup>23</sup>, how bi-goest<sup>27</sup> thou work thine ?

Pl. O lo, lief<sup>28</sup> lord, thraly<sup>29</sup> I derve<sup>30</sup> ; I go out on day-red<sup>31</sup>, thewing<sup>32</sup> oxen to field, and yoke hem<sup>33</sup> to sull<sup>34</sup> ; nis<sup>35</sup> it so stark<sup>36</sup> winter that I dare lout<sup>37</sup> at home for awe of lord mine ; ac<sup>11</sup> yoked<sup>39</sup> oxen<sup>39</sup>, and i-fastened<sup>39</sup> share<sup>39</sup> and coulter mid<sup>20</sup> the sull<sup>34</sup>, each day I shall ear<sup>38</sup> full acre or more.

---

<sup>1</sup> children (Ch.). <sup>2</sup> pray. <sup>3</sup> language (H.). <sup>4</sup> because. <sup>5</sup> unlearned (S.). <sup>6</sup> corruptly ; *wem*, a spot. <sup>7</sup> if only. <sup>8</sup> vile (S.). <sup>9</sup> pleasanter. <sup>10</sup> not. <sup>11</sup> but (S.). <sup>12</sup> gentle (S.). <sup>13</sup> not wish. <sup>14</sup> inflict (?). <sup>15</sup> blows. <sup>16</sup> unless. <sup>17</sup> compelled (S.). <sup>18</sup> ask. <sup>19</sup> times. <sup>20</sup> with (P. P.). <sup>21</sup> whether or no, notwithstanding. <sup>22</sup> comrades (S.). <sup>23</sup> ploughmen. <sup>24</sup> also. <sup>25</sup> likewise. <sup>26</sup> merchants. <sup>27</sup> practisest (H.). <sup>28</sup> dear. <sup>29</sup> hard (H.). <sup>30</sup> toil (S.). <sup>31</sup> dawn (S.). <sup>32</sup> driving (S.). <sup>33</sup> 'em, them (Ch.). <sup>34</sup> plow. <sup>35</sup> is not. <sup>36</sup> severe. <sup>37</sup> loiter, lurk (Ch., P. P.). <sup>38</sup> plough. <sup>39</sup> dative absolute, § 304, d.

## DIALOGUES OF CALLINGS.

---

### 1. TEACHER AND SCHOLAR.

Se leornere seged :

Dê cildrn biddað þê, eâlâ lâreôp, þæt þû tâce ùs sprecan on Ledenê gereordê rihte, forþam ungelærede þê sindon, and gepemmedlice þê sprecað.

Se lâreôp andsperâd :

Hpæt pille gê sprecan ?

Lc. Hpæt rêce þê hpæt þê sprecân, bûtan hit riht sprâc sî, and behêfe, næs îdel oððe fracod ?

Lp. Dille gê beôn bespungen on leornunge ?

Lc. Leôfre is ùs beôn bespungen for lâre, þænne hit ne cunnan ; ac þê pîton þê bilepîtne pesan and nellan onbelæðan spinglâ ùs, bûtan þû beô tô-genýfðed fram ùs.

Lp. Ic âxie þê, hpæt spriest þû ? Hpæt hæfst þû peorces ?

Lc. Ic eom munuc, and ic singe ælcê dæg seofon tîdâ mid gebrôðrum, and ic eom bysgôd on rêdinge and on sangê ; ac þeâh-  
hpædere ic polde betpeônan leornian sprecan on Ledenê gereordê.

Lp. Hpæt cunnon þâs þîne gefêran ?

Lc. Sume sind yrdlingâs, sume sceâphirdâs, sume oxanhirdâs, sume eac spylce huntan, sume fiscerâs, sume fugelerâs, sume cýp-men, sume sceô-pyrhtan, sume sealterâs, sume bæcerâs.

---

### 2. TEACHER AND PLOUGHMAN.

Lp. Hpæt segst þû, yrdling, hû begæst þû peorc þîn ?

Y. Eâlâ, leôf hlâford, þearle ic deorfe ; ic gâ út on dægrêd, þýpende oxan tô feldâ, and geocie hî tô sulh ; nis hit spâ stearc pînter, þæt ic durre lutian æt hâm for egê hlâfordes mînes ; ac geocôðum oxum, and gefæstnôðum searê and enlitrê mid þære sulh, ælcê dæg ic secal erian fulne æcer oððe mære.

Lp. Hæfst þú ænigne gefêran?

Y. Ic hæbbe sumne cnapan þýpendne oxan mid gadîsenê, þe cæc spylec nû hâs is for cýlê and hreâmê.

Lp. Hpæt mâre dêst þú on dæg?

Y. Gepislice þænne mâre ic dô. Ic sceal fyllan binnan oxenâ mid hîgê, and pæterian hî, and scearn heorâ beran út.

Lp. Hîg! hîg! Micel gedeorf is hit!

Y. Gea, leôf, micel gedeorf hit is, forþam ic neom freô.

### 3. TEACHER AND SHEPHERD.

Lp. Hpæt segst þú, sceâphirde? Hæfst þú ænig gedeorf?

S. Gea, leôf, ic hæbbe; on forepeardne morgen ic drîfe sceâp mîne tô heorâ læsc, and stande ofer hî on hâte and on cýlê mid hundum, þý læs pulfås forspelgen hî, and ic ongeân lâde hî tô heorâ loca, and melce hî tpeôpa on dæg, and loca heorâ ic hebbe þærtô, and cêse and buteran ic dô, and ic eom getrýpe hlâforde mínum.

### 4. TEACHER AND OXHERD.

Lp. Eâlâ, oxanhirde, hpæt pyrest þú?

O. Eâlâ, hlâford mín, micel ic gedeorfe: þænne se yrdling unscend þa oxan, ic lâde hî tô læse, and ealle niht ic stande ofer hî paciende for þeôfum, and eft on ærmergen ic betæce hî þam yrdlinge pel gefylde and gepæterôde.

Lp. Is þes of þínum gefêrum?

O. Gea, hê is.

### 5. TEACHER AND HUNTER.

Lp. Canst þú ænig þing?

H. Âne cræft ic can.

Lp. Hpilcne?

H. Hunta ic eom.

Lp. Hpæs?

H. Cyninges.

Lp. Hû begâst þú cræft þínne?

H. Ic brede mé max, and sette hî on stôpe gehæpre, and ge-



T. Hast thou any i-fere<sup>1</sup>?

Pl. I have some<sup>2</sup> knave<sup>3</sup> thewing<sup>4</sup> oxen with gad-iron, that eke<sup>5</sup> so-like<sup>6</sup> now hoarse is for chill and ream<sup>7</sup>.

T. What more doest thou a<sup>8</sup> day?

Pl. I-wis<sup>9</sup> then more I do. I shall fill bins of oxen mid<sup>10</sup> hay, and water hem<sup>11</sup>, and sbern here<sup>12</sup> bear out.

T. Hi! hi! Much derf<sup>13</sup> is it!

Pl. Yea, lief<sup>14</sup>, much derf<sup>13</sup> it is, forthat<sup>15</sup> I nam<sup>16</sup> free.

### 3. TEACHER AND SHEPHERD.

T. What sayest thou, shepherd? Hast thou any derf<sup>13</sup>?

S. Yea, lief<sup>14</sup>, I have; on forward<sup>17</sup> morning I drive sheep mine to here<sup>12</sup> lease<sup>18</sup>, and stand over hem<sup>11</sup> on heat and on ehill mid<sup>10</sup> hounds, the less<sup>19</sup> wolves for-swallow<sup>20</sup> hem<sup>11</sup>, and I again lead hem<sup>11</sup> to here<sup>12</sup> locks, and milk hem<sup>11</sup> twice a<sup>8</sup> day, and locks here<sup>12</sup> I heave thereto<sup>21</sup>, and cheese and butter I do<sup>22</sup>, and I am true to-lord mine.

### 4. TEACHER AND OXHERD.

T. Oh, lo, oxherd, what workest thou?

O. Oh, lo, lord mine, much I derve<sup>13</sup>: then<sup>23</sup> the earthling<sup>24</sup> unsheneth<sup>25</sup> the oxen, I lead hem<sup>11</sup> to lease<sup>18</sup>, and all night I stand over hem<sup>11</sup> watching for thieves, and after on ere-morning<sup>17</sup> I beteach<sup>26</sup> hem<sup>11</sup> to-the earthling<sup>24</sup> well i-filled and i-watered.

T. Is this of thy i-feres<sup>1</sup>?

O. Yea, he is.

### 5. TEACHER AND HUNTER.

T. Kenst thou any thing?

H. One craft I ken.

T. Which?

H. Hunter I am.

T. Whose?

H. King's.

T. How bi-goest<sup>27</sup> thou craft thine?

H. I braid me meshes, and set hem<sup>11</sup> on a stow<sup>28</sup> i-happy<sup>29</sup>, and

<sup>1</sup> fere, comrade. <sup>2</sup> a. <sup>3</sup> boy. <sup>4</sup> driving (S.). <sup>5</sup> also. <sup>6</sup> likewise. <sup>7</sup> shouting (S.). <sup>8</sup> on. <sup>9</sup> certainly, I wis. <sup>10</sup> with (Ch.). <sup>11</sup> them (Ch.). <sup>12</sup> their (Ch.). <sup>13</sup> toil (S.). <sup>14</sup> dear, sir. <sup>15</sup> because. <sup>16</sup> am not (Ch.). <sup>17</sup> early. <sup>18</sup> leasow, pasture. <sup>19</sup> less for that, lest. <sup>20</sup> for, Germ. ver-, § 254, 2 (S.). <sup>21</sup> also I move their folds. <sup>22</sup> make. <sup>23</sup> when. <sup>24</sup> ploughman. <sup>25</sup> unyokes (?). <sup>26</sup> assign (Ch.). <sup>27</sup> practice (Ch.). <sup>28</sup> place (S.). <sup>29</sup> fit.

i-tyht<sup>1</sup> hounds mine, that wild-deer<sup>2</sup> hi<sup>3</sup> egg<sup>4</sup>, till-that-that hi<sup>3</sup> come to the nets un-fore-show-edly<sup>5</sup>, that hi<sup>3</sup> so be be-grined<sup>6</sup>, and I off-slay hem<sup>7</sup> on<sup>8</sup> the meshes.

T. Ne<sup>9</sup> canst thou hunt but mid<sup>10</sup> nets?

H. Yea, but<sup>11</sup> nets hunt I may.

T. How?

H. Mid<sup>10</sup> swift hounds I be-take<sup>12</sup> wild-deer.<sup>2</sup>

T. Which wild-deer<sup>2</sup> swithest<sup>13</sup> i-fangest<sup>14</sup> thou?

H. I i-fang<sup>14</sup> harts, and boars, and roebucks, and roes, and whilom hares.

T. Wert thou to day on hunting?

H. I nas<sup>15</sup>, forthat<sup>16</sup> Sunday is, ac<sup>17</sup> yester day I was on hunting.

T. What i-latchedst<sup>18</sup> thou?

H. Twain harts and one boar.

T. How i-fangest<sup>14</sup> thou hem<sup>7</sup>?

H. Harts I i-fang<sup>14</sup> on<sup>8</sup> nets, and boar I off-slew.

T. How wert thou dursty<sup>19</sup> to-off-stick boar?

H. Hounds (be-)drove him to me, and I there, to-gainst<sup>20</sup> standing, ferly<sup>21</sup> off-stuck him.

T. Swithy<sup>22</sup> thristy<sup>23</sup> thou wert then?

H. Ne<sup>9</sup> shall hunter fright-full be, forthat<sup>16</sup> mis-like<sup>24</sup> wild-deer<sup>2</sup> won<sup>25</sup> in woods.

T. What dost thou by<sup>26</sup> thy hunting?

H. I sell<sup>27</sup> to-king so-what-so<sup>28</sup> I i-fo<sup>14</sup>, forthat<sup>16</sup> I am hunter his.

T. What selleth<sup>27</sup> he thee?

H. He shrouds<sup>29</sup> me well and feeds, and whilom he selleth<sup>27</sup> me horse or badge<sup>30</sup>, that the more lustily craft mine I be-go<sup>31</sup>.

## 6. TEACHER AND FISHER.

T. Which craft kenst thou?

F. I am fisher.

T. What (be-)gettest thou of thy craft?

F. Bi-live<sup>32</sup>, and shroud<sup>29</sup>, and fee<sup>33</sup>.

T. How i-fangst<sup>14</sup> thou fishes?

F. I a-sty<sup>34</sup> my ship, and werp<sup>35</sup> meshes mine on<sup>8</sup> ac<sup>36</sup>, and angle I werp<sup>35</sup> and spirt-net<sup>37</sup>, and so-what-so<sup>28</sup> hi<sup>3</sup> i-haft<sup>38</sup>, I nim<sup>39</sup>.

T. What if it unclean fishes be?

<sup>1</sup> educate, train (S.). <sup>2</sup> beasts. <sup>3</sup> they (P. P.). <sup>4</sup> pursue. <sup>5</sup> unexpectedly. <sup>6</sup> taken in a *grin*, or snare. <sup>7</sup> them (Ch.). <sup>8</sup> in. <sup>9</sup> not. <sup>10</sup> with (Ch.). <sup>11</sup> without. <sup>12</sup> catch. <sup>13</sup> most (Ch.). <sup>14</sup> take (S.). <sup>15</sup> was not (Ch.). <sup>16</sup> because. <sup>17</sup> but (P. P.). <sup>18</sup> took. <sup>19</sup> daring (S.). <sup>20</sup> against (?). <sup>21</sup> suddenly (S.). <sup>22</sup> very (Ch.). <sup>23</sup> bold (Orm.). <sup>24</sup> unlike, various. <sup>25</sup> live. <sup>26</sup> with. <sup>27</sup> give. <sup>28</sup> whatsoever. <sup>29</sup> clothes. <sup>30</sup> ring, bracelet. <sup>31</sup> practice (Ch.). <sup>32</sup> victuals (P. P.). <sup>33</sup> money. <sup>34</sup> mount. <sup>35</sup> throw (S.). <sup>36</sup> water, river (S.). <sup>37</sup> fishing-net (H.). <sup>38</sup> catch (?). <sup>39</sup> take.

tyhte hundās mīne, þæt pildeōr hī ðhtān, ôð-þæt-þe hī cumān tō þām nettum unforesceāpōðlice, þæt hī spā beōn begrinōde, and ic ofslēa hī on þām maxum.

Lp. Ne canst þū huntian būtan mid nettum?

H. Gea, būtan nettum huntian ic mæg.

Lp. Hū?

H. Mid spiftum hundum ic betæce pildeōr.

Lp. Hpilce pildeōr spīðōst gefēhst þū?

H. Ic gefō heortās, and bārās, and rān, and rægan, and hpīlon haran.

Lp. Dære þū tō dæg on huntnōde?

H. Ic næs, forþam sunnan dæg is, ac gystran dæg ic pæs on huntunge.

Lp. Hpæt gelæhtest þū?

H. Tpegen heortās and āne bār.

Lp. Hū gefēnge þū hī?

H. Heortās ic gefēng on nettum, and bār ic ofslōh.

Lp. Hū pære þū dyrstig ofstician bār?

H. Hundās bedrifon hine tō mē, and ic þær, tōgeānes standende, fêrlīce ofsticōde hine.

Lp. Spīde þriste þū pære þā.

H. Ne sceal hunta forhtful pesan, forþam mislice pildeōr pu-  
niad on pudum.

Lp. Hpæt dēst þū be þīnre huntunge?

H. Ic sylle cýninge spā-hpæt-spā ic gefō, forþam ic eom hunta  
his.

Lp. Hpæt sylð hē þē?

H. Hē scrýt mē pel and fēt, and hpīlum hē sylð mē hors oððe  
beah, þæt þý lustlicōr cræft mīnne ic begange.

## 6. TEACHER AND FISHER.

Lp. Hpilene cræft canst þū?

F. Ic eom fiscere.

Lp. Hpæt begytst þū of þīnum cræfte?

F. Bigleofan, and scrūd, and feoh.

Lp. Hū gefēhst þū fiscās?

F. Ic ástige mīn seip, and peorpe max mīne on eā, and angel  
ic peorpe and spyrtan, and spā-hpæt-spā hī gehæftað, ic genime.

Lp. Hpæt gif hit unelæne fiscās beoð?

F. Ic peorpe þā unclænan út, and genime mē clæne tō mete.

Lp. Hpær cƿst þū fiscās þine?

F. On ceastre.

Lp. Hpā bygd̃ hī?

F. Ceasterpare. Ic ne mæg spā fela gefōn spā-fela-spā ic mæg gesyllan.

Lp. Hpilce fiscās gefōhst þū?

F. Ælās and hacodās, mynās and ælepūtan, sceōtan and lam-predan, and spā-hƿylce-spā on pætere spimmað.

Lp. For hpȳ ne fiscāst þū on sâ?

F. Hpilum ic dō, ac seldon, forþam micel rēpet mē is tō sâ.

Lp. Hpæt fōhst þū on sâ?

F. Hæringās and leaxās, merespīn and styrian, ostran and crab-ban, muselan, pinepinlan, sâcoccās, fage, and flōc, and lopystran, and fela spilceas.

Lp. Dilt þū fōn sumne hpæl?

F. Nie.

Lp. For hpȳ?

F. Forþam plihhtlic þing hit is gefōn hpæl. Gebeorhliere is mē faran tō eā mid seipe mīnum, þænne faran mid manigum seipum on huntunge hrænes.

Lp. For hpȳ spā?

F. Forþam leōfre is mē gefōn fise þæne ic mæg ofsleān, þænne þe nā þæt ān mē, ac eāc spilce mīne gefōran mid ānē slegē hē mæg besencan oððe geepylman.

Lp. And þeāh, manige gefōð hpælās, and ætberstað frēcnessā, and micelne secat þanon begitað.

F. Sōð þū segst, ac ic ne geþrīstige for mōdes mīnes nȳte-nysse.

## 7. TEACHER, FOWLER, AND HUNTER.

Lp. Hpæt segst þū, fugelere? Hū bespicst þū fugelās?

Fug. On fela pisenā ic bespīce fugelās; hpilum mid nettum, hpilum mid grīnum, hpilum mid limē, hpilum mid hpistlunge, hpilum mid hafocē, hpilum mid treppan.

Lp. Hæfst þū hafoc?

Fug. Ic hæbbe.

Lp. Canst þū temian hī?

Fug. Gea, ic can. Hpæt sceoldon hī mē, būtan ic eāðe temian hī?

F. I werp<sup>1</sup> the unclean out, and i-nim<sup>2</sup> me clean to<sup>3</sup> meat.

T. Where chopst<sup>4</sup> thou fishes thine?

F. On Chester<sup>5</sup>.

T. Who buyeth hem<sup>6</sup>?

F. Chester-were<sup>7</sup>. I ne<sup>8</sup> may so fele<sup>9</sup> i-fon<sup>10</sup> so-fele-so<sup>9</sup> I may i-sell.

T. Which fishes i-fangst<sup>10</sup> thou?

F. Eels and haked<sup>11</sup>, minnows and eel-pouts, shot<sup>12</sup> and lam-preys, and so-which-so<sup>13</sup> on water swimmeth.

T. For why ne<sup>8</sup> fishest thou on sea?

F. Whilom I do, ac<sup>14</sup> seldom, forthat<sup>15</sup> much rowing to-me is to sea.

T. What fangst<sup>10</sup> thou on sea?

F. Herrings and laxes<sup>16</sup>, mere-swine<sup>17</sup> and sturgeons, oysters and crabs, muscles, pinewineles, sea-cockles, fadge, and flowks, and lobsters, and fele<sup>9</sup> of such.

T. Wilt thou fon<sup>10</sup> some whale?

F. Not I.

T. For why?

F. Forthat plightly<sup>18</sup> thing it is to-ifon<sup>10</sup> whale. I-burg-lier<sup>19</sup> is to-me to-fare<sup>20</sup> to ac<sup>21</sup> mid<sup>22</sup> ship mine, than to-fare<sup>20</sup> mid<sup>22</sup> many ships a hunting of grampus.

T. For why so?

F. Forthat<sup>15</sup> liefer<sup>23</sup> is to-me to-ifon<sup>10</sup> fish that I may off-slay, than that no<sup>24</sup> that one<sup>24</sup> me, ac<sup>14</sup> eke<sup>25</sup> such<sup>25</sup> my i-feres<sup>26</sup> mid<sup>22</sup> one sley<sup>27</sup> he may (be-)sink or i-quell<sup>28</sup>.

T. And though<sup>29</sup> many i-fo<sup>10</sup> whales, and at-burst<sup>30</sup> freeness<sup>31</sup> and much scot<sup>32</sup> thence (be-)get.

F. Sooth thou sayest, ac<sup>14</sup> I ne thristy<sup>33</sup> for mood's mine ne-wit-iness<sup>34</sup>.

## 7. TEACHER, FOWLER, AND HUNTER.

T. What sayest thou, fowler? How be-swikest<sup>35</sup> thou fowls?

F. On fele<sup>9</sup> wise<sup>36</sup> I be-swike<sup>35</sup> fowls; whilom with nets, whilom with grins, whilom with lime, whilom with whistling, whilom with hawk, whilom with trap.

T. Hast thou hawk?

F. I have.

T. Canst thou tame hem<sup>6</sup>?

F. Yea, I can. What should hi<sup>37</sup> me, but<sup>38</sup> I could tame hem<sup>6</sup>?

<sup>1</sup> throw (S.). <sup>2</sup> take. <sup>3</sup> as, for. <sup>4</sup> sell. <sup>5</sup> city; compare West-chester. <sup>6</sup> them (Ch.). <sup>7</sup> Citizens; compare were-wolf. <sup>8</sup> not. <sup>9</sup> so many as. <sup>10</sup> take. <sup>11</sup> pike. <sup>12</sup> trout. <sup>13</sup> such as. <sup>14</sup> but (P. P.). <sup>15</sup> because. <sup>16</sup> salmon. <sup>17</sup> porpoise. <sup>18</sup> perilous (?). <sup>19</sup> safer, *iboruwen*, safe (S.). <sup>20</sup> go. <sup>21</sup> river (S.). <sup>22</sup> with (Ch.). <sup>23</sup> preferable. <sup>24</sup> not only. <sup>25</sup> likewise, also. <sup>26</sup> comrades. <sup>27</sup> blow (S.). <sup>28</sup> kill. <sup>29</sup> yet. <sup>30</sup> escape (S.). <sup>31</sup> danger (?). <sup>32</sup> money. <sup>33</sup> dare (compare adj., S.). <sup>34</sup> dullness (?). <sup>35</sup> catch. <sup>36</sup> ways. <sup>37</sup> they (profit) (P. P.). <sup>38</sup> unless.

H. Sell<sup>1</sup> me a hawk.

F. I sell<sup>1</sup> lustliche<sup>2</sup> if thou sellest<sup>1</sup> me a swift hound. Which hawk wilt thou have, the more<sup>3</sup>, whether-the<sup>4</sup> the less?

H. Sell<sup>1</sup> me the more<sup>3</sup>.

T. How (a-)feedest thou hawks thine?

F. Ii<sup>5</sup> feed hem<sup>6</sup>-selves and me on winter, and on lent<sup>7</sup> I let hem<sup>6</sup> (at-)wind<sup>8</sup> to wood, and i-nim<sup>9</sup> me birds<sup>10</sup> on harvest, and tame hem<sup>6</sup>.

T. And for why (for-)lettest thou the i-tamed (at-)wind<sup>8</sup> from thee?

F. For-that<sup>11</sup> I nill<sup>12</sup> feed hem<sup>6</sup> on summer, for-that<sup>11</sup> that hi<sup>9</sup> thraly<sup>13</sup> eat.

T. And many feed the i-tamed over summer, that eft<sup>14</sup> hi<sup>9</sup> may-have yare<sup>15</sup>.

F. Yea, so hi<sup>9</sup> do, ac<sup>16</sup> I nill<sup>12</sup> oth<sup>17</sup> that one<sup>18</sup> derve<sup>19</sup> over hem<sup>6</sup>, for-that<sup>11</sup> I can others, no<sup>20</sup> that one<sup>18</sup>, ac<sup>16</sup> eke so-like many, i-fon<sup>21</sup>.

#### 8. TEACHER AND MERCHANT.

T. What sayest thou, monger<sup>22</sup>?

M. I say that behoov<sup>23</sup>full I am y<sup>23</sup> to-king, and aldermen, and wealthy, and all folks.

T. And how?

M. I (a-)sty<sup>24</sup> my ship mid<sup>25</sup> lasts<sup>26</sup> mine, and row over sea-like deals<sup>27</sup>, and chop<sup>28</sup> my things, and buy things dear-worth<sup>29</sup>, that on this land ne<sup>30</sup> be a-kenned<sup>31</sup>, and I it to i-lead<sup>32</sup> you hither mid<sup>25</sup> mickle<sup>33</sup> plight<sup>34</sup> over sea, and whilom<sup>35</sup> forlideness<sup>36</sup> I thole<sup>37</sup> mid<sup>25</sup> loss of-all things mine, uneath<sup>38</sup> quick<sup>39</sup> at-bursting<sup>40</sup>.

T. Which things (i-)leadest<sup>32</sup> thou to-us?

M. Palls<sup>41</sup> and silks, dear-worth<sup>29</sup> gems, and gold, selcouth<sup>42</sup> reef<sup>43</sup> and wort-i-mang<sup>44</sup>, wine, and oil, elephant's bone, and maslin<sup>45</sup>, bronze, and tin, sulphur, and glass, and of-the-like fele<sup>46</sup>.

T. Wilt thou sell things thine here, all so<sup>47</sup> thou hem<sup>6</sup> i-broughtest there?

M. I nill<sup>12</sup>. What then me framed<sup>48</sup> i-derf<sup>49</sup> mine? Ac<sup>16</sup> I will hem<sup>6</sup> chop<sup>28</sup> here lovelier<sup>50</sup> than I buy there, that some i-strain<sup>51</sup> me I may-(be-)get, thence<sup>52</sup> I me (a-)feed, and my wife, and my son.

<sup>1</sup> give. <sup>2</sup> with pleasure (S.). <sup>3</sup> larger. <sup>4</sup> or (S.). <sup>5</sup> they (P.P.). <sup>6</sup> em, them (Ch.). <sup>7</sup> spring, fly off (S.). <sup>8</sup> take. <sup>9</sup> young. <sup>10</sup> because. <sup>11</sup> will not. <sup>12</sup> very much (H.). <sup>13</sup> after. <sup>14</sup> ready, trained. <sup>15</sup> but (P.P.). <sup>16</sup> for (?). <sup>17</sup> alone. <sup>18</sup> toil (S.). <sup>19</sup> not that only, but likewise also many. <sup>20</sup> catch (S.). <sup>21</sup> merchant. <sup>22</sup> both (?). <sup>23</sup> ascend. <sup>24</sup> with (P.P.). <sup>25</sup> loads (Ch.). <sup>26</sup> parts, regions. <sup>27</sup> sell. <sup>28</sup> of great worth (S.). <sup>29</sup> not. <sup>30</sup> produced, kindred (S.). <sup>31</sup> bring to (S.). <sup>32</sup> much. <sup>33</sup> danger. <sup>34</sup> sometimes. <sup>35</sup> wreck (?). <sup>36</sup> suffer. <sup>37</sup> not easily. <sup>38</sup> alive. <sup>39</sup> escaping (S.). <sup>40</sup> purple cloth. <sup>41</sup> seldom seen, rare. <sup>42</sup> robes. <sup>43</sup> spices (?). <sup>44</sup> brass. <sup>45</sup> many (P.P.). <sup>46</sup> at the same price. <sup>47</sup> profited (S.). <sup>48</sup> toil (S.). <sup>49</sup> dearer (?). <sup>50</sup> gain (S.). <sup>51</sup> whence.

H. Syle mê âune hafoc.

Fug. Ic sylle lustlice, gif þû sylst mê âune spiftne hund. Hpilene hafoc pilt þû habban, þone mârân, hpæcter þe þone læs-san?

H. Syle mê þone mârân.

Lp. Hû âfæst þû hafocâs þine?

Fug. Hi fêdað hi selfe and mê on pintrâ, and on leneten ic læte hi ætpindan tô pudâ, and genime mê briddâs on hærfeste, and temige hi.

Lp. And for hpý forlætst þû þa getemedan ætpindan fram þe?

Fug. Forþam ic nelle fêdan hi on sumerâ, forþam þe hi þearle etað.

Lp. And manige fêdað þa getemedan ofer sumor, þæt eft hi habbân gearpe.

Fug. Gea, spâ hi dôð, ac ic nelle ôð þæt ân deorfan ofer hi, forþam ic can ôðre, nâ þæt âune, ac eac spilee manige, gefôn.

#### 8. TEACHER AND MERCHANT.

Lp. Hpæt segst þû, mangere?

M. Ic secge þæt behêfe ic eom ge cyninge, and ealdormannum and peligum, and eallum folce.

Lp. And hû?

M. Ic âstige mîn scip mid hlæstum mînum, and rôpe ofer sâlice dâelâs, and cýpe mîne þing, and bycege þing deórpyrðe, þa on þis-sum lande ne beôð âcennede, and ic hit tógelæde eôp hider mid miclum plihte ofer sâ, and hpilum forlidenesse ic þolie mid lyrê ealrâ þingâ mînrâ, uneâðe epie ætberstende.

Lp. Hpilce þing gelædst þû ús?

M. Pællâs and sídan, deórpyrðe gimmâs, and gold, seleâde reáf, and pyrtgemang, pín, and ele, ylþes bân, and mæsling, âer, and tin, spefel, and glæs, and þylces fela.

Lp. Dilt þû syllan þing þine hêr, eal spâ þû hi gebohtest þær?

M. Ic nelle. Hpæt þæne mê fremôde gedeorf mîn? Ac ic pille hi cýpan hêr luflicôr þæne ic gebycege þær, þæt sum gestreôn mê ic begite, þanon ic mê âfêde, and mîn píf, and mînne sunu.

## 9. TEACHER AND SHOEMAKER.

Lp. Pû, seeô-pyrhta, hpæt pyrcest þû ûs nytpyrdnesse?

S. Is pitodlice cræft mîn behêfe þearle eôp, and neôðþearf.

Lp. Hû?

S. Ic byege hÿdâ, and fel, and gearcie hî mid cræfte mînum, and pyrce of him geseçf mislices cynnes; spiftlerâs, and sceôs, leðer-hosan, and butericâs, bridel-þpangâs, and gerâdu, and flaxan, and higðifatu, spurleðern, and hælftrâ, þnsan, and fetelsâs, and nân eôper nele oferpintran bûtan mînum cræfte.

---

## 10. TEACHER AND SALTER.

Lp. Eâlâ, sealtre, hpæt ûs fremâð cræft þîn?

Sealt. Pearle fremâð cræft mîn eôp eallum: nân eôper blisse brÿcð on gereordunge, oððe metê, bûtan cræft mîn gistliðe him beô.

Lp. Hû?

Sealt. Hpîlc mannâ peredum þurhbrÿcð mettum bûtan spæcce sealtres? Hpâ gefÿld cleôfan his, oððe hêdernu, bûtan cræfte mînum? Efne, butergeþpeor ælc and cÿsgerun losað eôp, bûton ic hyrde ætpese eôp, þe ne furðon pyrtum eôprum, bûtan mê, brúcað.

---

## 11. TEACHER AND BAKER.

Lp. Hpæt segst þû, bæcere? Hpam fremâð cræft þîn, oððe hpæðer bûtan þê pê mâgon lif âdreôgan?

B. Gê mâgon pitodlice þurh sum fæc bûtan mînum cræfte lif âdreôgan, ac nâ lange, ne tô pel; sôðlice bûtan cræfte mînum ælc beôð æmtig bið gesepen, and bûtan hlâfe ælc mete tô plættan bið gehpyrfed. Ic heortan mannes gestraungie; ic mægen perâ eom; and furðon lytlingâs nellað forbÿgean mê.

---

## 12. TEACHER AND COOK.

Lp. Hpæt seegað þe be coce? hpæðer þê beþurfon on ænigum cræfte his?

C. Gif gê mê út-âdrifað fram eôprum gefêrscipe, gê etað pyrtâ



9. TEACHER AND SHOEMAKER.

T. Thou, shoe-wright, what workest thou us of nut-worth-ness<sup>1</sup>?

S. Is witterly<sup>2</sup> craft mine behoove<sup>3</sup>full thrally<sup>3</sup> to-you, and need-tharf<sup>4</sup>.

T. How?

S. I buy hides and fells, and yark<sup>5</sup> hem<sup>6</sup> mid<sup>7</sup> craft mine, and work of hem<sup>6</sup> (i-)shoes of mis-like<sup>8</sup> kind; swiftlers<sup>9</sup>, and shoes, leather-hose, and bottles, bridle-thongs, and i-readies<sup>10</sup>, and flasks, and heedly-fats<sup>11</sup>, spur-leathers, and halters, purses and pouches, and none of you nill<sup>12</sup> over-winter but<sup>13</sup> my craft.

10. TEACHER AND SALTER.

T. O lo, salter, what us frameth<sup>14</sup> craft thine?

S. Thrally<sup>3</sup> frameth<sup>14</sup> craft mine you all: none of-you bliss brooketh<sup>15</sup> on i-erding<sup>16</sup>, or meat<sup>17</sup>, but<sup>18</sup> craft mine guestly<sup>19</sup> to-him be.

T. How?

S. Which of men wered<sup>20</sup> through-brooketh meats but<sup>13</sup> swack<sup>21</sup> of-salt? Who i-filleth cleve<sup>22</sup> his, or heed-erne<sup>23</sup>, but<sup>13</sup> craft mine? Even<sup>24</sup>, butter-thwer<sup>25</sup> each and cheese-i-runnet loseth to-you, but<sup>18</sup> I herd<sup>26</sup> at-be to-you, that<sup>27</sup> ne<sup>28</sup> forthen<sup>29</sup> worts<sup>30</sup> your, but<sup>13</sup> me, brook<sup>15</sup>.

11. TEACHER AND BAKER.

T. What sayest thou, baker? Whom frameth<sup>14</sup> craft thine, or whether but<sup>13</sup> thee we may life (a-)dree<sup>31</sup>?

B. Ye may witterly<sup>2</sup> through some fac<sup>32</sup> but<sup>13</sup> my craft life (a-)dree<sup>31</sup>, ac<sup>33</sup> no<sup>34</sup> long ne<sup>35</sup> too<sup>36</sup> well; soothly<sup>37</sup> but<sup>13</sup> craft mine each bode<sup>38</sup> empty beeth<sup>39</sup> seen<sup>39</sup>, and but<sup>13</sup> loaf each meat to wlatng<sup>40</sup> beeth i-warped. I heart of-man i-strengthen; I main<sup>41</sup> of-were<sup>42</sup> am; and forthen<sup>29</sup> littlings<sup>43</sup> nill<sup>44</sup> for-bug<sup>45</sup> me.

12. TEACHER AND COOK.

T. What say we by<sup>46</sup> cook? Whether we be-tharf<sup>47</sup> in any respect craft his?

C. If ye me out-a-drive from your i-fere-ship<sup>48</sup>, ye eat worts<sup>30</sup>

<sup>1</sup> usefulness (see *nut*, use, S.). <sup>2</sup> certainly (P.P.). <sup>3</sup> very much (H.). <sup>4</sup> needful (tharf=need, Ch.). <sup>5</sup> prepare (H.). <sup>6</sup> em, them (Ch.). <sup>7</sup> with (P.P.). <sup>8</sup> unlike, various (S.). <sup>9</sup> slippers. <sup>10</sup> trappings. <sup>11</sup> bath-buckets (?). <sup>12</sup> wish not to pass the winter. <sup>13</sup> without (S.). <sup>14</sup> profiteth (H.). <sup>15</sup> enjoyeth. <sup>16</sup> luncheon (?). <sup>17</sup> dinner. <sup>18</sup> unless. <sup>19</sup> hospitable. <sup>20</sup> sweet, fresh meats thoroughly enjoys (S.). <sup>21</sup> taste (?). <sup>22</sup> cellar (S.). <sup>23</sup> pantry. <sup>24</sup> aye. <sup>25</sup> churning (?). <sup>26</sup> keeper, preserver. <sup>27</sup> who, i. e., you. <sup>28</sup> not. <sup>29</sup> furthermore (S.). <sup>30</sup> vegetables. <sup>31</sup> endure. <sup>32</sup> time (?). <sup>33</sup> but (P.P.). <sup>34</sup> not. <sup>35</sup> nor. <sup>36</sup> so. <sup>37</sup> in truth. <sup>38</sup> table (H.). <sup>39</sup> seems. <sup>40</sup> loathing (S.). <sup>41</sup> strength. <sup>42</sup> men; compare *were*-wolf. <sup>43</sup> children. <sup>44</sup> will not. <sup>45</sup> shuu (S.). <sup>46</sup> about. <sup>47</sup> need (tharf=need, Ch.). <sup>48</sup> company (see *i-fere*, S.).

your green, and flesh-meats your raw, and ne<sup>1</sup> forthen<sup>2</sup> fat broth ye may but<sup>3</sup> craft mine have.

T. We ne<sup>1</sup> reck by<sup>4</sup> craft thine, ne<sup>5</sup> he<sup>6</sup> to-us need-tharf<sup>7</sup> is, forthat<sup>8</sup> we-selves may seethe the things that to seethe are, and brede<sup>9</sup> the things that to brede<sup>9</sup> are.

C. If ye for that me from-a-drive<sup>10</sup>, that ye thus do, then be ye all thralls, and none of-you ne<sup>1</sup> beeth lord; and, though-whether<sup>11</sup> but<sup>3</sup> craft mine ye ne<sup>1</sup> eat.

### 13. TEACHER AND SCHOLAR.

T. O lo! thou monk, that me to speakest, even<sup>12</sup> I have a-found thee to-have good i-feres<sup>13</sup>, and thraly<sup>14</sup> need-tharf<sup>15</sup>; and I ask<sup>16</sup> them.

S. I have smiths, iron-smiths, gold-smith, silver-smith, ore<sup>16</sup>-smith, tree-wright<sup>17</sup>, and many other of-mis-like<sup>18</sup> crafts be-gangers<sup>19</sup>.

T. Hast thou any wise i-thought-ful<sup>20</sup> one?

S. I-wisly<sup>21</sup> I have. How may our gathering but<sup>3</sup> i-thinking<sup>20</sup> one be wissed<sup>22</sup>?

### 14. TEACHER, COUNSELOR, SMITH, AND OTHERS.

T. What sayest thou, Wise? Which craft to-thee is<sup>23</sup> i-thought<sup>23</sup> betwixt<sup>26</sup> those further<sup>24</sup> to be?

C. I say to thee, to-me is i-thought<sup>23</sup> God's thewdom<sup>25</sup> betweoh<sup>26</sup> those crafts eldership to-hold, so so it is (i-)read on gospel, Foremost seek riche<sup>27</sup> God's, and righteousness his, and those things all be to-i-eked<sup>28</sup> to-you.

T. And which to-thee is<sup>23</sup> i-thought<sup>23</sup> betwixt<sup>26</sup> world-crafts to-hold elderdom<sup>29</sup>?

C. Earth-tilth<sup>30</sup>, forthat<sup>8</sup> the earthling<sup>31</sup> us all feeds.

The Smith sayeth:

Whence to-the earthling<sup>31</sup> sull-share<sup>32</sup> or coulter, that no gad hath but of craft mine? Whence fisher angle, or shoe-wright awl, or seamer needle? Nis<sup>33</sup> it of my (i-)work?

The I-thinking-one answereth:

Sooth, witterly<sup>34</sup>, sayst thou; ac<sup>35</sup> to-all us liefer<sup>36</sup> is to-wick<sup>37</sup> mid<sup>38</sup> the earthling<sup>31</sup> than mid<sup>38</sup> thee; forthat<sup>8</sup> the earthling<sup>31</sup> selleth<sup>39</sup> us loaf and

<sup>1</sup> not. <sup>2</sup> furthermore (S.). <sup>3</sup> without (S.). <sup>4</sup> care for. <sup>5</sup> nor. <sup>6</sup> it. <sup>7</sup> needful (tharf=need, Ch.). <sup>8</sup> because. <sup>9</sup> roast (S.). <sup>10</sup> drive from you. <sup>11</sup> whether or no, notwithstanding. <sup>12</sup> truly (?). <sup>13</sup> comrades (S.). <sup>14</sup> very (H.). <sup>15</sup> ask about them—who are they? <sup>16</sup> copper-smith. <sup>17</sup> carpenter. <sup>18</sup> unlike, various (S.). <sup>19</sup> practitioners (?). <sup>20</sup> counselor (?). <sup>21</sup> certainly (Ch.). <sup>22</sup> guided (Ch.). <sup>23</sup> seems. <sup>24</sup> foremost. <sup>25</sup> service (S.). <sup>26</sup> betwixt, amongst. <sup>27</sup> kingdom (bishop-ric, H.). <sup>28</sup> added (?). <sup>29</sup> supremacy. <sup>30</sup> farming (Wycl.). <sup>31</sup> farmer. <sup>32</sup> plow-share. <sup>33</sup> is not (Ch.). <sup>34</sup> certainly (P. P.). <sup>35</sup> but (S.). <sup>36</sup> pleasanter, better. <sup>37</sup> reside, have a *uic* or house. <sup>38</sup> with (P. P.). <sup>39</sup> giveth, supplieth.

eôpre grêne, and flâse-mettâs eôpre breâpe, and ne furdon fîet broð gê mâgon bûtan cræfte mînum habban.

Lp. Dê ne rêcað be cræfte þinum, ne hê ûs neôðþearf is, forþam pê selfe mâgon seôðan þa þing þe tô seôðenne sind, and brâðan þa þing þe tô brâðenne sind.

C. Gif gê for þÿ mê fram-âdrîfað, þæt gê þus dôn, þonne beô gê ealle þrêlâs, and nân eôper ne bið hlâford; and, þealh-þræðere bûtan cræfte mînum gê ne etað.

### 13. TEACHER AND SCHOLAR.

Lp. Eâlâ, þû munuc, þe mê tô spriest, efne ic hæbbe âfandôð þê habban gôðe gefêran, and þearle neôðþearfe; and ic âhsie þa.

Le. Ic hæbbe smidâs, isene-smidâs, gold-smið, seolfor-smið, âr-smið, treôp-pyrhtan, and manige ôðre mislîerâ cræftâ bigengerâs.

Lp. Hæfst þû ânigne þisne geþehtan?

Le. Gepislice ic hæbbe. Hû mæg âre gegaderung bûtan geþehtende beôn þîsôð?

### 14. TEACHER, COUNSELOR, SMITH, AND OTHERS.

Lp. Hpæt segst þû, Ðîsa? Hpîle cræft þê is geþuht betpux þâs furðra pesan?

G. Ic secge þê, mê is geþuht Godes þeôpðôm betpeoh þâs cræftâs ealdorseipe healdan, spâ spâ hit is gerâð on godspelle, Fÿrmest sêceað rice Godes, and rihtþîsnesse his, and þâs þing ealle beôð tôgeþhte eôp.

Lp. And hpîle þê is geþuht betpux porold-cræftâs healdan ealdordôm?

G. Eorð-tîlð, forþam se yrdling ûs ealle fêt.

Se Smið segeð:

Hpanon þam yrdlinge sulh-seear oððe culter, þe nâ gade hæfð, bûton of cræfte mînum? Hpanon fiscere angel, oððe secô-pyrhtan æl, oððe seâmere nêðl? Nis hit of mînum geþeorce?

Se Geþehtend andsperâð:

Sôð pitodlice segst þû; æc eallum ûs leôfre is þîcian mid þam yrdlinge þænne mid þê; forþam se yrdling sylð ûs hlâf and

drene: þú, hpæt sylst þú ús on smiððan þinre, bútan ísene  
fýr-spearcan, and spêgingá beátendrâ slecgeâ, and blâpendrâ  
byligá?

Se Treôp-pyrhta segeð :

Hpile eôper ne notað cræfte mínê ; þonne hûs, and mislice fatu,  
and scipu eôp eallum ie pyree?

Se Smið andpyrt :

Eâlâ treôp-pyrhta, for hpý spâ spriest þú, þonne ne furðon ân  
þyrl bútan cræfte mínum þú ne miht dôn?

Se Geþeahrend segeð :

Eâlâ gefêran and gôde pyrhtan ! Uton tôpeorpan hpætlícôr  
þâs geflitu, and sí sib and geþpærness betpeoh ús, and fremige  
ânâ gehpyle ôðrum on cræfte his, and geþpærian symble mid  
þam yrdlinge, þær pê bigleofan ús, and fôðor horsum úrum hab-  
bað ; and þis geþeahr ie sylle eallum pyrhtum, þæt ânâ gehpyle  
cræft his geornlice begange ; forþam se þe cræft his forlâet, hê  
byð forlâeten fram þam cræfte. Spâ hpæder þú sí, spâ mæsse-  
preôst, spâ munuc, spâ ceorl, spâ cempa, begâ þe selne on þisum :  
beô þæt þú eart, forþam niçel hýnd and secamu hit is men, nelle  
pesan þæt þe hê is, and þæt þe hê pesan sceal.

#### 15. TEACHER AND SCHOLAR.

Lp. Eâlâ cild, hû eôp licâð þeôs spræc?

Le. Wel heô licâð ús, ac þearle deôþlice þú spriest, and ofer  
mæðe úre þú forðtýhð þâ spræce ; ac sprce ús æfter úrum and-  
gite, þæt pê mægen understandan þâ þing þe þú spriest.

Lp. Ic âhsige eôp for hpý spâ geornlice leornige gê?

Le. Forþam pê nellað pesan spâ stunte nýtenu, þâ nân þing  
pitað bútan gærs and pæter.

Lp. And hpæt pille gê?

Le. Dê pillað pesan pise.

Lp. In hpileum písdóme? Dille gê pesan prætige, oððe þú-  
sendhiþe, on léasungum lytige, on spræcum gleáþlice, hinder-  
geápe, pel sprecende and yfele þencende, spâsum pordum under-  
þeôðde, fâcen piðinnan tydrende, spâ spâ byrgels, mettum ofer-  
gepeorce, piðinnan ful stencê?

drink : thou, what sellest<sup>1</sup> thou us in smithy thine, but iron fire-sparks, and sweying<sup>2</sup> of-beating sledges, and of-blowing bellows?

The Tree-wright<sup>3</sup> sayeth :

Which of-you ne<sup>4</sup> noteth<sup>5</sup> craft mine; then<sup>6</sup> house, and mis-like<sup>7</sup> fats<sup>8</sup>, and ships for-you all I work?

The Smith anwordeth<sup>9</sup> :

O lo, tree-wright<sup>3</sup>, for why so speakest thou, then<sup>6</sup> ne<sup>5</sup> forthen<sup>10</sup> one thirl<sup>11</sup> but<sup>12</sup> craft mine thou ne<sup>4</sup> might do?

The I-thinking<sup>13</sup> sayeth :

O lo, i-feres<sup>14</sup> and good wrights! Wite-we<sup>15</sup> to-warp<sup>16</sup> whatliker<sup>17</sup> those i-flites<sup>18</sup>, and be sib<sup>19</sup> and i-thwerness<sup>20</sup> betweenhs<sup>21</sup> us, and frame<sup>22</sup> of-ones<sup>23</sup> i-which<sup>23</sup> to-other in craft his, and i-thwer<sup>24</sup> symble<sup>25</sup> mid<sup>26</sup> the earthling<sup>27</sup>, there<sup>28</sup> we belive<sup>29</sup> for-us, and fodder for horses our have; and this i-thought I sell<sup>1</sup> to all wrights, that of-ones<sup>30</sup> i-which<sup>30</sup> craft his yernliche<sup>31</sup> be-go<sup>32</sup>; forthat that<sup>33</sup> that craft his for-letteth<sup>34</sup>, he beeth for-let<sup>34</sup> from the craft. So whether<sup>35</sup> thou be, so<sup>36</sup> mass-priest, so monk, so churl, so kemp<sup>37</sup>, be-go<sup>32</sup> thee self on this : be that thou art, forthat mickle hinh<sup>38</sup> and shame it is to-man, nill-he<sup>39</sup> to-be that that he is, and that that he be shall<sup>40</sup>.

# 15. TEACHER AND SCHOLAR.

T. O lo, child, how to-you liketh<sup>41</sup> this speech?

S. Well she<sup>42</sup> liketh<sup>41</sup> to-us, ac<sup>43</sup> thraly<sup>44</sup> deeply thou speakest, and over meeth<sup>45</sup> our thou forth-tuggest the speech; ac<sup>43</sup> speak to-us after our an-git<sup>46</sup>, that we may understand the things that thou speakest.

T. I ask you for why so yernliche<sup>31</sup> learn ye?

S. Forthat we nill<sup>47</sup> to-be so-as stunt<sup>48</sup>, neat<sup>49</sup>, that none thing wit<sup>50</sup> but grass and water.

T. And what will ye?

S. We will to-be wise.

T. In which wisdom? Will ye be pretty<sup>51</sup>, or thou-sand-lued, in leasings<sup>52</sup> litty<sup>53</sup>, in speeches gleve<sup>54</sup>, hinder-yeep<sup>55</sup>, well speaking and evil thinking, to-sweet words under-theed<sup>56</sup>, faken<sup>57</sup> within tudring<sup>58</sup>, so so<sup>36</sup> buryel<sup>59</sup>, with meted<sup>60</sup> over-i-work, within full with-stench?

<sup>1</sup> give. <sup>2</sup> sounding (P. P.). <sup>3</sup> carpenter. <sup>4</sup> not. <sup>5</sup> useth (S.). <sup>6</sup> since. <sup>7</sup> unlike, various. <sup>8</sup> vessels, utensils. <sup>9</sup> answers (H.). <sup>10</sup> furthermore (S.). <sup>11</sup> hole; compare nos-tril. <sup>12</sup> without. <sup>13</sup> counselor (?). <sup>14</sup> comrades (S.). <sup>15</sup> go we=let us (S.). <sup>16</sup> throw away (S.). <sup>17</sup> very promptly (S.). <sup>18</sup> strifes (S.). <sup>19</sup> peace. <sup>20</sup> concord (?). <sup>21</sup> among (Ch.). <sup>22</sup> aid (H.). <sup>23</sup> each one the other. <sup>24</sup> agree (?). <sup>25</sup> always (?). <sup>26</sup> with (P. P.). <sup>27</sup> farmer. <sup>28</sup> with whom. <sup>29</sup> victuals (P. P.). <sup>30</sup> each one. <sup>31</sup> earnestly (S.). <sup>32</sup> practice (S.). <sup>33</sup> he. <sup>34</sup> let go, abandon (Ch.). <sup>35</sup> whatever. <sup>36</sup> as, for example. <sup>37</sup> champion. <sup>38</sup> loss (S.). <sup>39</sup> if he will not. <sup>40</sup> ought. <sup>41</sup> pleaseth (Ch.). <sup>42</sup> the speech. <sup>43</sup> but (S.). <sup>44</sup> very (H.). <sup>45</sup> age (S.). <sup>46</sup> understanding (?). <sup>47</sup> will not. <sup>48</sup> stupid. <sup>49</sup> cattle. <sup>50</sup> know. <sup>51</sup> crafty. <sup>52</sup> lies. <sup>53</sup> cunning, nimble (H.). <sup>54</sup> clever (S.). <sup>55</sup> sly (yeep, cunning, P. P.). <sup>56</sup> addicted (?). <sup>57</sup> deceit (S.). <sup>58</sup> begetting (S.). <sup>59</sup> sepulchre (S.). <sup>60</sup> painted (S.).

S. We nill<sup>1</sup> so *to-be* wise, forthat he nis<sup>2</sup> wise that mid<sup>3</sup> dydring<sup>4</sup> him self biswiketh<sup>5</sup>.

T. Ac<sup>6</sup> how will ye?

S. We will *to-be* bilewit<sup>7</sup>, but<sup>8</sup> likening<sup>9</sup>, and wise, that we bow from evil, and do good; yet though-whether<sup>10</sup> deeplier mid<sup>3</sup> us thou smeest<sup>11</sup> than eld<sup>12</sup> our anfon<sup>13</sup> may; ac<sup>6</sup> speak to-us after our i-wonts not so deeply.

T. I do all-so<sup>14</sup> ye bid. Thou, knave<sup>15</sup>, what didst thou to day?

S. Many things I did. On this night, then-then<sup>16</sup> knell<sup>17</sup> I i-heard, I arose off my bed, and yode<sup>18</sup> to church, and sang uht-song<sup>19</sup> mid<sup>3</sup> i-brothers; after that we sang by all-hallows, and day-red-ly<sup>20</sup> love-songs<sup>21</sup>, after these, prime, and seven psalms mid<sup>3</sup> litanies, and capital mass; sithen<sup>22</sup> undern-tide, and did mass by day; after these we sung midday, and ate, and drunk, and slept, and eft we arose, and sung nones, and now we are here afore thee, yare<sup>23</sup> to-i-hear what thou to us may say.

T. When will ye sing even, or night-song?

S. Then<sup>16</sup> it time be.

T. Wert thou to day (be-)swinged<sup>24</sup>?

S. I nas<sup>25</sup>, forthat warily I me held.

T. And how thine i-feres<sup>26</sup>?

S. What me askest thou by that? I ne<sup>27</sup> dare ope to-thee digels<sup>28</sup> our. Of-ones<sup>29</sup> i-which<sup>29</sup> wots if he swunged<sup>24</sup> was or no.

T. What eatest thou a day?

S. Yet flesh-meats I brook<sup>30</sup>, forthat child I am under yerde<sup>21</sup> *living*<sup>32</sup>.

T. What more eatest thou?

S. Worts, and eggs, fish, and cheese, butter, and beans, and all clean things I eat mid mickle thanking.

T. Swithly<sup>33</sup> wax-yerne<sup>34</sup> art thou, then thou all things eatest that thee to-form i-set *are*.

S. I ne<sup>27</sup> am so mickle swallower, that I all kinds of meats on one i-rerding<sup>34</sup> eat may.

T. Ac<sup>6</sup> how.

S. I brook<sup>30</sup> whilom these meats, and whilom others mid<sup>3</sup> soberness, so so is-deft for-a-monk, not with over-eating, forthat I am none glutton.

T. And what drinkest thou?

S. Ale, if I have, or water, if I have-not ale.

<sup>1</sup> will not. <sup>2</sup> is not (Ch.). <sup>3</sup> with (P.P.). <sup>4</sup> illusion, diddling (?). <sup>5</sup> deceiveth (P.P.). <sup>6</sup> but (S.). <sup>7</sup> gentle (S.). <sup>8</sup> without. <sup>9</sup> hypoerisy (?). <sup>10</sup> whether or no. <sup>11</sup> scrutinizest (?). <sup>12</sup> age. <sup>13</sup> receive (S.). <sup>14</sup> just as. <sup>15</sup> boy. <sup>16</sup> when. <sup>17</sup> bell. <sup>18</sup> went. <sup>19</sup> early morning (S.). <sup>20</sup> dawn (S.). <sup>21</sup> *lof*, praise, lauds (S.). <sup>22</sup> since. <sup>23</sup> ready. <sup>24</sup> whipped. <sup>25</sup> was not. <sup>26</sup> comrades (S.). <sup>27</sup> not. <sup>28</sup> secrets (S.). <sup>29</sup> each one. <sup>30</sup> use. <sup>31</sup> rod, yard. <sup>32</sup> perhaps akin to *drudging*. <sup>33</sup> very (Ch.). <sup>34</sup> greedy (?). <sup>35</sup> repast (?).

Le. Ðê nellad spà pesan pîse, forþam hê nis pîs, þe mid dy-drunge hine selfne bespîcêð.

Lp. Ac hû pille gê?

Le. Ðê pillad beôn bilepîte, bûtan licetunge, and pîse, þæt pê bûgen fram yfele, and dôn gôð; git þealh-hpædere deôþlicôr mid ðs þû smeâgest þænne yld ðre anfon mæge; ac sprec ðs æfter ðrum gepunum næs spà deôþlice.

Lp. Ic dô ealspà gê biddad. Pû, enapa, hpæt dydest þû tô dæg?

Le. Manige þing ic dyde. On þisse nihte, þâþa enyl ic gehyrde, ic ârâs of mînum bedde, and eode tô cyricean, and sang uht-sang mid gebrôðrum; æfter þâ pê sungon be eallum hâlgum, and dægrêðlice lofsangâs; æfter þissum, prim, and seofon seal-mâs mid letanium, and capitol-mæssan; siððan underntîde, and dydon mæssan be dæge; æfter þissum pê sungon middæg, and æton, and druncon, and slêpon, and eft pê ârison, and sungon nôn, and nû pê sind hêr ætforan þê, gearpe gehýran hpæt þû ðs secge.

Lp. Hpænne pille gê singan æfen, oððe niht-sang?

Le. Ponne hit tîma bið.

Lp. Ðære þû tô dæg bespungen?

Le. Ic næs, forþam pærlice ic mê heôld.

Lp. And hû þîne gefêran?

Le. Hpæt mê âhsâst þû be þam? Ic ne dear yppan þê dêglu ðre. Ârâ gehpile pût gif hê bespungen pæs oððe nâ.

Lp. Hpæt itst þû on dæg?

Le. Git flæse-mettum ic brûce, forþam cild ic eom under gyrde drohtniende.

Lp. Hpæt mâre itst þû?

Le. Dyrta, and ægru, fise, and cêse, buteran, and beânâ, and ealle clâne þing ic ete mid micelre þancunge.

Lp. Spîðe paxgeorn eart þû, þonne þû ealle þing itst þe þê tô-foran gesette sind.

Le. Ic ne eom spà micel spelgere, þæt ic ealle cyn mettâ on ânre gereordunge etan mæge.

Lp. Ac hû?

Le. Ic brûce hpîlum þissum mettum, and hpîlum ôðrum mîa sýfernesse, spà spà dafenad munuce, næs mid oferhropse, forþam ic eom nân glûto.

Lp. And hpæt drinest þû?

Le. Ealu, gif ic hæbbe, oððe pæter, gif ic næbbe ealu.

Lp. Ne drinest þú pín?

Le. Ic ne eom spá spédig þæt ic mæge bycgan mē pín; and pín nis drenc cildā, ne dysigrā, æc caldrā and písrā.

Lp. Hpær slæpst þú?

Le. On slæp-erne mid gebrôðrum.

Lp. Hpā āpeed þe tō uht-sange?

Le. Hpilum ic gehýfe enyl, and ic árise; hpilum lāreōp mīn āpeed mē stídlíce mid gyrde.

Lp. Ealā gē gōde cildru, and pynsume leornerās, eōp manād eōper lāreōp þæt gē hýrsumiān godeundum lārum, and þæt gē healdān eōp selfe ænlíce on ælcere stōpe. Gād þeāplíce, þonne gē gehýrān cyricean bellan, and gād intō cyricean, and ābūgað eādmōdlíce tō hālgum pefodum, and standað þeāplíce, and singað ānmōdlíce, and gebiddað for eōprum synnum, and gād út būtan hygeleāste tō clūstre, oððe tō leornunge.

T. Ne<sup>1</sup> drinkest thou wine?

S. I ne<sup>1</sup> am so speedy<sup>2</sup> that I may buy me wine; and wine nis<sup>3</sup> drink of-children, ne<sup>4</sup> dizzy<sup>5</sup>, æc<sup>6</sup> of-old and wise.

T. Where sleepest thou?

S. On sleep-erne<sup>7</sup> mid i-brothers.

T. Who awaketh thee to uht-song<sup>8</sup>?

S. Whilom I hear knell<sup>9</sup>, and I arise; whilom loremaster mine awakes me stithly<sup>10</sup> mid<sup>11</sup> yerde<sup>12</sup>.

T. O lo, ye good childer<sup>13</sup>, and winsome learners, you moneth<sup>14</sup> your loremaster that ye hersumen<sup>15</sup> godeund<sup>16</sup> lores<sup>17</sup>, and that ye hold you selves unlike<sup>18</sup> in each stow<sup>19</sup>. Go thewly<sup>20</sup>, then<sup>21</sup> ye i-hear church's bells, and go into church, and (a-)bow edmodly<sup>22</sup> to holy *altars*, and stand thewly<sup>23</sup>, and sing one-mood-ly<sup>24</sup>, and i-bid<sup>25</sup> for your sins, and go out but<sup>26</sup> heedlessness to cloister or to learning<sup>26</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> not. <sup>2</sup> rich. <sup>3</sup> is not (Ch.). <sup>4</sup> nor. <sup>5</sup> foolish. <sup>6</sup> but (S.). <sup>7</sup> *erne*, room. <sup>8</sup> early morning service (S.). <sup>9</sup> bell. <sup>10</sup> harshly (S.). <sup>11</sup> with (P. P.). <sup>12</sup> rod, yard. <sup>13</sup> (Ch.). <sup>14</sup> admonisheth (S.). <sup>15</sup> obey (S.). <sup>16</sup> divine (S.). <sup>17</sup> precepts. <sup>18</sup> elegantly (onliche, S.). <sup>19</sup> place (S.). <sup>20</sup> becomingly; see *thews*, customs. <sup>21</sup> when. <sup>22</sup> humbly (S.). <sup>23</sup> with one mind. <sup>24</sup> pray. <sup>25</sup> without. <sup>26</sup> gymnasium.



## ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE.

---

Brytene ígland is ehta hund milá lang, and tpá hund milá bráð; and hêr sind on þam ígland fif geþeódu, Englisc, Bryttisc, Scot-tisc, Pihtisc and Bôclæden. Ærest pæron búend þises landes Bryttás; þá cōmon of Armorica, and gesæton súðanpearde Brytene ærest. Þá gelamp hit þæt Pihtás cōmon súðan of Sciddian, mid langum scipum, ná manegum; and þá cōmon ærest on nord Ybernian up, and þá epædon þá Scottás, “Dê piton ôðer ígland hêr be eástan, þær gê mágon eardian, gif gê pillað; and gif hpá eóp piðstent, pé eóp fultumiad.” Þá fêrdon þá Pihtás, and ge-fêrdon þis land nordanpeard.

Þá gelamp hit ymbe geárá ryne þæt Scottá sum dæl gepát of Ybernian on Brytene, and þæs landes sumne dæl ge-eódon.

Sixtigum pintrum ær þam þe Crist pære ácenned, Gaius Iúlius se cásere ærest Rômáná Brytenland gesóhte; and Bryttás mid gefeohtê enysede, and hî oferspíðde. Þá flugon þá Bryttás tô þám pudu-pêstenum, and se cásere ge-eóde pel manige heáh burh mid miclum gepinne, and eft gepát intô Galpalum.

A.D. 47. Hêr Claudius ôðer Rômáná cyningá Brytenland gesóhte, and þone mæstan dæl þæs íglandes on his gepeald onfêng. Þá fêng Nero tô rice æfter Claudie, se æt neáhstan forlêt Brytene ígland for his uncáfscipê.

A.D. 167. Hêr Eleutherius on Rôme onfêng biseceopdôme. Tô þam Lúcius Brytene cyning sende stafás, and bæd fulpihtes; and hê him sôna sende; and þá Bryttás punôdon on rihtum geleáfan ôð Dioceliþanes rice.

A.D. 189. Sevêrus fêrde mid herê on Brytene, and mid gefeohtê geeóde þæs íglandes micelne dæl; and þá hê hine forgyrde mid dicê and mid eordþeallê fram sâ tô sâ. Hê ricsôde seofontýne geár, and þá geendôde on Eoferpíc.

A.D. 381. Hēr Gotan tōbræcon Rōmeburh, and næfre siððan Rōmāne ne ricsōdon on Brytene. Hī ricsōdon on Brytene feōper hund pintrā, and hund-seofontig pintrā siððan Gaius Iūlius þæt land ærest gesōhte.

A.D. 443. Hēr sendon Brytpalās ofer sâ tō Rōme, and heom fultumes bædon pið Pihtrās; ac hī þær næfdon nāne, forþam þe Rōmāne fyrdōdon pið Ætlan Hunā cyninge. And þā sendon hī tō Anglum, and Angeleynnes æðelingās þæs ilcan bædon.

A.D. 449. Hēr Hengest and Horsa fram Dyr̥tgeorne geladðode, Bryttā cyninge, gesōhton Brytene Bryttum tō fultume. Hī cōmon mid þrīm langum scipum. Se cyning geaf heom land on sūðan-eāstan þissum lande, pið þam þe hī sceoldon feohtan pið Pyhtās. Hī þā fuhton pið Pyhtās, and sige hæfdon spā-hpær-spā hī cōmon. Hī þā sendon to Angle, and hēton sendan heom mære fultum; and þā cōmon þā men of þrīm mægðum Germānie,—of Eald-Seaxum, of Anglum, of Iōtum.

Of Iōtum cōmon Cantpare, and Dihtpare, and þæt cyn on Dest-Seaxum þe man nū git hēt Iōtenā cyn. Of Eald-Seaxum cōmon Eāst-Seaxe, Sūð-Seaxe, and Dest-Seaxe. Of Angle, se ā siððan stōd pēste betpix Iōtum and Seaxum, cōmon Eāst-Angle, Middel-Angle, Mearce, and ealle Northymbre.

Heorā heretogan pæron tpegen gebrōðru Hengest and Horsa, Dihtgilses sunā; Dihtgils pæs Ditting, Ditta Decting, Decta Dōdening: fram þam Dōdne āpōc eal ūre cyneceyn, and Sūðanhymbra eāc.

A.D. 455. Hēr Hengest and Horsa fuhton pið Dyr̥tgeorne þam cyninge. Horsan man þær ofslōh; and æfter þam Hengest fēng tō rice, and Æsc his sunu. Æfter þam Hengest and Æsc fuhton pið Dealās, and genāmon unārīmedlīcen herereāf; and þā Dealās flugon þā Engle spā fȳr.

A.D. 488. Hēr Æsc fēng tō rice, and pæs feōper and tpēntig pintrā Cantparā cyning.

A.D. 495. Hēr cōmon tpegen ealdormen on Brytene, Cerdic and Cynric his sunu, mid fīf scipum, and on þam ilcan dæge fuhton pið Dealās.

A.D. 519. Hēr Cerdic and Cynric Dest-Seaxenā rice onfēngon, and siċððan ricsōdon Dest-Seaxenā cynebearn of þam dæge. Æfter þam hī gefuhton pið Bryttās, and genāmon Dihte ígland.

A.D. 534. Hēr Cerdic forðfērde, and Cynric his sunu fēng tō rice, and ricsōde forð six and tpēntig pintrā.

A.D. 538. Hēr sunne āþýstrōde feōpertýne dagum ær calende Martii fram ærmorgene ôð undern.

A.D. 540. Hēr sunne āþýstrōde on tpelftan calendes Iūlii, and steorran hī æteōpdon fulneāh healfe tīd ofer undern.

A.D. 560. Hēr Ceāplīn rice onfēng on Dest-Seaxum.

A.D. 565. Hēr Columba mæsse-preōst cōm tō Pyhtum, and hī geeyrde tō Cristes geleāfan. Hī sind pærterās be norðum mōrum, and heorā cyning him gesealde þæt ígland þe man Iī nemneð. Pær se Columba getimbrōde mynster. Pā stōpe habbað nū git his yrfe-peardās. Sūð-Pyhtās pæron mīclē ær gefullōde; heom bodōde fulpiht Ninna bisceop, se pæs on Rōme gelāred, þæs eyrice is æt Hpīterne.

A.D. 596. Hēr Grēgorius pāpa sende tō Brytene Augustīnum mið pel manegum munucum, þe Godes pord Englā þeōde godspel-lōdon.

A.D. 601. Hēr sende Grēgorius pel manige godeunde lāreōpās Augustīne tō fultume, and betpeōnum þām pæs Paulinus. Paulinus bisceop gehpyrfde tō Criste Eādpine Northymbrā cyning.

A.D. 604. Hēr Eāst-Seaxe onfēngon geleāfan and fulpihtes bæd under Mellite bisceope, and Sæbrihte cyninge, þone Æðelberht Cantparā cyning gesette pær tō cyninge.

A.D. 606. Hēr forðfērde Grēgorius pāpa, and hēr Æðelfrīð lædde his ferde tō Legaceastre, and pær ofslōh unrīm Dalenā; and spā pearð gefylled Augustīnes pītegunġ þe hē cpæð, Gif Dealās nellæð sibbe pið ūs, hī seulon æt Seaxenā handā forpurdan. Pær man slōh eac tpā hund preōstā, þā cōmon þider þæt hī sceol-don gebiddan for Dalenā here.

A.D. 611. Hêr Cynegils fêng tô rîce on Dest-Seaxum, and heôld ân and þrittig pintrâ, and hê ârest Dest-Seaxenâ cyningâ pæs gefullôð. Byrînus bodôde ârest Dest-Seaxum fulpiht. Hê côm þider be Honôries pordum pæs pápan, and hê þær pæs bisceop ôð his lîfes ende.

A.D. 635. Hêr Cynegils pæs gefullôð from Byrîne in Dorceceastre.

A.D. 642. Hêr Cênpealh, Cynegilses sunu, fêng tô Dest-Seaxenâ rîce, and heôld ân and þrittig pintrâ.

A.D. 645. Hêr Cênpealh cyning pæs ádrifen of his rîce fram Pendan cyninge, forþam hê his speostor forlêt; and hê pæs on Eást-Anglum þreô geâr on præce.

A.D. 646. Hêr Cênpealh pæs gefullôð.

A.D. 658. Hêr Cênpealh gefeahht pið Dealås, and hî geflýmde ôð Pedridan.

A.D. 664. Hêr sunne âþýstrôde on þam forman Prîmilces, and côm micel manepealm on Brytene ígland, and on þam epealme forðfêrde Tuda bisceop; and Earcenbriht Cantparâ cyning forðfêrde, and Colman mid his gefêrum fôr tô his cýððe; and se arcebiseop Deusdedit forðfêrde.

A.D. 672. Hêr forðfêrde Cênpealh, and Seaxburh his epên rîcsôde ân geâr æfter him.

A.D. 674. Hêr fêng Æsepine tô rîce on Dest-Seaxum. Hê pæs Cênfûsing; Cênfûs Cênferðing; Cênferð Cúðgilsing; Cúðgils Ceôlpulfing; Ceôlpulf Cynrícing.

A.D. 676. Æsepine forðfêrde and Centpine fêng tô rîce, se pæs Cynegilsing. Hê geflýmde Brytpealås ôð sâ and rîcsôde nigon geâr.

A.D. 678. Hêr ætýpde se steorra þe man clypâð cométan, and seân þri môngðas ælcê morgenê spilce sunnebeám.

A.D. 685. Hēr Cēadpalla ongan æfter rīce pinnan. Se Ceadpalla pæs Cēnbryhting; Cēnbryht Ceadding; Ceadda Cūðing; Cūða Ceāplining; Ceāplīn Cynricing. Māl pæs Ceadpallan brōðer. Pý ilean geārē pearð on Brytene blōdig rēn, and meole and butere purdon gepended tō blōde.

A.D. 686. Hēr Māl and Ceadpalla Cent and Diht forhergōdon.

A.D. 687. Hēr Māl pearð on Cent forbærned, and þý geārē Ceadpalla eft forhergōde Cent.

A.D. 688. Hēr fōr Ceadpalla tō Rōme, and fulpiht onfēng æt Sergie þam pāpan, and se pāpa hine hēt Petrus, and hē siððan ymbe seofon niht forðfērde under Cristes elādum, and þý ilean geārē Ine fēng tō Pest-Seaxenā rīce.

A.D. 693. Cantpare gepingōdon pið Ine, and him gesealdon þrittig þāsend seattā tō cynebōte, forþam þe hī Māl his brōðer forberndon. Ine getimbrōde þæt mynster æt Glæstingabyrig, and hē rīesōde seofon and þrittig pintrā, and siððan hē fērde tō Rōme, and þær punōde oð his ende-dæg.

A.D. 726. Hēr Æðelheard fēng to Pest-Seaxenā rīce, Ines mæg; and heōld feōpertýne gear.

A.D. 729. Hēr comēta se steorra hine ætýpde, and se hālga Ecgbyrht forðfērde.

A.D. 733. Hēr sunne aþýstrōde, and pearð call þære sunnan trendel spilce speart seild; and Acca pæs ādrifen of bisceopdōm.

A.D. 734. Hēr pæs se mōna spilce hē pære mid blōdē begoten, and forðfērde Tātpine arcebisceop, and eac Bēda.

A.D. 740. Hēr forðfērde Æðelheard cyning, and fēng Cūðrēd his mæg tō Pest-Seaxenā rīce, and heōld sixtýne pintrā, and heardlice hē gepan pið Æðelbald, Mearecnā cyning, and pið Dealās.

A.D. 744. Hēr steorran fōron spīde scotiende, and Dīlfrīð se geonga, se pæs bisceop on Eoforþic, forðfērde.

A.D. 754. Cúðrêð forðfêrde, and Sigebriht his mæg fêng tô Dest-Seaxenâ rîce, and heôld ân geâr; and Cynepulf and Dest-Seaxenâ pitan benâmon Sigebriht his mæg his rîces for unrihtum dâedum. And se Cynepulf oft mid miclum gefeohtum feaht pið Brytpealâs.

And ymb ân and þrittig pintrâ þæs þe hê rîce hæfde, hê polde âdrâefan út ânne ædelling, se þæs Cyneheard hâten, and þæs Sigebrihtes brôðer. Pâ geâhsôde hê þone cyning lytlê perôðe on pið-cýððe on Merantûne, and hine þær berâð, and þone bûr utan beoðdon, âr hine þâ men onfundon, þe mid þam cyninge pâron. Pâ ongeat se cyning þæt, and hê on þâ duru eôde, and þâ unheânlice hine perôde, ôð hê on þone ædelling lœcôde; and þâ út-râsde on hine, and hine miclum gepundôde. And hî calle on þone cyning feohtende pâron ôð þæt hî hine ofslægenne hæfdon.

Pâ on þæs piðes gebârum onfundon þæs cyninges þegnâs þâ unstillnesse, and þider urnon, spâ-hpile-spâ þonne gearo pearð bradôst. And heorâ se ædelling âghpileum feorh and feoh beâð; and heorâ nânig þiegan nolde, ac hî simle feohtende pâron, ôð hî calle lâgon bûtan ânum Brytiscum gîsle, and hê spîðe gepundôð þæs.

Pâ on morgene gehýrdon þæt þæs cyninges þegnâs þe him beaftan pâron, þæt se cyning ofslægen þæs, þâ ridon hî þider, and his ealdorman Osric and Digerð his þegn; and þone ædelling on þære byrig mêtton. And beâð hê heom heorâ âgenne dôm feôs and landes, gif hî him þæs rîces útton; and heom cýððe, þæt heorâ mægâs him mid pâron, þâ þe him fram noldon. And þâ epædon hî, þæt heom nânig mæg leófra nære þonne heorâ hlâford, and hî nâfre his banan folgian noldon.

And hî þâ ymb þâ geatu feohtende pâron, ôð þæt hî þær inne fulgon, and þone ædelling ofslôgon, and þâ men þe mid him pâron, calle bûtan ânum.

Se Cynepulf rîcsôde ân and þrittig pintrâ, and his lic liget on Dintanceastre, and þæs ædelinges on Axanminstre.

A.D. 757. Hêr Eâðberht Nordhymbrâ cyning fêng tô seare.

A.D. 761. Hêr þæs se micela pinter.

A.D. 773. Hêr ôðypde reâð Cristes mâl on heofenum æfter sunnan setlgange, and pundorlice nædran pâron gesepene on Sûð-Seaxenâ lande.

A.D. 784. Hēr onfēng Beorhtrīc Dēst-Seaxenā rīce, and hē rīcsōde sixtȳne gear: and on his dagum cōmon ārest scipu Nordmannā of Herēðalande.

A.D. 785. Hēr pæs geflītfullīc synod.

A.D. 793. Hēr pāron rēðe forebēena eumene,—þæt pāron ormete þodenās and ligræscās, and fȳrene dracan pāron gesepene on þam lyfte fleōgende. Pām tænum sōna fyligde micel hunger, and earmlice hāðenrā mannā hergung ādiligōde Godes cyrican in Lindisfarena-cā purh reāflāc and mansliht.

A.D. 800. Hēr pæs se mōna āþȳstrōd on pāre ôðre tīde on nihte on þone seofonteōðan calendes Februnāries; and Beorhtrīc cyning forðfērde, and Egbryht fēng tō Dēst-Seaxenā rīce.

Hine hæfde ār Offa Mearcenā cyning and Beorhtrīc Dēst-Seaxenā cyning út āflȳmed þrī gear of Angeleynnes lande on Francland, ār hē cyning pāre; and for þȳ fultumōde Beorhtrīc Offan, þȳ þe hē hæfde his dōhtor him tō cȳne.

A.D. 823. Hēr Egbryht and Beornpulf Mearcenā cyning fuhton on Ellendūne, and Egbriht sige nām. Pā sende hē Æðelpulf his sunu of pāre fyrde and Ealhstān his bisceop and Pulfheard his ealdorman tō Cent miclê perodē, and hī Baldred þone cyning norð ofer Temese ādrifon; and Cantpare heom tō cyrdon, and Sūðrige, and Sūð-Seaxe, and Eāst-Seaxe; and þȳ ilcan gearē Eāst-Englā cyning and seō þeōð gesōhton Egbriht cyning heom tō friðe and tō mundboran for Mearcenā ege.

A.D. 827. Hēr geeōde Egbriht cyning Mearcenā rīce, and cal þæt be sūðan Humbre pæs; and hē pæs se eahtoða cyning þe Brytenpealda pæs. Årest pæs Ælle þe þus micel rīce hæfde; se æftera pæs Ceāplin, Dēst-Seaxenā cyning; se þridða pæs Æðelbriht, Cantparā cyning; se feorða pæs Rædpald, Eāst-Englā cyning; se fifta pæs Eādpine, Nordanhymbrā cyning; sixta pæs Ospald, þe æfter him rīcsōde; seofoda pæs Ospio, Ospaldes brōðer; eahtoða pæs Egbriht.

A.D. 837. Hēr Egbriht cyning forðfērde, and fēng Æðelpulf Egbrihting tō Dēst-Seaxenā rīce. On his dagum cōmon þā Denisean on Brytene. And se cyning and his ealdormen mid

Dorsætum and mid Somersætum gefuhton pið hæðenne here geond stôpâ; and þær pearð manig man ofslægen on gehpæðere hand.

A.D. 853. Hêr sende Æðelpulf cyning Ælfrêd his sunu tō Rôme. Pâ pæs domne Leo pâpa on Rôme, and hê hine tō cyninge gehâlgôde, and hine him tō biseop-sunâ genam.

A.D. 855. Hêr gebôcôde Æðelpulf cyning teôðan dâel his landes ofer eal his rîce, Gode tō lofe and him selfum tō êcere hæle; and þý ilcan gearê fêrde tō Rôme, and þær pæs tpelf-mônad puniende; and þâ hê hâmpearð fôr: and him þâ Carl, Francenâ cyning, his dôhtor geaf him tō epêne. Seô pæs gehâten Ieoþete. Æfter þam hê gesund hâm côm, and ymb tpâ gear pæs þe hê of Francum côm, hê gefôr. Hê rîcsôde nigonteôðte healf gear. Pâ fêng Æðelbald his sunu to Dest-Seaxenâ rîce, and rîcsôde fif gear.

A.D. 860. Hêr Æðelbald forðfêrde, and fêng Æðelbriht to eallum þam rîce, his brôðor; and hê hit heôld on gôðre geþpærnesse fif gear.

A.D. 866. Hêr fêng Æðerêd Æðelbrihtes brôðer to Dest-Seaxenâ rîce, and þý ilcan gearê côm micel hæðen here on Angelcynnes land, and þæt land eal geeôdon, and forðidon ealle þâ mynstre þâ hî tō cômôn. And gefeaht Æðerêd and Ælfrêd his brôðer pið þone here geond stôpâ, and þær pæs micel pælsliht on gehpæðre hand.

A.D. 872. Hêr gefôr Æðerêd cyning. Pâ fêng Ælfrêd Æðelpulfing his brôðor to Dest-Seaxenâ rîce; and pæs ymb ânne mōnad gefeaht Ælfrêd cyning pið ealne þone hæðenne here lytlê perodê æt Diltūne, and hine lange on dæg geflýmde; and þâ Deniscan âhton pælstôpe gepeald. And pæs gearæs purdon nigon folc-gefeohht gefohten pið þone here on þý cynerîce be sūðan Temese, bûtan þam þe heom Ælfrêd pæs cyninges brôðer, and ânliþige ealdormen, and cyninges þegnâs oft rādâ onridon, þe man nâ ne rîmde.

A.D. 878. Hêr hine bestæl se here on midne pinter ofer tpelftan niht tō Cippanhâmmen, and geridon Dest-Seaxenâ land, and þær



gesæton, and micel þæs folces ofer sâ âdræfdon; and þæs ôðres þone mâstan dæl hî geridon and heom gecyrdon bûtan þam cyninge Ælfrêde. Hê lytlê perodê uneaðelîce æfter pudum fôr, and on môrfaestenum. And þæs ilcan pintres þæs se gûdfana genu-  
5 men þe hî Hrafn hêton.

And þæs on Eâstran porhte Ælfrêd cyning lytlê perodê ge-  
peore æt Æðelingâ îge, and of þam gepeorce þæs pinnende pið  
þone here. Pâ on þære seofodan pucan ofer Eâstran hê gerâd tō  
Eggbrihtes stâne be eâstan Sealpudâ, and him cōmon þær ongeân  
10 Sumorsæte ealle and Dilsæte and Hâmtûnscêr, se dæl þe hire be-  
heonan sâ þæs; and his gefegene pæron.

And hê fôr ymb âne niht of þam picum to Igleâ, and þæs ymb  
âne niht to Eðandûne, and þær gefeaht pið ealne þone here, and  
hine geflýmde, and him æfter râd ôð þæt gepeore, and þær sæt  
15 feôpertýne niht; and þâ sealde se here him gislâs and micle âðâs,  
þæt hî of his cynerîce poldon; and him eac gelêton þæt heorâ  
cyning fulpihte onfôn polde.

And hî þæt gelæston; and þæs ymb þrî pucan cōm se cyning  
Guðrum þritigâ sum þarâ mannâ þe on þam here peordôste pæ-  
20 ron, æt Alre, þæt is pið Æðelingâ îge. And his Ælfrêd cyning  
onfeng þær æt fulpihte, and his crismlysing þæs æt Dedmôr;  
and hê þæs tpelf niht mid þam cyninge, and hê hine miclum and  
his gefêran mid feô peordôde.

A.D. 885. Hêr forðfêrde se gôða pâpa Marînus, se gefreôde  
25 Angelecnnes scôle be Ælfrêdes bêne, Dest-Seaxenâ cyninges, and  
hê sende him micle gifâ, and þære rôde dæl þe Crist on þrôpôde,  
and þý ilcan gearê se here bræc frið pið Ælfrêd cyning.

A.D. 897. Pâ hêt Ælfrêd cyning timbrian lange scipu ongeân  
þâs æscâs, þâ pæron fulneâh tpâ spâ lange spâ þâ ôðre; sume  
30 hæfdon sixtig ârâ, sume mâ; þâ pæron ægðer ge spiftran ge un-  
pealtran, ge eac heâhran þonne þâ ôðre. Næron hî nâðor nê on  
Frysisc gesceapene nê on Denise, bûtan spâ him selfum þulhte  
þæt hî nytpeordôste beôn mihton. Pý ilcan sumerâ forpearð nâ  
læs þonne tpéntig scipâ mid mannum mid eallê be þam sût-  
35 riman.-

A.D. 901. Hêr gefôr Ælfrêd Æðulfing six nihtum âr ealrâ hâ-  
liðgrâ mæssan. Hê þæs cyning ofer eal Angeleyn bûtan þam  
dæle þe under Denâ anpealde þæs. And þâ feng Eaðpearð his

sunu tō þam rice. On his dagum bræc se here þone frid, and for-  
sāpon ælc riht þe Eādpearð cyning and his pītan heom budon;  
and se cyning heom pið feaht, and hī geflȳmde, and heorā fela þē-  
sendā ofslōh; and hē geporhte, and getimbrōde, and genipōde  
5 fela burgā þe hī hæfdon ær tōbrocen.

A.D. 925. Hēr Eādpearð cyning forðfērde, and Ælfpearð his  
sunu spīde bræde þæs, and heorā lie liegað on Dintanceastre.  
And Æðelstān þæs of Meareum gecoren tō cyninge, and hē fēng  
tō Nordanhymbrū rice, and ealle þā cyningās þe on þisum ig-  
10 lande pāron hē gepylde. Hē ricsōde feōpertȳne gear and tȳn  
pucan, and forðfērde on Gleāpeceastre. Pā Eādmund his brōðer  
fēng tō rice, and hē hæfde rice seofode healf gear, and Liofa hine  
ofstang æt Pucanecyrcan. Pā æfter him fēng Eādrēd æteling his  
brōðer tō rice. Eādrēd ricsōde teōðte healf gear, and þā fēng  
15 Eādpīg to Pest-Seaxenā rice, Eādmundes sunu cyninges.

A.D. 959. Hēr forðfērde Eādpīg cyning, and Eādgār his brōðer  
fēng tō rice; and hē genam Ælfprȳde him tō epēne. Heo pæ  
Ordgāres dōhtor caldormannes.

A.D. 975. Hēr geendōde eorðan dreāmās  
20 Eādgār Englā cyning,—cēas him oðer leōht.  
And hēr Eādpearð, Eādgāres sunu, fēng tō rice, and on hærfest-  
æteōpde comēta se steorra, and cōm þā ōn þam æstran gear  
spīde micel hunger. And þā (A.D. 978) pearð Eādpearð cyning  
ofslægen on æfentīde æt Corfes-geate. Ne pearð Angeleynne  
25 nān pyrse dæd gedōn þonne þeōs pæs. Æðelrēd æteling Eād-  
pearðes brōðer fēng tō þam rice.

A.D. 991. Hēr man gerædde þæt man geald ærest gafol Deni-  
cum mannum for þam micelan brógan þe hī porhton be þam sê-  
riman; þæt pæs ærest tȳn þūsend pundā. Pone ræd gerædde  
30 ærest Sigeric areebiseop.

A.D. 994. Hēr cōm Anlāf and Spegen mið feōper and hund-  
nigontȳgum scīpum; and hī porhton þæt mæste yfel þe æfre  
ænig here dōn mihte on bærnete and hergunge, and on mansliht-  
um, ægðer be þam sêriman on Eāst-Seaxum, and on Centlande,  
35 and on Sūt-Seaxum, and on Hāmtūnsēire. Pā pearð hit spā mi-  
cel ege fram þam here, þæt man ne mihte gepencan and ne āsmēa

gan hū man hī of earde ādrīfan secolde, oððe þisne eard pið hī gehealdan. Æt nýhstan næs nān heāfodman þæt fyrde gaderian polde; æc æle fleāh spā hē mæst nihte, nē furdon nān seir nolde oðre gelæstan. Þonne nam man frid and grid pið hī, and nā þe læs for eallum þissum gride and gafole, hī fērdon æghpider floemælum, and gehergôdon ūre earme fole, and hī rýpton and slôgon. Ealle þās ungesældā ūs gelumpon þurh unrædās. Æðelrêd pende ofer þā sê tô Ricarde, his epêne brêðer.

A.D. 1014. Hēr Spegen geendôde his dagās, and se flota þā eal  
10 gecuron Cnūt tô cyninge. Þā côm Æðelrêd cyning hām tô his āgenre þeôde, and hē glædlīce from him eallum onfangen pæs. Þā (A.D. 1016) gelamp hit þæt se cyning Æðelrêd forðfêrde, and ealle þā pitan þe on Lundene pæron, and seô burhparu gecuron Eādmund Æðelrêding tô cyninge.

15 And Eādmund and Cnūt cōmon tōgædre æt Olanīge, and heorā freondseipe þār gefæstnôdon and purdon pedbrôðru. And þā fêng Eādmund cyning tô Destsexan and Cnūt tô þam norð-dæle. Þā forðfêrde Eādmund cyning, and pæs byrged mid his ealdan fieder Eādgære on Glæstingabyrig; and Cnūt fêng tô eal Angel-  
20 cymes rice.

A.D. 1028. Hēr fôr Cnūt cyning tô Norðpegum of Englānde mid fiftīgum seipum Englisera þegenā, and ādrāf Ôlāf cyning of þam lande, and geāhnôde him eal þæt land. And (A.D. 1031) Scottā cyning him tô beāh, Mælcorm, and pearð his man.

25 A.D. 1035. Hēr forðfêrde Cnūt cyning æt Seceastesbyrig, and hē is bebyrged on Dintanceastre. And Harold sêde þæt hē Cnūtes sunu pære, and man ceās Harold ofer eal tô cyninge. Hē forðfêrde on Oxnāforde, and man sende æfter Hardæcnūt, and hē pæs cyning ofer eal Englāland tpā gear būtan týne nihtum, and  
30 ær þam þe hē bebyrged pære, eal fole gecceās þā Eādpearð Æðelrêding tô cyninge.

A.D. 1052. Hēr âlêde Eādpearð cyning þæt heregyld þæt Æðelrêd cyning ær astealde; þæt pæs on þam nigon and þritti-  
35 gôðan geare pæs þe hē hit ongumnen hæfde. Þæt gyld gedrehte ealle Englā þeôde on spā langum fyrste spā hit bufan āpriten is. Þæt pæs æfre ætforan ôðrum gyldum þe man myslice geald, and men mid manigfealdlice drehte.

A.D. 1066. Hêr côm Dillelm eorl of Normandige intô Pefena-  
 sê, and Harold cyning gaderôde þâ micelne here, and côm him  
 tôgeânes; and Dillelm him côm ongeân on unpær êr his fole ge-  
 fyleed pâere. Ac se cyning þeâh him spîðe heardlice pið feaht  
 5 mid þâm mannum þe him gelêstan poldon, and þær pearð micel  
 pæl geslægen on ægðre healfe. Pær pearð ofslægen Harold cy-  
 ning, and þâ Frenciscan âhton pælstôpe gepeald. Pâ Dillelm cy-  
 ning âhte ægðer ge Englâlând ge Normandige. Æfter þisum  
 hæfde se cyning micel geþeaht and spîðe deôpe spræce pið his  
 10 pitan ymbe þis land. Hê sende þâ ofer eal Englâlând intô ælcere  
 seîre his men, and lêt âgan út hû fela hundredâ hîðâ pâron innan  
 þam lande, oððe hpæt se cyning him sylfum hæfde landes and  
 yrfes innan þam lande, oððe hpilce hê âhte tô habbanne tô tpef  
 mōndum of þære seîre; and hpæt oððe hû micel ælce man hæfde  
 15 þe landsittende pæs innan Englâlânde on lande oððe on yrfe, and  
 hû micel feôs hit pâere peorð: næs ân ælpig hîð nê ân gyrd  
 landes, nê furðon (hit is secamu tô tellanne, ac hit ne þuhte him  
 nân secamu tô dōnne) ân oxa, nê ân cû, nê ân spīn næs belifen,  
 þæt næs geset on his geþrite.

20 A.D. 1087. Hêr Dillelm forðfêrde. Se þe pæs êr rice cyning  
 and maniges landes hlâford, hê næfde þâ ealles landes bûtan seo-  
 fon fôtâ mæ̃l. Hê læfde æfter him þreô sunan. Rodbeard hêt  
 se yldesta, se pæs eorl on Normandige æfter him. Se ôðer hêt  
 Dillelm, þe bær æfter him on Englâlând þone cynhelm. Se prid-  
 25 ða hêt Heânric. Se cyning Dillelm pæs spîðe pīs man, and spîðe  
 rice, and peorðful and strenge; man mihte faran ofer his rice mid  
 his bōsme fullum goldes, ungedered. Hê sette micel deorfrîð, and  
 legde lagâ þærpið þæt spâ-hpâ-spâ slōge heort oððe hinde, þæt  
 hine man sceolde blendian. Hê forbeād þâ heortás; spilce cāc  
 30 þâ bārās; spâ spîðe hê lufōde þâ heāhdeor, spilce hê pâere heorā  
 fæder. Eāc hê sette be þâm haran þæt hī mōston freô faran.  
 His rice men hit mēndon, and þâ earne men hit beceorōdon. Ac  
 hê pæs spâ stîð þæt hê ne rôhte heorā ealrá nîð.

## CONVERSION OF THE ANGLO-SAXONS.

### GREGORY.

1. Grêgorius se hálga pápa is rihtlice Englisere þeôde apostol. Pes eádiga pápa Grêgorius pæs of ædelborenre mægde and æpfæstre ácenned; Rómánisce pítan pæron his magás; his fæder hátte Gordiánnus, and Fêlix, se æpfæsta pápa, pæs his fifta fæder.
- 5 Grêgorius is Grêcise nama, se spêigð on Ledenum gereorde "Vigilantius," þæt is on Englisc, "Dacolre." Hê pæs spíðe pacol on Godes bebodum, þápá hê sylf herigendlice leofôde, and hê pacollice ymbe manegrá þeódá þearfe hogôde. Hê pæs fram cildháde on bôclieum lárum getýð, and hê on þære lære spá gesêliglice
- 10 þeáh, þæt on ealre Rómáná-byrig næs nán his gelíca geþuht. Hê geeneordlêhte æfter wísrá lareôpá gebisnungum, and næs forgytol, ac gefæstnôde his lære on fæsthafelum gemynde. Hê hlôd þá mid þurstigum breôste þá flôpendan lære, þe hê eft æfter fyrste mid hunig-spêtre þrotan þæslike bealecette.
- 15 2. On geonglicum geárum, þápá his geôgoð æfter gecynde poruld-þing lufian sceolde, þá ongan hê hine sylfne tô Gode geþeóðan, and tô êðele þæs uplican lifes mid eallum gepilnungum ordian. Ditodlice æfter his fæder forðsîðe seofon mynstru hê gelênde mid his ágenum. Pone ofer-eácan his áhtá hê áspende on
- 20 Godes þearfum. Hê eóde ær his gecyrrednysse geond Rómánaburh mid pællenum gyrlum, and scinendum gymmum, and reáðum golde gefrætepôd; ac æfter his gecyrrednysse hê þênôde Godes þearfum, hê sylf þearfa, mid pâcum pâfelse befangen. Hê lufode forhæfednysse on mettum, and on drencce, and pæccan on syndrigum gebedum; þær-tô-eácan he þrôpôde singallíce untrumnyssá.
3. Pá gelamp hit æt sumum sâle, spá spá gýt for oft dèð, þæt Englisce cýpmen brohton heorá pare tô Rómáná-byrig, and Grêgorius eóde be þære stræt tô þám Englisecum, heorá þing sceápi-geende. Pá geseah hê betpux þám parum cýpecnihtás gesette,
- 30 þá pæron hpites líchaman and fægeres andplitan men, and ædellice gefexôde. Grêgorius þá beheöld þærá enapenâ plite, and be-

- fran of hƿilcere þeôde hî gebrohte pâron. Pâ sâde him man  
 þæt hî of Englâ-lande pâron, and þæt þære þeôde mennisc spâ  
 plitig pâre. Eft þâ Grêgorius befran hƿæder þæs landes fole  
 Cristen pâre þe hâden. Him man sâde þæt hî hâðene pâron.
- 5 Grêgorius þâ of inƿeardre heortan langsume siccetunge teâh, and  
 eƿæð, "Dâlâpâ, þæt spâ fiegere hipes men sindon þam speartan  
 deôfle underþeôðde." Eft hê âxôde, hû þære þeôde nama pâre,  
 þe hî of-cômon. Him ƿæs geandƿyrd, þæt hî Angle genemnôde  
 pâron. Pâ eƿæð hê, "Rihtlice hî sind Angle gehâtene, forþan þe  
 10 hî englâ plite habbað, and spileum gedafenad þæt hî on heofonum  
 englâ gefêran beôn." Gyt þâ Grêgorius befran, hû þære scire  
 nama pâre, þe þâ enapan of-âlêðde pâron. Him man sæde, þæt  
 þâ scirmen pâron Dêre gehâtene. Grêgorius andƿyrde, "Deh hî  
 sind Dêre gehâtene, forþan þe hî sind fram graman generôde, and  
 15 tô Cristes mildheortnysses gecƿgedede." Gyt þâ hê befran, "Hû is  
 þære leôde cyning gehâten?" Him ƿæs geandsparôð þæt se cy-  
 ning Ælle gehâten pâre. Hƿæt þâ Grêgorius gamenôde mid his  
 ƿordum tô þam naman, and eƿæð, "Hit gedafenad þæt Allelûia sý  
 gesungen on þam lande tô lofe þæs Ælmihtigan Seyppendes."
- 20 4. Grêgorius þâ sôna eôde tô þam ƿâpan þæs apostolican setles,  
 and hine bæd, þæt hê Angelecyne sume lâreôƿas âsende, þe hî tô  
 Criste gebîgdon, and eƿæð, þæt hê sylf gearo pâre þæt ƿeore tô  
 gefremmenne mid Godes fultume, gif hit þam ƿâpan spâ gelicôde.  
 Pâ ne mihte se ƿâpa þæt geþaân, þeâh þe hê eal polde; forþan  
 25 þe þâ Rômanîsean ceaster-geparan noldon geþaân þæt spâ ge-  
 togen man, and spâ geþungen lâreôƿ þâ burh eallunge forlête,  
 and spâ fyrren ƿræcsîð genâme.
5. Æfter þisum gelamp þæt micel man-eƿealm becom ofer  
 þære Rômanîsean leôde, and ârest þone ƿâpan Pelagium gestôð,  
 30 and bûton yldinge âðýðde. Dîtôðlice æfter þæs ƿâpan geen-  
 dunge, spâ micel eƿealm ƿearð þæs folces, þæt gehƿâr stôdon  
 âƿêste hûs geond þâ burh, bûton bûgigendum. Pâ ne mihte spâ-  
 þeâh seô Rômanâ-burh bûton ƿâpan ƿunian, ac eal fole þone eâdi-  
 gan Grêgorium tô þære geƿinede ânmodlice geccas, þeâh þe hê  
 35 mid eallum mægne ƿiderigende pâre. Hƿæt þâ Grêgorius, sîð-  
 ðan hê ƿâpanhâd underfêng, gemunde hƿæt hê gefýrn Angel-  
 cynne gemynte, and þær-rihte þæt lufýme ƿeore gefremôde. Hê  
 nâ tô þæs lîƿon ne mihte þone Rômanîsean biscop-stôl eallunge  
 forlêtan, ac hê âsende ôðre bydelâs, geþungene Godes þeôpan, tô  
 40 þisum îglande, and hê sylf mîclum mid his bênum and tihtin-  
 gum fylste, þæt þærâ bydelâ bodung forðgênge, and Gode ƿæstm-

bære purde. Pêrâ bydelâ naman sind þus gecēgede, AUGUSTĪ-  
NUS, MELLITUS, LAURENTIUS, PETRUS, JOHANNES, JUSTUS. Au-  
gustīnus þā mid his gefērum, þæt sind gerehte feōpertig perā,  
fērde be Grēgories hāse, ðæt þæt hī to þisum iglande gesundful-  
5 lice becōmon.

6. On þām dagum rīxōde Æðelbyrlit cyning on Cantparebyrig  
rielfce, and his rīce pæs āstreht fram þære mielan cā Humbre  
ðæt sūt sê. Augustīnus hæfde genumen pealhstōdās of Francenā  
rīce, spā spā Grēgorius him gebeād; and hē þurh þærā pealh-  
10 stōdā mūt þam cyninge and his leōde Godes pord bodōde: hū se  
mildheorta Hælend mid his āgeure þrōpunge þisne seyldigan  
middanearð ālŷsde, and geleāffullum mannum heofonan rīces in-  
fer geopenōde. Pā andpyrde se cyning Æðelbriht Augustīne,  
and epæd, þæt hē fægere pord and behāt him cŷdde; and epæd,  
15 þæt hē ne mihte spā hrædlice þone caldan gepunan þe hē mid  
Angel-cynne heōld forlætan; epæd þæt hē mōste freōlice þā heo-  
fonlican lāre his leōde bodian, and þæt hē him and his gefēran  
bigleofan þēnian polde, and forgeaf him þā pununge or Cantpare-  
byrig, seō pæs ealles his rīces heáfod-burh.

20 7. Ongan þā Augustīnus mid his munucum tō geefenlêcenne  
þærā apostolā lif, mid singalum gebedum, and pæccan, and fæste-  
num Gode peōpigende, and lifes pord þām þe hī mihton bodi-  
gende, ealle middanearðlice þing, spā spā ælfremede, forhogi-  
gende, þā þing āna þe hī tō bigleofan behōfedon underfōnde, be  
25 þām þe hī tæhton selfe lybbende, and for þære sōðfæstnesse þe  
hī bodōdon, gearope pæron chtnesse tō þoligenue, and deādō  
speltan, gif hī þorfton.

8. Hpæt þā gelŷfdon forpel manige, and on Godes naman ge-  
fullōde purdon, pundrigende þære bilepitnesse heorā unscædði-  
30 gan lifes, and spētnesse heorā heofonlican lāre. Pā æt nextan,  
gelustfullōde þam cyninge Æðelbrihte heorā clāne lif and heorā  
pynsume behāt, þā sōðlice purdon mid manegum tæcnum gesêdðe;  
and hē þā gelŷfende pearð gefullōd, and mielum þā cristenan  
geārpurðōde, and spā spā heofonlice ceastergeparan lufōde; nolde  
35 spā-þeāh nāune tō eristendōme geneādian; forþan þe hē ofāxōde  
æt þām lāreōpum his hāle þæt Cristes peōpdōm ne sceal beōn  
geneādōd, ac selfpilles. Ongunnon þā dæghpamlice forpel ma-  
nige cŷstan tō gehŷrenne þā hālgan bodunge, and forlêton heorā  
hæðenscipe and hī selfe geþeōddon Cristes geladunge, on hine  
40 gelŷfende.

9. Hpæt þā Grēgorius mielum Gode þancōde mid blissigen-

dum môde, þæt Angel-cynne spâ gelumpen pæs, spâ spâ hê self  
geornlice gepilnôðe, and sende eft ongeán ærendracan tō þam ge-  
leáffullan cyninge Æðelbrihte, mid gepritum and manigfealdum  
lácum, and ôðre gepritu tō Augustíne, mid andsparum ealrá þêrá  
5 þingá þe hê hine befran, and hine eác þisum pordum mânôðe:  
“Brôðer mîn se leófôsta, ic pát þæt se Ælmihtiga God fela pundra  
þurh þê þære þeôðe þe hê geceás gesputelað, þæs þú miht blissi-  
gan, and eác þê ondrædan. Pú miht blissigan gepislice þæt  
þære þeôðe sáplá þurh þá yttran pundra beôð getogene tō þære  
10 incundan gife. Ondræð þê spâ-þeáh þæt þín môð ne beô áhafen  
mid dyrstignesse on þám tæcnum þe God þurh þê gefremáð, and  
þú þonon on ídelum puldre befealle pidinnan, þonon þe þú pidú-  
tan on purdmynte áhafen bist.”

10. Grégorius ásende eác Augustíne hálige lác on mæsse-reá-  
fú, and on bôcum, and þêrá apostolá and martyrá *reliquias* sa-  
mod; and bebeað þæt his æftergangen symle þone *pallium* and  
þone erehád æt þam apostolican setle Rómániscere gelaðunge  
feccan sceoldon. Augustínus gesette æfter þisum biscopás of his  
gefêrum gehpileum burgum on Englá þeôðe, and hî on Godes ge-  
20 leáfan þeônðe þurhpunôdon ôð þisum dægðerliceum dæge.

## PAULINUS.

1. Pære tíde eác spylce Nordanhymbrá þeôð mid heorá cy-  
ninge Eáðpine Cristes geleáfan onfeng, þe him Paulínus, se hálga  
biseop, bodôðe and lærde. Pá hæfde se cyning gespræce and  
geþealt mid his pitum, and synderlice pæs fram him eallum frig-  
25 nende, hpile him þuhte and gesepen pære þeôs nipe lár and þære  
godeundnesse bígong, þe þær læred pæs? Him þá andsparôðe  
his ealdor-biseop, Cêfî pæs háten: “Geseoh þú, cyning, hpile  
þeôs lár sí, þe ús nú bodôð is. Ic þê sôðlice andette, þæt ic eúð-  
lice geleornôð hæbbe, þæt eallínga nápiht mages nê nytnesse  
30 hæfð seó æfestnes, þe pé ôð þis hæfdon and beeôdon, forþon ná-  
nig þínrá þegná neóðlicôr nê gelustfullicôr hine selfne underþeôð-  
de tō úrá godá bígange þonne ic; æe nóht þon læs manige sindon,  
þá þe máran gife and fremsunnesse æt þê onfengon þonne ic, and  
on eallum þingum máran gesynto hæfdon. Hpæt ic pát, gif úre  
35 godás ænige mihte hæfdon, þonne poldon hî mē má fultumian,  
forþon ic him geornlicôr þeôðde and hýrde. Forþon mē þynceð



piſlic, gif þā geſeô þā þing beteran and ſtrengan, þe ūs nīpan bodôde ſindon, þæt pē þām onfôn.”

2. Piſum pordum ôðer þæs cyninges pita and ealdorman ge-  
þafunge ſealde and tō þære ſpræce fēng and þus epæð :

5 “ Pyslic mē is geſepen, cyning, þis andpearde lif mannā on eorðan.  
tō piðmetenēſſe þære tide, þe ūs unecūð is, ſpā gelic ſpā þā æt  
ſpāſendum ſitte mid þīnum ealdormannum and þegnum on pin-  
tertide, and ſī fȳr onæled, and þīn heal gepyrmēd, and hit rīne  
and snīpe and hægele and ſtyme ūte ; cume þonne ān ſpearpa  
10 and hræðlice þæt hūs þurhflēô, þurh ôðre duru in, þurh ôðre ūt  
geþite : hpæt hē on þā tīd, þā hē inne byð, ne byð rīnēd mid þȳ  
ſtormē þæs pintres ! ac þæt byð ān eāgan bryhtum and þæt læste  
fæc, and hē ſōna of pintrā in pinter eft cymēd. Spā þonne þis  
mannā lif tō medmiclum fæce ætſpēð ; hpæt þær foregēnge, oððe  
15 hpæt þær æfterfylige, pē ne cunnon. Forþon gif þeôs nīpe lāre  
āpiht eādlicere and gerisenlicre bringe, heô þæs pyrðe is, þæt pē  
þære fyligeān.”

3. Piſum pordum gelicūm ôðre ealdormen and þæs cyninges  
þeahteras ſpræcon : þā get tō geſhte Cēfi and epæð, þæt hē polde  
20 Paulīnus þone biſceop geornlicôr gehȳran be þām gode ſpre-  
cende, þe hē bodôde ; þā hēt ſe cyning ſpā dōn. Þā hē þā hīs  
pord gehȳrde, þā clypôde hē and þus epæð : “ Geare ic þæt ongeat,  
þæt þæt nāpiht pæs, þæt pē becôdon, forþon ſpā miclē ſpā ic  
geornlicôr on þām bigange þæt ſelfe sôð sôhte, ſpā ic hit læs  
25 mētte. Nū þonne ic openlice andette, þæt on þiſſe lāre þæt ſelfe  
sôð ſcīnēð, þæt ūs mæg ſyllan þā gife êcre eādligneſſe and êces  
lifes hælo. Forþon ic lāre nū, cyning leôfôſta, þæt þæt tempel  
and þā pcofedu þā þe pē būtan pæstmum ænigre nytneſſe hālgô-  
don, þæt pē þā hrade forleôsān and on fȳre forbarnān.”

30 4. Hpæt hē þā ſe cyning openlice andette þam biſceope and  
him eallum, þæt hē polde fæstlice þām deôfolgildum piðſacan and  
Cristes geleāfan onfôn ! Mid þȳ hē þā ſe cyning fram þam fore-  
ſpreccenan biſceope sôhte and æcsôde heorā hāligneſſe þe hī ær  
becôdon, hpā þā pigbēd and þā heargās þārā deôfolgildā mid  
35 heorā hegum þe hī ymbſette pæron ādilian ſceolde and tō-  
peorpan ; þā andſparôde hē ſe biſceop : “ Efne ic þā godās lange  
mid dysigneſſe becôde ôð þis ; hpā mæg hī gerisenlicôr nū tō-  
peorpan tō bysne ôðrā mannā þonne ic ſelfa þurh þā snyttro þe  
ic fram þām sôðan Gode onfēng.” And hē þā ſōna fram him  
40 āpearp þā ſīðlan dysigneſſe þe hē ær becôde, and þone cyning  
bæd, þæt hē him pāpen ſealde and geſtēdhors, þæt hē mihte on

cuman and þæt deôfolgild tôþeorpan, forþon þam biscope ne  
 pæs âlfed, þæt hê môte pæpen pegan, nê ælcôr bûtan on myran  
 rîðan. Pâ sealde se cyning him speord, þæt hê hine mid be-  
 gyrd, and nam him spere on hand, and hleôp on pæs cyninges  
 5 stêðan, and tô þam deôfolgildum râð.

5. Pâ þæt fole hine þâ geseah spâ gescyrpedne, þâ pëndon hî,  
 þæt hê tela ne piste, ac þæt hê pêdde. Sôna pæs þe hê gelîhte  
 tô þam hearge, þâ sceât hê mid his sperê, þæt hit sticôðe fæste  
 on þam hearge, and pæs spîðe gefeônðe þære ongitenesse pæs sô-  
 10 ðan Godes biganges, and hê þâ hêt his gefêran tôþeorpan ealne  
 hearh and þâ getimbro, and forbærnan. Is seô stôp git æteôped  
 giû þârâ deôfolgildâ nâht feor eâst fram Eoforþic-cestre begeon-  
 dan Deorþentan þære eâ, and git tô dæg is nemned Godmund-  
 ingahâm, þær se biscoep þurh pæs sôðan Godes onbryrdnesse tô-  
 15 pearp and forðide þâ pigbed, þe hê self ær gehâlgôðe.

Pâ onfêng Eâðpine cyning mid callum þam æðelingum his  
 peôðe and mid miclê foleð Cristes geleâfan and fulluhtes bæde.

6. Lârde Paulinus eac spilce Godes pord on Lindesse. Seô  
 mægð is seô nÿhste on sût-healfê Humbre streâmes liged ât on  
 20 sâ. Be þisse mægðe geleâfan epæð hê Bêða: “Mê sâðe sum  
 ârþurðe mæsse-preôst and abbud of Peortanea þam hâm, se pæs  
 Dêða hâten,—epæð þæt him sâðe sum cald pita, þæt hê pære  
 gefullôð æt middum dæge fram Pauline þam biscope on Eâd-  
 pines andpeardnesse pæs cyninges, and micel menigo pæs folces  
 25 on Trentan streâme be Teôlfinga-cestre. Sâðe se ilca man hpile  
 pæs biscopes hip pære sanctes Paulines; epæð þæt hê pære  
 lang on bodige and hpon forðheald; hê hæfðe blæc feax and  
 blæne andplitan and hœcihte neôsu þynne, and hê pære æghpæ-  
 ðer ge ârþurðlic ge ondrysenlic on tô seônne.”

30 7. Is þæt sêð þæt on þâ tîð spâ micel sib pære on Brytene  
 æghpider ymb spâ spâ Eâðpines rice pære, þeâh þe ân pîf polde,  
 mid hire nîcendum eilde heô mihte gegân bûtan ælcere sceate-  
 nesse fram sâ tô sâ ofer eal þis eâland. Spilce eac se ilca cyning  
 tô nytnesse fand his leôðum, þæt in manigum stôpum þær þe  
 35 hlutre pyllan urnon be strætum þær mannâ fernes mæst pæs,  
 þæt hê þær hêt for pegfêrendrâ gecêlnesse stapulâs âsettan, and  
 þær ærene cêacâs onhôn: and þâ hpæðere nênig for his ege and  
 for his lufan hî hrînan dorste ne nê polde bûtan tô his neôðþearf-  
 liere pênunge.

## ANGLO-SAXON LAWS.

---

### ÆDELBIRHTES DÔMÂS.

- § 4. Gif frigman cyninge stele, nigon-gylde forgelde.  
9. Gif frigman frêum steld, þrî-gylde gebête and cyning âge  
þæt pîte and eal þà æhtan.  
21. Gif man mannan ofslæht, medume leôd-geld hund scillingâ  
5 gebête.  
22. Gif man mannan ofslæht, æt openum græfe tpéntig scil-  
lingâ forgelde and in feôpertig nihtâ ealne leôd forgelde.  
23. Gif bana of lande gepited, þà magâs healfne leôd forgelden.  
25. Gif man ceorles hlâf-ætan ofslæht, six scillingum gebête.  
10 39. Gif ôðer eâre nâpiht gehêred, fif and tpéntigum scillingum  
gebête.  
40. Gif eâre of peord âslagen, tpelf scillingum gebête.  
41. Gif eâre þyrel peordet, þrîm scillingum gebête.  
42. Gif eâre secard peordet, six scillingum gebête.  
15 43. Gif eâge of peord, fiftig scillingum gebête.  
50. Se þe ein-bân forslæht, mid tpéntigum scillingum forgelde.  
51. Æt þam feôper tôðum fyrestum æt gehpileum six scil-  
lingâs; se tôð se þanne biðstandet, feôper scillingâs; se þe þonne  
bi þam standet, þrî scillingâs, and þonne siððan gehpile scil-  
20 ling.  
52. Gif spræc âpyrd peord, tpelf scillingâs; gif pido-bân ge-  
broced peordet, six scillingum gebête.  
53. Se þe earm þurhstingð, six scillingum gebête; gif earm  
forbrocen peord, six scillingum gebête.  
25 54. Gif man þûman of âslæht, tpéntigum scillingum gebête;  
gif þûman nægl of peordet, þrîm scillingum gebête; gif man  
seyte-finger of âslæht, eahta scillingum gebête; gif man middel-  
finger of âslæht, feôper scillingum gebête; gif man gold-finger  
of âslæht, six scillingum gebête; gif man þone lytlan finger of  
30 âslæht, endleofan scillingum gebête.  
55. Æt þam næglum gehpileum scilling.

56. Æt þam kerestan plite-pamme, þrī seillingās, and æt þam mǣran six seillingās.

57. Gif man ôðerne mid fýste in nǣso slæht, þrī seillingās.

58. Gif dynt sīe, seilling. Gif hē heáhre handā dyntes onfēht, 5 seilling forgelde.

59. Gif dynt speart sīe būton pǣdum, þrittig scættā gebête.

60. Gif hit sīe binnan pǣdum, gehpyle XX. scættā gebête.

### HLÔÐHÆRE AND EÂDRÎC, CANTDARÂ CYNINGÂS.

§ 11. Gif man mǣnnan an ôðres flette mǣn-spara hâted, oððe hine mid bīsmers-pordum seandlice grête, seilling āgelde þam þe 10 þæt flet āge, and six seillingās þam þe hē þæt pord tō geepāde, and cyninge tpef seillingās forgelde.

12. Gif man ôðrum steap āsette þær men drincean būton seylde, an eald-riht seilling āgelde þam þe þæt flet āge, and six seillingās þam þe man þone steap āsette, and cyninge tpef seillingās.

15 13. Gif man pǣpn ābregde þær men drincean and þær man nǣn yfel ne dēð, seilling þam þe þæt flet āge, and cyninge tpef seillingās.

14. Gif þæt flet geblōdgād pyrðe, forgelde þam men his mund-byrd, and cyninge fiftig seillingās.

20 15. Gif man euman feormed þrī niht an his āgenum hāme, cēpeman oððe ôðerne, þe seô ofer mearece cūmen, and hine þonne his metē fēde, and hē þonne ānigum men yfel gedô, se man þane ôðerne at rihte gebrenge, oððe riht fore pyree.

### INES CYNINGES DOMÂS.

§ 6. Gif hpā gefeohte on cyninges hūse, sīe hē seyldig ealles 25 his yrres, and sīe on cyninges dōme hpæder hē lif āge þe nāge.—

Gif hpā on mynstre gefeohte, hund-tpelftig seillingās gebête.—

Gif hpā on ealdormannes hūse gefeohte, oððe on ôðres gepun- genes pitan, sixtig seillingās gebête hē, and ôðer sixtig seillingās geselle tō pite.—Gif hē þonne on gafol-geldan hūse oððe on ge-

30 būres gefeohte, þritig seillingās tō pite geselle, and þam gebūre six seillingās.—And þeáh hit sīe on middum feldā gefohten,

þritig seillingâ tô pite sie âgifen.—Gif þonne on gebeôrscipe hie geciden, and ôðter heorâ mid gepylde hit forbere, geselle se ôðter þritig seillingâs tô pite.

7. Gif hpâ stalie spâ his pif nyte and his bearn, geselle sixtig 5 seillingâs to pite.—Gif hê þonne stalie on gepitnesse calles his hîrêdes, gangen hie calle on þeôpot.—Týn-pintre eniht mæg beôn þýfte gepita.

20. Gif feoreund man oððe fremde bûtan pege geond pudu gauge, and ne hrýme nê horn blápe, for þeôf hê bið tô prôfianne 10 oððe tô sleanne oððe tô âlýsanne.

43. Þonne man beám on pudâ forbærne, and peorðe yppe on þone þe hit dyde, gylde hê ful pite; geselle sixtig seillingâ for þam þe fýr bið þeôf.—Gif man âfelle on pudâ pel manege treôpâ and pyrðe eft undyrne, forgylde þreô treôpâ, ælc mid þritig seil 15 lingum. Ne þearf hê heorâ mâ gyldan, pære heorâ spâ fela spâ heorâ pære, forþam seô æx bið melda, nalles þeôf.

### ÆLFRÊDES DÔMÂS.

§ 1. Æt ârestan pê lârað, þæt mæst þearf is, þæt âghpêlc mon his âð and his ped pærlice healde.—Gif hê þonne þæs peddie þe him riht sý tô gelæstanne, and þæt âleôge, selle mid eâðt 20 mêdum his pâpn and his âhtâ his freôndum tô gehealdanne, and beô feôpertig nihtâ on carcerne on cýninges tûne, þrôpige þæt spâ biseop him serife, and his mægâs hine fêden, gif hê self mete næbbe.—Gif hê mægâs næbbe, oððe þone mete næbbe, fêde cýninges gerêfa hine.—Gif hine mon tôgenêdan seyle and hê elles 25 nylle, gif hine mon gebinde, þolige his pâpnâ and his yrtes.—Gif hine mon ofsleâ, liege hê orgylde.—Gif hê losige, sie hê âflýmed and sie âmâensumôð of eallum Cristes eiricium.

5. Eâc pê settað âghpêlcere eirican þe biseop gehâlgôde, þis frid: gif hie fâh-mon geyrne oððe gærne, þæt hine seofan nihtum nân mon út ne teô.—Eâc eirican frid is: gif hpele mon eirican gesêce for þârâ gyltâ hpyleum þârâ þe âr geypped nære, and hine þær on Godes naman geandette, sie hit healf forgifen. —Se þe stalâð on Sunnan niht, oððe on Geôl, oððe on Eâstran, oððe on þone Hâlgan Punres dæg, and on Gang-dagâs, þârâ 35 gehpele pê pillâð sie tpý-bôte, spâ on Lencten-fæsten.

6. Gif hpâ on eirican hpæt geþeôfige, forgylde þæt ângylde,

and þæt pite spá tó þam ángylde belimpan pille, and sleá mon þá hand of þe hē hit mid gedyde.

23. Gif hund mon tōslite oððe ábite, æt forman misdæde geselle six scillingás gif hē him mete selle, æt æfteran cerre tpelf 5 scillingás, æt þriððan þrittig scillingás.—Gif æt þissá misdædá hpeleere se hund losige, gá þeós bót hpæðere ford.

32. Gif mon fole-leásunge gepyree, and heó on hine geresp peorðe, mid nānum leóltran þinge gebête, þonne him mon áceorfe þá tungan of.

10 35. Gif mon cyrlisene mon gebinde unsynnigne, gebête mid tyn scillingum.—Gif hine mon bespinge, mid tpéntig scillingum gebête.—Gif hē hine on hengenne áleege, mid þrittig scillingum gebête.—Gif hē hine on bismor tó homolan bescire, mid tyn scillingum gebête.—Gif hē hine tó preóste bescire unbundenne, 15 mid þrittig scillingum gebête.—Gif hē þone beard of áscire, mid tpéntig scillingum gebête.—Gif hē hine gebinde and þonne tó preóste bescire, mid sixtig scillingum gebête.

### ECGBYRHT ARCEBISCEOP.

*Confessionale*, 32. Gif man medmycles hpæthpega deóflum on-sêgð, fæste án gear: gif hē mycles hpæet onsêge, fæste tyn pin- 20 ter. Spá hpyle man spá corn bærne on þære stópe þær man deád pære, lifigendum mannum tó hæle and on his hūse, fæste fif pinter.

33. Dif gif heó set hire dōhtor ofer hūs oððe on ofen forþam þe heó pille hīg fefer-ádle gehælan, fæste heó seofon pinter.

25 *Poenitential*, II., 23. Nis nā sōðlice álýfed nānum Cristenum men þæt hē ídele hpatungá begá spá hæðene men dōð, þæt is þæt hīg gelýfon on sunnan and on mōnan and on steorrená ryne, and sēcon tíðá hpatungá hyrā þing tó begynnanne, nē pyrtá gadernuge mid nānum galdre, bûtan mid pater-noster and mid crē- 30 dan oððe mid sunnum gebede þe tó Gode belimpe.

IV., 16. Gif ænig man ôðerne mid piece-cræftē fordô, fæste seofon gear, þreó on hláfe and on pætere, and þá feóper þrí dagás on pucan on hláfe and on pætere.

17. Gif hpá drife stacan on ænigne man, fæste þreó gear, án 35 gear on hláfe and on pætere, and þá tpá fæste on pucan þrí dagás on hláfe and on pætere. And gif se man for þære stacunge

deað bið, þonne fæste hē seofon geār ealspā hit hēr bufon āpri-  
ten is.

18. Gif hpā picceige ymbe æniges mannes lufe and him on æte  
syllē odde on drince odde on æniges cynnes gealdor-craeftum,  
5 þæt hyrā lufu forþon þe mære beōn seyle: gif hit læpede man  
dō, fæste healf geār Dōdnes dagum and Frīge dagum on hlāfe  
and on pætere, and þā ôdre dagās brūce hē his metes būtan  
flæsee ānum.

19. Gif hpā hlytās odde hpatungā begā, odde his pæcean æt  
10 ænigum pyllē hæbbe, odde æt ænigre ôdre gesceafte būton on  
Godes cyricean, fæste hē þreō geār, þæt ān on hlāfe and on pæ-  
tere, and þā tpā Dōdnes dagum and Frīge dagum on hlāfe and  
on pætere and þā ôdre dagās brūce his metes būton flæsee  
ānum.

15 20. Dīfman beō þæs ylean pyrðe, gif heō tilād hire eilde mid  
ænigum picce-craefte odde æt pegā gelæton þurh þā eorðan tilād;  
eālā þæt is mycel hādenscipe.

## CNUT CYNING.

II., 5. And pē forbeōdað eornostlice ælene hādenscipe. Hādēn-  
scipe bȳð þæt man deōfol-gyld peordige: þæt is þæt man peor-  
20 ðige hādene godās and sumnan odde mōnan, fȳr odde flōd, pæ-  
ter-pyllās odde stānās odde æniges cynnes pudu-treōpu, odde  
picce-craeft lufige, odde mord-peore gefremme on ænige pīsan,  
odde blōte odde fyrhte odde spylērā gedpimerā ænig þing  
dreōge.

25 73. And sitte ælc pudupe perleās tpelf-mōnað, ceōse syððan  
þæt heō sylf pille; and gif heō binnan geāres fæce per gecceōse,  
þonne þolige heō þære morgen-gyfe and ealrā þærā æhtā þe heō  
þurh ærran per hæfde, and sōn þā nēhstan frȳnd tō þam lande  
and tō þam æhtan þe heō ær hæfde.—And ne hādige man æfre  
30 pudupan tō hræðlice.

## P O E T S.

---

### ORPHEUS.

1. Gesêlig byð se man, þe mæg geseôn þone hlutran æpelm  
þæs hêhstan gôdes, and of him selfum âpeorpan mæg þâ þeôstro  
his môdes! Ðê senlon get of ealdum leásum spellum þê sum bî-  
spell recean: Ilit gelamp giô, þætte ân hearpere pæs on þære  
5 þeôde þe Prácia hâtte, seô pæs on Crêcâ rîce. Se hearpere pæs  
spîde ungefrâglice gôd, þæs nama pæs Orfeus. Hê hæfde ân  
spîde ânlic pîf, seô pæs hâten Eurydice. Pâ ongan man seegan be  
þam hearpere, þæt hê mihte hearpian þæt se pudu pagôde and  
þâ stânâs hî styredon for þý spêgê, and pildu deôr þær poldon  
10 tô irnan and stondan spilee hî tamu pæron, spâ stille, þeâh hî  
men oððe hundâs pið eôdon, þæt hî hî nâ ne onseûnedon.

2. Pâ sædon hî, þæt þæs hearperes pîf sceolde âpelan, and  
hire sâple man sceolde lêdan tô helle. Pâ sceolde se hearpere  
peorðan spâ sârig, þæt hê ne mihte on-gemong ôðrum mannum  
15 beôn, ac teâh tô pudâ and sæt on þæm muntum ægðer ge dæges  
ge nihtes, peôp and hearpôde, þæt þâ pudâs biðôdon and þâ eâ  
stôdon, and nân heort ne onseûnôde nêenne leôn, nê nân hara  
nêenne hund, nê nân neât nyste nêenne andan nê nêenne ege tô  
ôðrum for þære mergðe pæs sônes.

20 3. Pâ þæm hearpere þâ þuhte, þæt hine nânes þinges ne lyste  
on þisse worulde, þâ þohte hê, þæt hê polde gesêcan helle goðu,  
and onginnan him ôleccan mid his hearpan, and biddan þæt  
hî him âgêlfân eft his pîf. Pâ hê þâ þider com, þâ sceolde cu-  
man þære helle hund ongeân hine, þæs nama pæs Ceruerus, se  
25 sceolde habban þreô heâfðu, and ongan fægenian mid his steortê,  
and plegian pið hine for his hearpungâ. Pâ pæs þær eâc spîde  
egeslic great-peard, þæs nama sceolde beôn Caron, se hæfde eâc  
þreô heafðu, and se pæs spîde ôreald. Pâ ongan se hearpere  
hine biddan, þæt hê hine gemundbyrde þâ hpile þe hê þær pære  
30 and hine gesundne eft þanon brohte; þâ gehêt hê him þæt, for  
þam hê pæs oflyst þæs seldeûdan sônes.



4. Pā eode hē furdōr, oðð hē mētte pā graman mettenā, þe  
 foleisce men hātað Parcās, pā hī seegað, þæt on nānum men ny-  
 ton nāne āre, ac ælcum men preceƿen be his gepyrhtum, pā hī  
 seegað, þæt palden ælces mannes pyrde. Pā ongan hē biddan  
 5 heorā blisse; pā ongunnon hī pēpan mid him. Pā eode hē fur-  
 dū, and him urnon calle helparan ongeān, and lāddon hine tō  
 heorā cyninge, and ongunnon calle sprecan mid him and biddan  
 þæs þe hē bæd. And þæt unstill hpeōl, þe Ixion pæs tō ge-  
 bunden Leuitā cyning for his seylde, þæt oðstōd for his hear-  
 10 pungā; and Tantalus se cyning, þe on þisse porulde ungemet-  
 lice gifre pæs, and him þær þæt ilce yfel fylgde, þæs gifernesse  
 hē gestilde; and se ultor sceolde forlātan, þæt hē ne slāt pā  
 lifre Tityes pæs cyninges, þe hine ær mid þý pīuode; and eal  
 helpará pīu gestildon pā hpile, þe hē beforan þam cyninge  
 15 hearpōde.

5. Pā hē pā lange and lange hearpōde, pā cleopōde se helpa-  
 renā cyning, and epæð: “Duton āgīfan þæm esne his pīf, forþæm  
 hē hī hæftð gecarnād mid his hearpungā.” Bebeād him pā, þæt  
 hē geare pisse, þæt hē hine nāfre underbæc ne besāpe siððan hē  
 20 þonan-peard pære, and sēde, gif hē hine underbæc besāpe, þæt  
 hē sceolde forlātan þæt pīf. Ac pā lufe man mæg spīde uneāde  
 oððe nā forbeōdan. Deilā þei! hpæt Orfeus pā lādde his pīf mid  
 him, oðð þe hē com on þæt gemære leōhtes and þeōstro; pā eode  
 þæt pīf æfter him. Pā nō furdum on þæt leōht com, pā beseah  
 25 hē hine underbæc pið þæs pīfes: pā losāde heō him sōna.

6. Pās spel lērað gehpilene man þārā þe pilnað helle þeōstro  
 tō fleōnne, and tō þæs sōðan Godes leōhte tō cunanne, þæt hē  
 hine ne beseō tō his ealdum yfelum, spā þæt hē hī eft spā fullice  
 fulfremme, spā hē hī ær dide; forþæm spā-hpā-spā mid fullē  
 30 pillan his mōd pent tō þām yflum þe hē ær forlēt, and hī þonne  
 fulfremeð, and hī him þonne fullice liciað, and hē hī nāfre for-  
 lātan ne þeneð; þonne forlýst hē eal his ærran gōd, būton hē  
 hit eft gebēte.

## CÆDMON.

1. On Hilde abbudissan mynstre pæs sum brōðor synderlice  
 35 mid godcundre gife gemæred and geƿeorðod, forþon hē gepu-  
 nōde gerisenlice leōð pyrcean, pā þe tō æfestnesse and tō ārfest-  
 nesse belumpon, spā þætte spā-hpæt-spā hē of godcundum stafum

þurh bôcerâs geleornôde, þæt hê æfter medmiclum fæce in sceôp-  
gereorde mid þâ mæstan spêtnesse and inbrydnesse geglencde  
and in Englisc gereorde pelgehpærford brohte; and for his leôð-  
songum manigrâ mannâ mōd oft tō peorulde forhōhnesse and tō  
5 geþeôdnêsse þæs heofonlican lifes onbærnde pæron.

2. And eac spilce manige ôdre æfter him on Angelþeode on-  
gunnon æfæste leôð pyrcan, ac nænig hpædre him þæt gelice dōn  
meahte, forþon hê nakes fram mannūm nê þurh man gelæred pæs,  
þæt hê þone leôðteræft geleornôde; ac hê pæs godeundlice geful-  
10 tumôd, and þurh Godes gife þone songeræft onfêng, and hê for-  
þon nêfre nôht leásungâ nê îdeles leôðes pyrcan meahte, ac efne  
þâ ân þâ þe tō æfæstnesse belumpon and his þâ æfæstan tungan  
gedafenôde singan. Pæs hê se man in peoruldhåde geseted ôð  
þâ tîde, þe hê pæs gelyfedre yldo, and hê nêfre nænig leôð ge-  
15 leornôde, and hê forþon oft in gebeôrscipe, þonne þær pæs blisse  
intingan gedēmed, þæt hî ealle sceolden þurh endebyrdnesse be  
hearpan singan, þonne hê geseah þâ hearpan him neâlæcan,  
þonne ârâs hê for seeame fram þam symble and hām eode tō his  
hûse.

20 3. Þâ hê þæt þâ sumre tîde dide, þæt hê forlêt þæt hûs pæs  
gebeôrscipes and út pæs gangende tō neâtâ scypene, þârâ heord  
him pæs þære nihte beboden; þâ hê þâ þær in gelimpliere tîde  
his limu on reste gesette, and onslæpte, þâ stôð him sum man æt  
þurh spefn, and hine hâlette and grêtte, and hine be his naman  
25 nemde, "Cædmon, sing mē hpæthpegu." Þâ andsparôde hê and  
cpæð: "Ne con ic nôht singan, and ic forþon of þisum gebeôr-  
scipe ûteode, and hider gepât, forþon ic nôht cûde." Eft hê  
cpæð, se þe mid him sprecende pæs, "Hpæðere þâ meaht mē  
singan." Cpæð hê, "Hpæt secal ic singan?" Cpæð hê, "Sing  
30 mē frumseeaft." Þâ hê þâs andspare onfêng, þâ ongan hê sōna  
singan in herenese Godes scyppendes þâ fers and þâ pord þe hê  
nêfre ne gehýrde; þârâ endebyrdnes þis is:

4. "Nû pē sceolon herian heofonrices Deard,  
Metodes milite and his mōdgeþone,  
35 perâ Duldorfæder, spâ hê pundrâ gehpæs,  
êce Dryhten, ord onstealde.  
He ârest gesceôp eorðan bearnum  
heofon tō hrôfe, hâlig Scyppend;  
þâ middangeard, monecynnes Deard,  
40 êce Dryhten, æfter teode  
firum foldan, Freâ ælmihtig."

5. Pā ârâs hê fram þam slæpe, and eal þā þe hê slæpende sang, fæste in gemynde hæfde, and þām pordum sôna manig pord in þæt ilce gemet Godê pyrdes songes tōgeþeôdde. Pā com hê on morne tō þam tūngerêfan, se þe his ealdorman pæs, and him sêde  
 5 hþilce gifê hê onfêng, and hê hine sôna tō þære abbudissan ge-lædde, and hire þæt cýdde and sægde. Pā hêt heô gesamnian ealle þā gelærdestan men, and þā leornerâs, and him andpeardum hêt seegan þæt spefu and þæt leôð singan, þætte eairâ heorâ dômê gecoren pære, hþæt oððe hþonan þæt cumen pære. Pā  
 10 pæs him eallum gesepen spā spā hit pæs, þæt him pære fram Dryhtne selfum heofonlic gifu forgifen. Pā rehton hî him and sægdon sum hâlig spel and godeundre lâre pord, bebudon him þā, gif hê mihte, þæt hê him sum sunge and in spinsunge leôðsanges þæt gehpyrfe. Pā hê þā hæfde þā pîsan onfangene, þā cōðe hê  
 15 hām tō his hûse, and com eft on morgen, and þý betstan leôðê ge-glenged him âsang and âgeaf þæt him beboden pæs.

6. Pā ongan seô abbudisse clyppan and lufian þā Godes gife in þam men, and heô hine þā monôðe and lærde, þæt hê peoruldhād forlête and munuchāde onfênge; and hê þæt pel þafôðe; and heô  
 20 hine in þæt mynster onfêng mid his gôðum, and hine geþeôdde tō gesamnunge þārâ Godes þeôpâ, and hêt hine lêran þæt getæl þæs hâlgan stâres and spellas, and hê eal þā hê in gehêrnesse ge-leornian mihte mid hine gemyngôðe, and spā spā clæne nýten eodorende in þæt spêteste leôð gehpyrfe, and his song and his  
 25 leôð pæron spā pynsum tō gehýranne, þæt þā selfan his lârecôpâs æt his mûðe priton and leornôdon.

7. Sang hê ârest be middangeardes gesceape and be fruman mancynnes and eal þæt stâr Genesis, þæt is seô âreste Mōyses bōc, and eft be útgeange Israêlâ folces of Ægyptâ lande, and be in-  
 30 gange þæs gehâtlandes, and be ôðrum manigum spellum þæs hâlgan geprites canones bōcâ, and be Cristes menniscnesse, and be his þrôþunge, and be his upâstîgnesse on heofonâs, and bîg þæs Hâlgan Gâstes cyme, and þārâ Apostolâ lâre; and eft bî þam ege þæs tōpeardan dōmes, and be fyrhto þæs tintreglîcan pites, and  
 35 be spêtnesse þæs heofonlican rîces hê manig leôð geporhte; and spile eac ôðre manig be þām godeundum fremsumnessum and dōnum hê geporhte. On eallum þām hê geornlice gýmde, þæt hê men âtuge fram synnâ lufan and mândêðâ, and tō lufan and tō geornfulnessse âþelte gôðrâ dâðâ, forþon hê pæs se man spîðe  
 40 âfest, and reogollîcum þeôðscipum eadmôðlice underþeôded; and pið þām þā þe on ôðre pîsan dôn poldon, hê pæs mid pylme mî

celre ellenpôdnesse oubærned, and hê forþon fægrê endê his lif betýnde and geendôde.

8. Forþon þā þære tíde neálæhte his gepitennesse and forðfôre, þā pæs hê feôpertýne dagum ær þæt hê pæs lieumlicre un-trymnesse prycead and hefigôd, hpædere tôpon gemetlice, þæt hê ealle þā tíð mihte ge sprecan ge gangan. Dæs þær on neápeste untrunrâ mannâ hûs, on þam hirâ þeáp pæs þæt hî þā untruman and þā þe æt forðfôre pæron in lêðan sceoldan, and him þær ætsomne þenian. Pā bæd hê his þegn on æfenne þære nihte 10 þe hê of peorulde gangende pæs, þæt hê on þam hûse him stôpe gegearpôde, þæt hê restan mihte. Pā pundrôde se þegn forhpon hê þæs bæde, forþon him þuhte þæt his forðfôre spā neáh ne pære, dide hpædere spā spā hê epæd and bebeád.

9. And mid þý hê þā þær on reste eôde, and hê gefeôndê môðe 15 sumu þing ætgedere mid him sprecende and gleôpiende pæs, þe þær ær inne pæron, þā pæs ofer middeniht þæt hê frægn, hpæder hî ænig hûsel þær inne hæfdon. Pā andsparôdon hî and epædon, “Hpile þearf is þe hûsles? Ne þinre forðfôre spā neáh is, nû þû þus rôtlíce and þus glædlice tô ús sprecende eart.” Cpæd hê 20 eft, “Beræd mē hpædere hûsel tô.” Pā hê hit on handâ hæfde, þā frægn hê, hpæder hî ealle smylte môð, and bûtan eallum incan bliðe tô him hæfdon. Pā andsparôdon hî ealle, and epædon þæt hî nânigne incan tô him piston, ac hî him ealle spíðe bliðemôðe pæron, and hî prixendlice hine bādon þæt hê him eallum bliðe 25 pære. Pā andsparôde hê, and epæd, “Míne brôðru þā leófan, ic eom spíðe bliðmôð tô eôp and tô eallum Godes mannum.” And hê spā pæs hine getrymmende mid þý heofonlican pegrestê, and him ôðres lifes ingang gearpôde. Pā git hê frægn, hû neáh þære tíde pære, þætte þā brôðor árisan sceolden, and Godes lof rêran 30 and heorâ uhtsang singan. Andsparôdon hî, “Nis hit feor tô þon.” Cpæd hê, “Tela, utan þe pel þære tíde bíðan!” And þā him gebæd, and hine gesênôde mid Cristes rôdetæcne, and his heáfod onhyldo tô þam bolstre, and medmicel fæc onslæpte, and spā mid stilnesse his lif geendôde.

35 10. And spā pæs geporden, þætte spā spā hê hlutrê modê and bilepitê and smyltre pilsumnesse Drihtne þeôpde, þæt hê eac spilce spā smyltê deaðê middangeard pæs forlætende and tô his gesihðe becom, and seô tunge, þe spā manig hálpende pord on þæs Scyppendes lof gesette, heô þā spilce eac þā ftemestan pord 40 on his herenesse, hine selfne sêniende and his gást in his handâ bebeôðende, betýnde.



## POETRY.

---

### DESCRIPTIONS OF GLEE-MEN AND POETS.

(*Traveler*, 135-143.)

Spâ **SC**riðende ge**SC**eapum hpeorfad  
**G**leô-men **G**umenâ geond **G**rundâ fela,  
**T**hearfe seegad, **T**hone-pord sprecað,  
**S**imle **S**ûð odðe nord **S**umne gemêtað  
5 **G**yddâ **G**leâpne, **G**eofum umhneâpne,  
se þe fore **D**ugufte pile **D**ôm ârâran,  
**E**orlsceipe **Æ**fuon, ôð þæt **E**al scaced  
**L**eôht and **L**if somod: **L**of se gepyrceð,  
**H**aðað under **H**eofonum **H**eâhfastne dôm.

(*Beowulf*, 867-874.)

Hpîlum **C**ynnges þegn,  
10 **G**uma **G**ilp-hlæden, **G**iddâ gemyndig,  
se þe **E**Al-fela **E**Ald-gese genâ  
**V**Vorn gemunde, **V**Vord ôðer fand  
**S**ôðe gebunden: Seeg eft ongan  
15 **S**ið Beôpulfes **S**nyttum styrian,  
and on **S**Pêð precan **S**Pel gerâde,  
**V**Vordum **V**Vrixlan.

(*Beowulf*, 89-98.)

— þær pæs **H**earpan spêg,  
**S**putol **S**ang scôpes. **S**ægðe, se þe cûðe  
20 **F**rumseeaft **F**irâ **F**eorran recean,  
cpæð þæt se **Æ**lmihtiga **E**Orðan porhte  
**V**Vlite-beorhtne **V**Vang, spâ **V**Vater bebûgeð,  
ge**S**ette **S**ige-hrêðig **S**unnan and mônân  
**L**eôman tô **L**eôhte **L**and-bûendum,  
and ge**F**rætpâðe **F**oldan sceâtâs  
25 **L**eomum and **L**eâfum, **L**if eac gesceôp  
**C**ynnâ gehvvyllum, þârâ þe **C**pice hvvyrfad.

## CÆDMON'S GENESIS.

*(The First Day, 103-134.)*

- Ne pæs hêr þā giet      nymde heolster-sceado  
 piht geporden,      ac þes wîða grund  
 stôð deôp and ðim,      Drihtne fremde,  
 fîdel and unnyt:      on þone eāgum wlat  
 5      stîð-frihð cýning,      and þā stôpe beheôld  
 dreāma læse,      geseah deorc gespeorc  
 semian sinnihte      speart under roderum,  
 pon and wêste,      ôð þæt þeôs woruld-gesceaft  
 þurh word gepearð      wuldor-cýninges.  
 10      Hêr ârest gesceôp      êce Drihten  
 helm ealpihtā      heofon and eorðan,  
 roðor ârârde,      and þis wîme land  
 gestaðelôðe      strangum mihtum,  
 Freā ælmihtig.      Folde pæs þā gyt  
 15      græs ungrêne:      gârsecg þeahte  
 speart sinnihte      sîðe and wîðe,  
 pone wêgās.      Wā pæs wuldor-torht  
 Heofon-weardes gāst      ofer holm boren  
 miclum spêðum.      Metod englā hêht  
 20      lifes Brytta      leôht forð cuman  
 ofer wîmne grund;      raðe pæs gefylled  
 Heāh-cýninges hæð:      him pæs hālig leôht  
 ofer wêstenne,      spā se Wyrhta bebeād.  
 Wā gesunðrôðe      sigorā Waldend  
 25      ofer lago-flôðe      leôht wîð weostrum,  
 sceade wîð scîman.      Sceôp þā wām naman  
 lifes Brytta;      leôht pæs ârest  
 þurh Drihtnes word      dæg genemmed,  
 witebeorhte gesceaft.      Wel licôðe  
 30      Freān æt frymde      forðwæro tîð:  
 dæg âresta geseah      deorc sceado  
 speart spîðrian      geond sîðne grund.

*(Satan's Speech, 347-388.)*

- Satan maðelôðe;      sorgiende spræc  
 se þe helle forð      healdan sceolde,  
 35      gýman þæs grundes:      pæs âr Godes engel

## CÆDMON'S GENESIS.

*(The First Day, 103-104.)*

- Ne<sup>1</sup> was there then yet nymthe<sup>2</sup> holster<sup>3</sup>-shadow  
 wight<sup>3</sup> i-worthen<sup>5</sup>, ac<sup>6</sup> this wide ground  
 stood deep and dim, to-Drihte<sup>7</sup> fremde<sup>8</sup>,  
 idle and unnt<sup>9</sup>: on that with-eyes wlat<sup>10</sup>  
 5 stith<sup>11</sup>-frith<sup>12</sup> king, and the stows<sup>13</sup> beheld  
 of-dreams<sup>14</sup> less<sup>14</sup>, i-saw dark i-swerk<sup>15</sup>  
 seme<sup>16</sup> sinnight<sup>17</sup> swart under roders<sup>18</sup>,  
 wan and waste, oth<sup>19</sup> that this world-schaft<sup>20</sup>  
 through word i-worth<sup>21</sup> wulder<sup>22</sup>-king's.  
 10 Here erst<sup>23</sup> i-shaped eche<sup>24</sup> Drihte<sup>7</sup>,  
 helm<sup>25</sup> of-all-wights<sup>26</sup>, heaven and earth,  
 roder<sup>18</sup> a-reared, and this roomy land  
 i-statheled<sup>27</sup> with strong might,  
 Frea<sup>28</sup> almighty. Folde<sup>29</sup> was then yet  
 15 as-to-grass ungreen: garsedge<sup>30</sup> thatched<sup>31</sup>  
 swart sinnight<sup>17</sup> side<sup>32</sup> and wide,  
 wan waves. Then was wulder<sup>22</sup>-tort<sup>33</sup>  
 Heaven-ward's<sup>34</sup> ghost<sup>35</sup> over holm<sup>36</sup> borne  
 with-mickle speeds. Metod<sup>37</sup> of-angels heht<sup>38</sup>,  
 20 life's Brytta<sup>39</sup>, light forth to-come  
 over roomy ground; rathe<sup>40</sup> was i-filled<sup>41</sup>  
 High-king's hest: to-him was holy light  
 over waste, so the Wright<sup>42</sup> (be-)bade.  
 Then i-sundered siyers<sup>43</sup> Wielding<sup>44</sup>  
 25 over leye<sup>45</sup>-flood light with<sup>46</sup> thuster<sup>47</sup>,  
 shade with<sup>46</sup> shimmer. Shope<sup>48</sup> then for-both names  
 life's Brytta<sup>39</sup>; light was erst<sup>23</sup>  
 through Drihte's<sup>7</sup> word day i-named,  
 wlite<sup>49</sup>-bright i-shaft<sup>50</sup>. Well liked<sup>50</sup>  
 30 Frea<sup>28</sup> at frumthe<sup>51</sup> forthbearing<sup>52</sup> tide<sup>53</sup>:  
 day erst<sup>23</sup> i-saw dark shadow  
 swart swither<sup>54</sup> yond<sup>55</sup> side<sup>32</sup> ground.

*(Satan's Speech, 347-388.)*

- Satan matheled<sup>56</sup>; sorrowing spake  
 he that hell forth<sup>57</sup> hold should  
 35 to-yeme<sup>58</sup> the ground: was ere<sup>59</sup> God's angel

<sup>1</sup> not. <sup>2</sup> except (?). <sup>3</sup> cave, cavernous. <sup>4</sup> aught. <sup>5</sup> existent, created. <sup>6</sup> but (P. P.). <sup>7</sup> God (P. P.). <sup>8</sup> strange (Ch.). <sup>9</sup> useless (S.). <sup>10</sup> looked (S.). <sup>11</sup> strong. <sup>12</sup> mind (?). <sup>13</sup> places (S.). <sup>14</sup> joy-less. <sup>15</sup> murkiness (?). <sup>16</sup> remain (?). <sup>17</sup> in sem-piternal night (?). <sup>18</sup> heavens (?). <sup>19</sup> till (?). <sup>20</sup> creation (?). <sup>21</sup> came into being. <sup>22</sup> glory (S.). <sup>23</sup> first. <sup>24</sup> eternal (S.). <sup>25</sup> protector. <sup>26</sup> beings. <sup>27</sup> established (S.). <sup>28</sup> sovereign (?). <sup>29</sup> earth (S.). <sup>30</sup> ocean (?). <sup>31</sup> covered. <sup>32</sup> far, long (P. P.). <sup>33</sup> bright (H.). <sup>34</sup> warder, guardian. <sup>35</sup> spirit. <sup>36</sup> high sea. <sup>37</sup> creator (?). <sup>38</sup> ordered (P. P., Ch.). <sup>39</sup> allotter (?). <sup>40</sup> soon. <sup>41</sup> fulfilled. <sup>42</sup> maker. <sup>43</sup> victories' (?). <sup>44</sup> Ruler. <sup>45</sup> lake (H.). <sup>46</sup> from. <sup>47</sup> darkness (S.). <sup>48</sup> shaped, formed (Ch., P. P.). <sup>49</sup> beautiful (S.). <sup>50</sup> pleased (Ch., P. P.). <sup>51</sup> beginning (S.). <sup>52</sup> creation's. <sup>53</sup> time. <sup>54</sup> pass away (H.). <sup>55</sup> over, beyond. <sup>56</sup> spoke (S.). <sup>57</sup> thenceforth. <sup>58</sup> keep (P. P.). <sup>59</sup> once, before.

- white in heaven, oth<sup>1</sup> him his huic<sup>2</sup> forspene<sup>3</sup>  
 and his overmet<sup>4</sup> of all swithest<sup>5</sup>,  
 that he ne<sup>6</sup> would wereds<sup>7</sup> Drihte's<sup>8</sup>  
 word worthy<sup>9</sup>. Welled to-him on in<sup>10</sup>  
 5 huic<sup>2</sup> ymb<sup>11</sup> his heart; hot was to-him out<sup>12</sup>  
 wrothly<sup>13</sup> wite<sup>14</sup>. He then with-word quoth:  
 Is this ange<sup>15</sup> stead<sup>16</sup> unlike swithe<sup>17</sup>  
 the other that we ere couth<sup>18</sup>  
 high on heaven-riche<sup>19</sup>, that me mine herre<sup>20</sup> on-loaned<sup>21</sup>,  
 10 though we hine<sup>22</sup> for the all-wielder owe<sup>23</sup> ne<sup>6</sup> must,  
 rome<sup>24</sup> our riche<sup>19</sup>. Nafth<sup>25</sup> he though right i-done  
 that he us hath i-felled in-fire to bottom  
 of-hell the hot, heaven-riche<sup>19</sup> be-numen<sup>26</sup>,  
 hath it i-marked mid<sup>27</sup> mankind  
 15 to i-settle. That to-me is of-sorrows most  
 that Adam shall, that was of earth i-wrought,  
 mine strong stool<sup>28</sup> (be-)hold,  
 be to-himself in wynne<sup>29</sup>, and we this wite<sup>14</sup> thole<sup>30</sup>,  
 harm on this hell. Wo lo! owed<sup>23</sup> I my hands' i-wald<sup>31</sup>,  
 20 and might one tide<sup>32</sup> out worth<sup>32</sup>,  
 be one winter-stound<sup>32</sup>, then I mid this wered<sup>7</sup>—!  
 Ac<sup>34</sup> lie me ymbe<sup>11</sup> iron bonds,  
 rideth<sup>35</sup> racket's<sup>36</sup> sole<sup>37</sup>: I am riche<sup>19</sup>-less!  
 have me so hard hell elomps  
 25 fast befangen<sup>38</sup>! Here is fire mickle  
 up and neath! I o<sup>39</sup> ne<sup>6</sup> i-saw  
 loather<sup>40</sup> landsceipe! leye<sup>41</sup> ne<sup>6</sup> a-swome<sup>42</sup>  
 hot over hell. Me have rings' i-spang<sup>43</sup>,  
 slith-hard<sup>44</sup> sole<sup>37</sup>, from-sith<sup>45</sup> a-merred<sup>46</sup>,  
 30 a-ferred<sup>46</sup> me from-my feeth<sup>47</sup>, feet are i-bounden,  
 hands i-haft<sup>48</sup>; are these hell-doors'  
 ways forwrought<sup>49</sup>; so I mid<sup>50</sup> wight<sup>50</sup> ne<sup>6</sup> may  
 off these lith<sup>51</sup>-bonds. Lie me about  
 of-hard iron hot i-slain<sup>52</sup>  
 35 grindels<sup>53</sup> great; mid<sup>27</sup> that me God hath  
 i-hafted<sup>48</sup> by the halse<sup>54</sup>. So I wot, he my huic<sup>2</sup> cuth<sup>19</sup>  
 and that wist eke<sup>55</sup> wereds<sup>7</sup> Drihte<sup>8</sup>,  
 that should us, *me and* Adam, evil i-worth<sup>56</sup>  
 ymb<sup>11</sup> that heaven-riche<sup>19</sup>, there<sup>57</sup> I owed<sup>23</sup> my hands' i-wald<sup>31</sup>!

<sup>1</sup> till (?). <sup>2</sup> mind (S.). <sup>3</sup> seduced (?). <sup>4</sup> pride (S.). <sup>5</sup> mightiest (P. P., Ch.). <sup>6</sup> not. <sup>7</sup> hosts (S.).  
<sup>8</sup> Lord (P. P.). <sup>9</sup> honor, obey (S.). <sup>10</sup> within. <sup>11</sup> about (?). <sup>12</sup> without. <sup>13</sup> wrathful (S.). <sup>14</sup> pun-  
 ishment (Ch.). <sup>15</sup> narrow (S.). <sup>16</sup> place. <sup>17</sup> very (P. P., Ch.). <sup>18</sup> knew. <sup>19</sup> kingdom, -ric (S.).  
<sup>20</sup> lord (S.). <sup>21</sup> presented. <sup>22</sup> it (S.). <sup>23</sup> have, own. <sup>24</sup> use (?). <sup>25</sup> hath not (S.). <sup>26</sup> taken (Ch.,  
 P. P.). <sup>27</sup> with (P. P.). <sup>28</sup> seat. <sup>29</sup> joy (H.). <sup>30</sup> suffer. <sup>31</sup> power, control (S.). <sup>32</sup> hour. <sup>33</sup> be free.  
<sup>34</sup> but. <sup>35</sup> oppresseth. <sup>36</sup> bonds' (?). <sup>37</sup> rope (S.). <sup>38</sup> caught (S.). <sup>39</sup> ever (S.). <sup>40</sup> loathlier.  
<sup>41</sup> fire, low (P. P.). <sup>42</sup> smoulder (?). <sup>43</sup> fastening (H.). <sup>44</sup> terrible (?). <sup>45</sup> departure (P. P.).  
<sup>46</sup> prevented (S.). <sup>47</sup> path, departure (?). <sup>48</sup> held (?). <sup>49</sup> obstructed, closed (S.). <sup>50</sup> any way.  
<sup>51</sup> limbs. <sup>52</sup> forged (S.). <sup>53</sup> bars, clogs (S.). <sup>54</sup> neck. <sup>55</sup> also. <sup>56</sup> happen to. <sup>57</sup> if.



- hƿit on heofne,    ôð hne his hyge forspœon  
 and his ofermetto    ealrā spīðōst,  
 þæt hē ne polde    peredā Drihtnes  
 pord purðian.    Deoð him on innan  
 5    hyge ymb his heortan;    hāt ƿæs him utan  
 ƿrādlic ƿite.    He þā pordē eƿæð:  
 “Is ƿes ænga stede    ungelīe spīðe  
 þam oðtrum    þe ƿe ær cūðon  
 hean on heofon-rīce,    þe mē mīn hearra onlāg,  
 10    ƿeāh ƿe hine for þam alpealdan    āgan ne mōston,  
 rōmigan ūres rīces.    Næfd hē ƿeāh riht gedon  
 þæt hē ūs hæfd befylled    fýre tō botme  
 helle þære hātan,    heofon-rīcē benumen,  
 hæfd hit gemearcōð    mid mon-cynne  
 15    tō gesettanne.    Þæt mē is sorgā mæst  
 þæt Adam secal,    þe ƿæs of eorðan geporht,  
 mīnne stronglican    stōl behealdan,  
 ƿesan him on ƿynne,    and ƿe þis ƿite þolien  
 hearm on þisse helle.    Ðā lā! āhte ic mīnrā handā ge-  
 20    and mōste āne tīð    ūte ƿeorðan,    [peald  
 ƿesan āne pinter-stunde,    þonne ic mid þýs ƿerodē—!  
 Ae liegað mē ymbe    īren-bendās,  
 rīdeð racentan sāl:    ic eom rīces leās!  
 habbað mē spā hearde    helle clommās  
 25    fīeste befangen!    Hēr is fýr micel  
 ufan and neoðtone!    ic ā ne geseah  
 lāðran landseipe!    lig ne āspāmāð  
 hāt ofer helle.    Mē habbað hringā gespong,  
 slīð-hearda sāl    sīðes āmyrred,  
 30    āfyrred mē mīn fēðe;    fēt synt gebundene,  
 handā gehæfte;    synt þissā hel-dorā  
 ƿegās forporhte:    spā ic mid ƿihte ne mæg  
 of þissum liodō-bendum.    Liegað mē ymbūtan  
 hearðes īrenes    hāte geslægene  
 35    grīndlās greāte;    mid þý mē God hæfd  
 gehæfted be þam healse.    Spā ic ƿāt, hē mīnne hige cūðe  
 and þæt ƿiste eāc    ƿerodā Drihten,  
 þæt sceolde une Adame    yfele gepurðan  
 ymb þæt heofon-rīce,    þær ic āhte mīnrā handā gepeald!

## CÆDMON'S EXODUS.

*(The Flight of the Israelites, 68-85.)*

- Nearpe genýddon on nord-pegás,  
 piston him be súðan Sigelparā land,  
 forbærned burh-hleoðu, brúne leóde  
 hátum heofon-colum. Pær hālig God  
 5 pið fær-bryne fole gescylde,  
 bælcē oferbrædde byrnendne heofon,  
 hālgan nettē hātpendne lyft.  
 Hæfde peder-polcen piðum fædmum  
 eorðan and uprodor efne gedæled,  
 10 lādde leód-perod; lig-fýr ādranc  
 hāte heofon-torht. Hæled páfedon,  
 drihtā gedrýmōst. Dæg-sealdes hleo  
 pand ofer polenum: hæfde pitig God  
 sunnan sið-fæt seglê ofertolden,  
 15 spā þā mæst-rāpās men ne cūdon,  
 nē þā segl-rōde geseôn meahton  
 eorð-būende callē cræftē,  
 hū āfæstnōd pæs feld-hūsā mæst.

(106-134.)

- Fole pæs on sālum,  
 20 hlūd herges cym. Heofon-beācen āstāh  
 æfenā gehpam, ōðer pundor;  
 syllic æfter sunnan setl-rāde beheöld  
 ofer leód-perum ligē scīnan  
 byrnende beām. Blāce stōdon  
 25 ofer seeōtendum seīre leōman,  
 seīnon scyld-hreōðan, sceado spiðredon:  
 neōple niht-seūpan neah ne mihton  
 heolstor āhýðan. Heofon-candel barn:  
 nipe niht-peard nýde sceolde  
 30 pićian ofer peredum, þý læs him pēsten-gryrē  
 hār hād holmegum pedrum  
 ō fērelammē ferhđ getpæfde.  
 Hæfde foregenga fýrene loccās,  
 blāce beāmās, bæl-egsan hpeōp  
 35 þam here-þreāte, hātan ligē,

- þæt hê on pēstenne    perod forbærnde,  
 nymde hie mōd-hpate    Mōyses hýrde.  
 Sceân scír perod,    scyldās lixton;  
 gesápon rand-pígan    rihtre stræte  
 5    segn ofer speotum,    ôð þæt sê-fiesten  
 landes æt ende    leôð-magne forstôð,  
 fûs on forð-peg.    Fyrd-píc ârās,  
 pyrpton hie pērige;    piste genægdon  
 mōdige mete-þegnās    hyrá mægen bêtan.  
 10    Bræddon æfter beorgum,    sidðan býme sang,  
 flotán feld-húsum:    þá pæs feôrðe píc,  
 rand-pígenâ ræst    be þam Reáðan sê.

(154-182.)

- Þá him eorlá mōð    ortrýpe pearð,  
 sidðan hie gesápon    of súð-pegum  
 15    fyrd Faraônes    forð ongangen,  
 ofer-holt pegan,    eôred lixan,  
 þûfās þunian,    þeôð meare tredan:  
 gárās trymedon,    gûð hpearfôðe,  
 blicon bord-hreôðan,    býman sungon.  
 20    On hpæl hreôpon    here-fugolās  
 hilde græðige;    hræfen gól  
 deâpíg-federe    ofer driht-nêum,  
 pon pæl-ceásega.    Dulfās sungon  
 25    atol æfen-leôð    âtes on pēnan,  
 earleásan deôr,    epyld-rôf beôðan  
 on láðrá lást    leôð-mægnes fyl,  
 hreôpon meare-pearðās    middum nihtum:  
 fleáh fêge gást,    fole pæs gehæged.  
 Hpílum of þam perode    plance þegnās  
 30    mæton míl-paðās    mearâ bôgum.  
 Him þær sige-cýning    pið þone segn foran  
 mannâ þengel    meare-þreátê ráð;  
 gûð-pearð gumenâ    grím-helm gespeôn,  
 cýning ein-berge    (cumbol lixton)  
 35    píges on pēnum,    pæl-hlencan secôe,  
 hêht his here-eiste    healdan georne  
 fæst fyrd-getrum.    Feônd onsêgon.  
 láðum eágum    land-mannâ cyme.  
 Ymb hine pægon    pígend unforhte;

hære heoro-pulfās    hilde grêttan  
þurstige þræc-pîges,    þeôden-holde.

# BEOWULF.

(*A Good King*, 1-11.)

Hpæt! þe Gár-Denā    in geár-dagum  
þeôd-cyningā    þrym gefrunon,  
5    hū þā ætelingās    ellen fremedon!  
Oft Seyld Scêfing    sceadenā þreatum,  
monegum mægðum    meodo-setlā ofteáh;  
egsôde eorl,    syððan ârest pearð  
feásceaft funden;    hē þæs frôfre gebād,  
10    peôx under polcnum,    peorðmyndum þāh,  
ôð þæt him æghpyle    þārā ymb-sittendrā  
ofer hron-rāde    hýran scolde,  
gomban gyldan:    þæt þæs gôð cyning!

(*Obsequies of Seyld*, 26-52.)

Him þā Seyld gepāt    tō gescæp-hpile  
15    fela-hrôr fêran    on Freán pære.  
Hī hyne þā ætbæron    tō brimes farôðe,  
spæse gesiððas,    spā hē selfa bæd,  
þenden pordum peôld    pine Seyldingā,  
leôf land-fruma,    longe âhte.  
20    Pær æt hýðe stôð    bringed-stefna  
fîsig and út-fûs,    ædelinges fîer:  
âlêdon þā    leôfne þeôden,  
beágā bryttan,    on bearm scipes,  
mârne be mæste.    Pær þæs mād mā fela  
25    of feor-pegum,    frætpā, gelêded:  
ne hýrde ic cymlicor    ceôl gegyrpan  
hilde-pâpnum    and heaðo-pæðum,  
billum and byrnum:    him on bearme læg  
mād mā mænigo,    þā him mid scoldon  
30    on flôðes âht    feor gepitan.  
Nalæs hī hine læssan    lâcum teôðan,  
þeôð-gestreônum,    þonne þā dydon,  
þe hine æt frumsceafte    forð onsendon

- ænne ofer fýðe umbor pesende :  
 þá gyt híc him ásetton segen gyldenne  
 heáh ofer heáfod, lēton holm beran,  
 geáfon on gár-secg : him pæs geómor sefa,  
 5 murnende mōd. Men ne cunnon  
 seegan tō sōðe, sele-rædende,  
 hæleð under heofenum, hpá þæm hlæste onfêng !

(*Hrothgar and Heorot*, 64-83.)

- Pá pæs HIRÔDGÂRE here-spêd gyfen,  
 píges peordmynd, þæt him his pine-magâs  
 10 georne hýrdon, ôð þæt seô geôgod gepeôx,  
 mago-driht micel. Him on mōd be-arn,  
 þæt hê heal-reced hâtan polde,  
 medo-ærn micel men gepyrcean,  
 þone yldo bearn æfre gefrunon,  
 15 and þær on-innan eal gedêlan  
 geongum and ealdum, spyle him God sealde,  
 bûton fole-seare and feorum gumenâ.  
 Pá ic píde gefrægn peore gebannan  
 manigre mægðe geond þisne middangeard,  
 20 fole-stede frætpan. Him on fyrste gelomp  
 ædre mid yldum, þæt hit pearð eal gearo,  
 heal-ærnâ mæst : scôp him HEORT naman,  
 se þe his pordes gepeald píde hæfde.  
 Hê beôt ne álêh, beágâs dêalde,  
 25 sinc æt symle. Sele hlifæde  
 heáh and horn-geâp.

(*Grendel*, 99-129.)

- Spá þá driht-guman dreámm lifdon  
 eâdiglice, ôð þæt ân ongan  
 fyrene fremman, feônd on helle :  
 30 pæs se grimma gæst GRENDEL hâten,  
 mâre mearc-stapa, se þe mórâs heôld,  
 fen and fæsten ; fífel-cynnes eard  
 ponsâlig per pearðôðe hpíle,  
 siððan him Scyppend forserifen hæfde.  
 35 In Caines cynne þone epealm gepræc  
 êce Drihten, pæs þe hê Abel slôg :  
 ne gefeah hê þære fæhðe, ac hê hine feor forpræc,

- Metod for þý mánê    man-cynne fram.  
 Panon untydrás    ealle onpócon,  
 eotenás and ylfe    and orneás,  
 spylce gigantás,    þá pið Gode punnon  
 5    lange þrage:    hê him þæs leán forgeald!  
 Gepát þá neósian,    syððan niht becom,  
 heán hûses,    hû hit Hring-Dene  
 æfter beôr-þege    gebûn hæfdon;  
 fand þá þær inne    ætelingâ gedriht  
 10    spefan æfter symble:    sorge ne cûdon,  
 ponsceaft perâ.    Diht unhælo  
 grim and grædig    gearo sôna þæs,  
 reôc and rêðe,    and on ræste genam  
 þritig þegnâ;    þanon eft gepát  
 15    hûðe hrêmig    tô hâm faran,  
 mid þære pæl-fylle    picâ neôsan.  
 Pâ þæs on uhtan    mid ær-dæge  
 GRENDLES gûð-cræft    gumum undyrne:  
 þá þæs æfter piste    pôp up-âhafen,  
 20    micel morgen-spêg.

(144-152.)

- Spâ rixôde    and pið rihte pan  
 âna pið eallum,    ôð þæt îdel stôð  
 hûsâ sêlest.    Þæs seô hpil micel:  
 tpelf pintrâ tîd    torn geholôde  
 25    pine Scyldingâ,    peânâ gehpelene,  
 sidrâ sorgâ;    forþam siððan pearð  
 yldâ bearnum    undyrne cûð,  
 gyddum geômore,    þætte GRENDEL pan  
 hpile pið Hrôðgâr.

*(Beowulf sails for Heorot, 194-228.)*

- Þæt fram hâm gefrægn    Higelâces þegn,  
 gôð mid Geâtum,    Grendles dæðâ:  
 se þæs mon-cynnes    mægenes strengest  
 on þam dæge    þysses lifes,  
 ædele and eâcen.    Hêt him fýð-lidan  
 30    gôðne gegyrpan;    epæð hê gûð-cyning  
 ofer span-râde    sêcean polde,  
 mærne þeôden,    þá him þæs manwâ þearf.

205. Hæfde se gôða      Geâtâ leôdâ  
 ceompan gecorone,      þârâ þe hê cênôste  
 findan mihte:      fiftênâ sunn  
 sund-pudu sôhte;      seeg písâde,  
 5      lagu-cræftig mon,      land-gemyren.  
 Fyrst forð gepât:      flota pæs on ýðum,  
 båt under beorge.      Beornâs gearpe  
 on stefn stigon;      streâmâs pundon  
 sund pið sande.      Seegâs bâeron  
 10      on bearm nacan      beorhte fræte,  
 gûð-searo geatolic:      guman út senfon,  
 perâs on pilsîð      pudu bundenne.  
 Gepât þâ ofer pâg-holm      pindê gefýsed  
 flota fâmig-heals      fugle gelicôst,  
 15      ôð þæt ymb ân-tîð      ôðres dôgores  
 punden-stefna      gepaden hæfde,  
 þæt þâ lîðende      land gesâpon,  
 brim-clifu blican,      beorgâs steâpe,  
 sîde sê-næssâs:      þâ pæs sund liden  
 20      eoletes æt ende.      Panon up hraðe  
 Dederâ leôde      on pang stigon,  
 sê-pudu sâldon:      syrcan hrysedon,  
 gûð-gepêdo;      Gode þancedon,  
 pæs þe him ýð-lâde      cæte purdon.

(*The Warden of the Shore, 229+.*)

- 25      Þâ of pealle geseah      pearð Scyldingâ,  
 se þe holm-clifu      healdan scolde,  
 beran ofer bolcan      beorhte randâs,  
 fyrð-searu fûslîcu;      hine fyrpyt bræc  
 môð-gchygdum,      hþæt þâ men pâron.  
 30      Gepât him þâ tô parôðe      piegê rîðan  
 þegn Hrôðgâres,      þrymmum cpehte  
 mægen-pudu mundum,      meðel-pordum frægn:  
 "Hþæt syndon gê      searo-hæbbendrâ  
 byrnum perede,      þe þus brontne ceól  
 35      ofer lagu-strête      lâðan cpômon,  
 hider ofer holmâs      Hrôðgâr sêcean?  
 Ic pæs ende-sêta,      âg-pearde heôld,  
 þæt on land Denâ      lâðrâ nânig  
 mid scip-herge      secdðan ne meahte.

- Nô hêr cûðlicôr euman ongunnon  
 lind-hæbbende! nê gê leáfnes-pord  
 gûðt-fremmendrá gearpe ne pißson,  
 magâ gemêdu! Nâfre ic mârân geseah  
 eorlâ ofer eorðan, þonne is eôper sum,  
 seeg on searpum; nis þæt seld-guma  
 pâpnum gepeorðað, nafne him his plite leôge,  
 ænlic ansýn. Nú ic eôper sceal  
 frum-cyn pitan, ær gê fyr heonan  
 10 leáse sceâperâs on land Denâ  
 furdur fêran. Nú gê feor-btend  
 mere-litende, minne gehýrad  
 ânfealdne gepoht; ôfost is sêlest  
 tô gecýðanne, hpanan eôpre cyme syndon.\*  
 15 Him se yldesta andsparôde,  
 perodes písa pord-hord onleác:  
 “Dê synt gum-cynnes Geatâ leôde  
 and Higelâces heorð-geneâtâs.  
 Dæs mín fæder folenn gecýðed,  
 20 æðele ord-fruma Ecgþeôp hátan;  
 gebâd pintrâ porn, ær hê on peg hpurfe  
 gamol of gearðum; hine gearpe geman  
 pitenâ pel-hpyle píde geond eorðan.  
 Dê þurh holdne hige hlâford þínne  
 25 sunu Healfdenes sêcean cpômon,  
 leôð-gebyrgean. Des þû ús lârenâ gôð!”
286. Deard maðelôde, þær on piege sæt  
 ombeht unforht: “Æghpæðres sceal  
 seearp seyld-píga gescâd pitan,  
 30 pordâ and porcâ, se þe pel þenceð.  
 Ic þæt gehýre, þæt þis is hold veorod  
 freân Scyldingâ: gepitad forð beran  
 pâpen and gepædu, ic eôp písige.”
301. Gepiton him þâ fêran. Flota stille bád,  
 35 seomôde on sôle síð-fæðmed seip,  
 on anere fæst. Eoforlic seionon  
 ofer hleôð-beran gehroden goldê  
 fâh and fyr-heard; ferh pearde heôld.  
 Gûð-môde grummon, guman onetton,



- sigon ætsomne,    ôð þæt hý sæl timbred  
 geatolic and gold-fáh    ongytan mihton;  
 þæt pæs fore-mêrôst    fold-búendum  
 recedâ under roderum,    on þæm se ríca bád;  
 5    lixe se leôma    ofer landá fela.  
 Him þá hilde-deór    hof móðigrá  
 torht getæhte,    þæt hý him tô mihton  
 gegnum gangan.    Gûð-beorná sum  
 piæg gepende,    pord æfter epæd:  
 10    "Mæl is mê tô fêran!    Fæder alpaldá  
 mid ár-stafum    eôpic gehealde  
 síðá gesunde!    ic tô sê pille  
 pið prâð perod    pearde healdan."

*A Feast of Welcome.—(Wealhtheow, the Queen, 612 +.)*

- Pær pæs hæledâ hleahtor;    hlyn spynsôde,  
 15    pord pæron pynsme.    Eôðe DEALHPEÓÐ ford,  
 epên Hrôðgâres    cynná gemyndig,  
 grêtte gold-hroden    guman on healle,  
 and þá freôlic píf    ful gescalde  
 ærest Eást-Denâ    êðel-pearde,  
 20    bæd hine blitne    æt þære beór-þege,  
 leôdum leófne;    hê on lust geþeah  
 symbel and sele-ful,    sige-róf cyning.  
 Ymb-eôðe þá    ides Helmingâ  
 duguðe and geôgoðe    dæl æghpylene;  
 25    sinc-fato sealde,    ôð þæt sæl álamp,  
 þæt hiô Beópulfe,    beálg-hroden epên  
 môtê gepungen,    medo-ful ætbær;  
 grêtte Geátá leód,    Gode þancôðe  
 pís-fæst pordum,    þæs þe hire se pilla gelamp,  
 30    þæt heó on ænigne    eorl gelýfde  
 fyrenâ frófre.    Hê þæt ful geþeah,  
 pæl-reóp píga,    æt DEALHPEÓN,  
 and þá gyððole    gúðe gefýsed;  
 Beópulf maðelôðe,    bearn Ecgþeopes:  
 35    "Ic þæt hogôðe,    þá ic on holm gestáh,  
 sê-bát gesæt    mid minrá secgá gedriht,  
 þæt ic ânunga    eóprâ leódá  
 pillan geporhte,    oððe on pæl crunge,  
 feônd-grápum fæst.    Ic gefremman secal

- eorlic ellen,      oððe ende-dæg  
 on þisse meodu-healle      minne gebíðan."  
 Pam pífe þá pord      pel licôdon,  
 gilp-epide Geâtes;      eóðe gold-hroden  
 5      frêðlicu fole-epên      tô hire freân sittan.  
 Þá pæs eft spâ ær      inne on healle  
 þryð-pord spreccen,      þeód on sáelum,  
 sige-folcâ spæg,      ôð þæt semninga  
 sunu Healfdenes      sêcean polde  
 10      æfen-ræste.

(*Good-Night.*)

651.      Derod eal árás.  
 Grêtte þá      guma ôðerne,  
 HRÔÐGÁR BEÓDULF,      and him hæl ábeád.
1789.      Niht-helm gespearc  
 15      deorc ofer dryht-gumum.      Dugud eal árás;  
 polde blonden-feax      beddes neôsan,  
 gamela Scylding.      Geât ungemetes pel  
 rôfne rand-pígan      restan lyste:  
 sôna him sele-þegn      síðes pêrgum,  
 20      feorran-cundum      forð písaðe,  
 se for andrysum      ealle bepeotede  
 þegnes þearfe,      spylce þý dôgorê  
 heaðo-litende      habban scoldon.  
 Reste hine þá rûm-heort;      reced hlífáðe  
 25      geáp and gold-fáh,      gæst inne spæf,  
 ôð þæt hrefn blaca      heofenes pýmne  
 blið-heort bodôðe,      cóman beorhte leóman  
 ofer scadu seacan.

(*Hrunting, the Good Sword, 1455 +.*)

- 30      Næs þæt þonne mâtôst      mægen-fultumá,  
 þæt him on þearfe láh      þyle Hrôðgáres;  
 pæs þæm hæft-mêce      HRUNTING nama,  
 þæt pæs án foran      eald-gestreôná;  
 eeg pæs íren,      áter-tánum fáh,  
 áhyrðed heaðo-spátê;      náfne hit æt hilde ne spâc  
 35      mamná ángum      þára þe lit mid mundum beþand,  
 se þe gryre-siðás      gegán dorste,

folc-stede fārā; næs þæt forma sīð,  
þæt hit ellen-peore æfnan scolde.

(*It fails at Need*, 1512 +.)

- 5                   Pā se eorl ongeat,  
 þæt hē in nið-sele   nāt-hpylcum pæs;  
 þær him nænig pæter   pihtē ne sceððeð,  
 nē him for hrōf-sele   hrinan ne mehte  
 fār-gripe flōdes:   fȳr-leōht geseah,  
 blāene leōman   beorhte scīnan.  
 10   Ongeat þā se gōða   grund-pyrgenne,  
 mere-pīf mihtig;   mægen-ræs forgeaf  
 hilde-billē,   hond spenge ne oftēah,  
 þæt hire on hafelan   hring-mæl āgōl  
 grāðdig gūð-leōð;   þā se gist onfand,  
 þæt se beado-leōma   bītan nolde,  
 15   aldre sceððan,   ac seō eeg gescpāc  
 þeōðne aet pearfe:   þolōde ār fela  
 hond-gemōtā,   helm oft gescær,  
 fāges fyrd-hrægl:   þā pæs forma sīð  
 deōrum nriðme,   þæt his dōm ālæg.  
 20   Eft pæs ān-ræð,   nalas elnes læt,  
 mærdā gemyndig   mæg Hygelāces;  
 pearp þā punden-mæl   prættum gebunden  
 yrre oretta,   þæt hit on eorðan læg,  
 stīð and stȳl-ecg;   strengre getrūpōde,  
 25   mund-gripe mægenes.   Spā sceal man dōn  
 þonne hē at gūðe   gegān þenceð  
 longsumne lof,   nā ymb his lif cearað.

(*The Right Weapon*, 1557 +.)

- 30   Geseah þā on searpum   sige-cādig bil,  
 eald speord eotenise   eegum pyhtig,  
 pīgenā peord-mynd:   þæt pæs pāpnā cyst,  
 būton hit pæs mære   þonne ānig mon ōðer  
 tō beadu-lāce   ætberan meahhte,  
 gōd and geatolic   gigantā gepeore.  
 Hē gefēng þā fetel-bilt,   freca Seyðlingā,  
 35   hreōh and heoro-grim   hring-mæl gebrægd.

1687. Hrōðgār mætelōde,   hlit sceapōde,

- ealde lāfe,    on þæm pæs ðr priten  
 fyrn-gepinnes:    syððan flōd ofslōh,  
 gifen geōtende,    gigantā cyn,  
 frēene gefērdon:    þæt pæs fremde þeōd  
 5    ēcean Dryhtne,    him pæs ende-leān  
 þurh pæteres pylm    paldend sealde.  
 Spā pæs on þæm scennum    scīran goldes  
 þurh rūn-stafās    rihte gemearcōd,  
 geseted and gesæd,    hpām þæt speord geporht,  
 10    īrenā cyst,    ærest pære,  
 preoden-hilt and pyrm-fāh.

### ALFRED'S METERS OF BOETHIUS.

- Pus Ælfrēd ūs    eald-spel reahte  
 cynīng Dest-Sexnā,    cræft meldōde,  
 leōð-pyrhtā list:    him pæs lust micel,  
 15    þæt hē þiossum leōdum    leōð spellōde,  
 monnum myrgen,    mislice epidās.

#### METER VI.

- Pā se Disdōm eft    pord-hord onleāc,  
 sang sōð-epidās,    and þus selfa cpæc:  
 Þonne siō sunne    speotolōst scīneð  
 20    hādrōst of hefone,    hraðe biōc āþistrōd  
 ealle ofer eorðan    ôðre steorran;  
 forþæm hiorā birhtu    ne bið āuht  
 tō gesettanne    pið þære sunnan leōht.  
 Þonne smolte blāpð    sūðan and pestan  
 25    pind under polenum,    þonne peaxað hraðe  
 feldes blōstman    fægen þæt hī mōton:  
 ac se stearea storm,    þonne hē strong cymð  
 norðan and eāstan,    hē genimeð hraðe  
 þære rōsan plite,    and eac þā rūman sē  
 30    norðerne fyst    nēde gebædeð,  
 þæt hiō strange geohðstyred    on staðu beāteð.  
 Eā lā! þæt on eorðan    āuht fæstlīces  
 peorecs on pornlde    ne punād æfre!

## METER X.

33. Hpær sind nū þæs pīsan Dēlandes bān,  
 þæs gold-smiðes, þe þæs geō mārōst?  
 Forþý ic cpaet þæs pīsan Dēlandes bān,  
 forþý ængum ne mæg eord-būendrā  
 5 se craeft losian, þe him Crist onlēnd.  
 Ne mæg mon æfre þý eð æne præccan  
 his cræftes beniman, þe mon oncerran mæg  
 sunnan on-spīfan and þisne spīftan rodor  
 of his riht-ryne rincā ænig.  
 10 Hpā pāt nū þæs pīsan Dēlandes bān,  
 on hpeleum hī hlēpā hrusan þeccen?  
 Hpær is nū se rīca Rōmānā pita  
 and se ārōda, þe pē ymb sprecað,  
 hiorā heretoga, se gehāten þæs  
 15 mid þām burhparum Brūtus nemned?  
 Hpær is eac se pīsa and se peordgeorna  
 and se fæst-rāda folces hyrde,  
 se þæs ūðpita ælces þinges  
 cēne and cræftig, þām þæs Catōn nama?  
 20 Hī pæron gefyrn forð gepitene:  
 nāt nænig mon, hpær hī nū sindon!  
 Hpæt is hiorā here būton se hlīsa ān?  
 se is eac tō lytel spelerā lāriōpā,  
 forþām þā mago-rincās mārān pyrðe  
 25 pæron on porulde. Ac hit is pyrse nū,  
 þæt geond þās eorðan æghpær sindon  
 hiorā gelican hpōn ymbspræce,  
 sume openlice ealle forgitene,  
 þæt hī se hlīsa hīp-cūðe ne mæg  
 30 fore-mære perās forð gebrengan!  
 Peāh gē nū pēnen and pilnigen,  
 þæt gē lange tīd libban mōten,  
 hpæt iōp æfre þý bet biō oððe þince,  
 forþām þe nāne forlēt, peāh hit lang þince,  
 35 deað æfter dōgorrime, þonne hē hæfð Drihtnes leāfe?  
 Hpæt þonne hæbbe hælēdā ænig,  
 guma æt þām gilpe, gif hine gegripan mōt  
 se ēca deað æfter þissum porulde?

## S A W S.

- Forst sceal freōsan,    fȳr puđu meltan,  
 eorðe grōpan,    is bryegian,  
 pæter-helm pegan,    pundrum lūcan  
 eorðan eīdās:    ān sceal inbindan  
 5 forstes fetre,    fela-meahhtig God;  
 pinter sceal gepeorpan,    peder eft euman,  
 sumor spegle hāt,    sund unstillē:  
 deōp deāda pæg    dȳrne bið lengest.  
 Holen sceal inæled,    yrfe gedæled  
 10 deādes monnes:    dōm bið sēlāst.  
 Cyning sceal mid eāpē    epēne gebiegan,  
 bunum and beāgum:    bu sceolon ārest  
 geofum gōd pesan.    Gūð sceal in eorle  
 pīg gepeaxan,    and pīf gepeōn  
 15 leōf mid hyre leōdum,    leoht-mōð pesan,  
 rūne healdan,    rūm-heort beōn  
 mearum and mādnum,    meoðo-rædenne  
 for gesīd-mægen;    simle āeghpær  
 eodor ætelingā    ārest gegrētan,  
 20 forman fullē    tō frēan hond  
 ricene geræcan    and him ræd pitan,  
 bold-āgendum    bām ætsonne.  
 Seip sceal genægled,    seyld gebunden,  
 leōht linden bord;    leōf pileuma  
 25 frysan pife,    þonne flota stondeð;  
 bið his ceōl cumen    and hyre ceorl tō hām,  
 āgen āetgeofa,    and heō hine in laðād,  
 pæscēð his pārig brægl  
     and him syleð pæde nipe;  
 30 lið him on londe    þæs his lufu bādeð.  
 Dīf sceal pīd per    pære gehealdan;  
 fela bið fæst-hyðgrā,  
     fela bið fyrpet-geornrā,  
 frēoð hȳ fremde monnan,  
 35 þonne se oðter feor gepiteð.  
 Līda bið longe on sīde;  
     ā mon sceal sepeāh leōfes pēnan,  
 gebīdan þæs hē gebādan ne mæg,  
     hþonne him eft gebyre peorðe;

- hām cymed̃, gif hē hāl leofað̃,  
 nefne him holm gestýred̃;  
 mere hafað̃ mundum, mægd̃ egsan pyn.  
 Ceap-eaðig mon cyning pic þonne  
 5 leōdon cýped̃, þonne liðan cymed̃:  
 puðā and pætres nyttað̃  
 þonne him bið pic ālyfed̃;  
 mete byged̃, gif hē mārān þearf,  
 ærþon hē tō mēde peorde.  
 10 Seōe se bið þe tō seldan ieted̃;  
 þeāh hine mon on sunnan læde,  
 ne mæg hē be þý pedrē pesan,  
 þeāh hit sý pearm on sumerā;  
 ofereumen bið hē, ær hē ācepele,  
 15 gif hē nāt hpā hine epiene fēde.  
 Mægen mon sceal mid mete fēðan,  
 mordor under eorðan befeolan,  
 hinder under hrusan, þe hit forhelan þenceð;  
 ne bið þæt gedēfe deað̃, þonne hit gedyrned peorðed̃.  
 20 Heān sceal gehnūgan, ādl gesīgan,  
 ryht roġian. Rād̃ bið nyttõst,  
 yfel unnyttōst, þæt unlæd nimeð;  
 gōd bið genge and pið God lenge.  
 Hyge sceal gehealden, hond gepealden;  
 25 scō sceal in cāgan, snyttro in breōstum,  
 þær bið þæs monnes mōd-geþoncās.  
 Mūðā gehpyle mete þearf, mæl sceolon tīdum gongan.  
 Gold gerīsed̃ on guman speorde,  
 sellīc sige-sceorþ, sine on epēne,  
 30 gōd scōp gumum, gār nīð-perum  
 piġ tō-piðre, pic-freodā healdan.  
 Seyld sceal cempa, sceast reáfere;  
 sceal brýde beāġ, bēc leornere,  
 hūs hālgum men, hādnum synne.  
 35 Dōden porhte peōs, puldor Alpaldā,  
 rūme roderās; þæt is rīce God,  
 sylf sōð cyning, sāplā nergend,  
 se ūs eal forgeaf, þær pē on lifgað̃,  
 and eft æt þām ende callum peaked̃  
 40 monnā cynne; þæt is meotud sylfā.
-

## THRENES.

- Dindê bipâune      peallâs stondad  
 hrîmê bihrorene,      hrÿdte þâ ederâs.  
 Dôriad þâ þîn-salo,      paldend liegad  
 dreâmê bidrorene;      dugnd eal gecrong  
 5      plone bî pealle:      sumne þîg fornom,  
 ferede in forðpege;      sumne fugel ôðbær  
 ofer liealhne holm;      sumne se hâra pulf  
 deåde gedælde;      sumne dreôrig-hleôr  
 in eorð-seræfe      eorl gehÿdde:  
 10      ÿdte spâ þisne eard-geard      ældâ Scyppend,  
     ôðþæt burgparâ      breahtmâ leâse  
     eald entâ gepeore      îdln stôdon.  
 Se þonne þisne peal-steal      þisê geþohtê  
 and þis deorce lif      deôpe geondþenceð,  
 15      frôd in ferde,      feor oft gemon  
     pæl-sleahþâ porn      and þâs pord æcipð:      [ðum-gyfa?  
     “Hpær epom mearg, hpær epom mago?      hpær epom mât-  
     hpær epom symbli gesetu?      hpær sindon sele-dreâmâs?  
     Eâlâ beorht bune,      eâlâ byrn-þîga,  
 20      eâlâ þeôðnes þrym!      hû seô þrag gepât,  
     genâp under niht-helm,      spâ heô nô pâre!  
     Stonded nû on lâste      leôfre dugnde  
     peal pundrum healh      pyrmlicum fâh:  
     eorlâs fornôman      ascâ þryde,  
 25      pæpen pæl-gîfru,      Dyrð seô mâre,  
     and þâs stân-hleoðu      stormâs enyssad;  
     hrið hreôsende      hruse binded  
     pintres pôma:      þonne pon cymed,  
     nîped niht-scûa,      nordan onsended  
 30      hreô hægl-fare      hæledum on andan.  
     Eal is earfôðlic      eordan rice:  
     onpended pyrdâ gesceaft      peoruld under heofenum.  
     Hêr bið feoh læne,      hêr bið freond læne,  
     hêr bið mon læne,      hêr bið mæg læne:  
 35      eal þis eordan gesteal      îdel peorðed.”  
     Spâ cpaet snottor on môde,  
     gesæt him sundor æt rîne.  
     Til bið seþe his treôpe gehealded:  
     ne sceal næfre his torn tô rycene



beorn of his breôstum âcýðan,  
 nemde hê ær þa bôte cunne,  
 eorl mid elnê gefremman:  
 þel bið þam þe him âre sêced,  
 5 frôfre tô Fæder on heofonum,  
 þær ûs eal seô fæstnung stondeð.

Deland him be purman præces cunnâde,  
 ânhydig eorl, earfôðâ dreág;  
 hæfde him tô gesiððe sorge and longâð,  
 10 pinter-cealde præce: peân oft onfond,  
 siððan hine Nidhâd on nêde legde  
 sponcere seono-benne, ou sýllan mon.  
 Pæs ofereôde, þisses spâ mæg!  
 Beadohilde ne pæs hyre brôðrâ deað  
 15 on sefan spâ sâr, spâ hyre sylfre þing,  
 \* \* \* \* \*  
 \* \* \* \* \* æfre ne meahte  
 þrîste geþencan, hû ymb þæt sceolde.  
 Pæs ofereôde, þisses spâ mæg!  
 20 Dê geâscôðan Eormanrîces  
 pylfenne geþoht: âhte piðe fole  
 Gotenâ rîces; þæt pæs grim cyning.  
 Sæt seeg monig sorgum gebunden,  
 peân on pēnau, pýsete genealhhe,  
 25 þæt þæs cyne-rîces ofereumen pære.  
 Pæs ofereôde, þisses spâ mæg!  
 Ic hpîle pæs Heodeningâ scôp  
 dryhtne dýre: mê pæs Deôr noma;  
 âhte ie fela pintrâ folgâð tilne,  
 30 holdne hlâford, ôð þæt Heorrenda nâ  
 leôð-craeftig mon lond-ryht gepah,  
 þæt mê eorlâ hleô ær gesealde.  
 Pæs ofereôde, þisses spâ mæg!

## RHYMES.

- Der-cyn gepited,      pæl-gâr slited,  
 flâh mân flited,      flân mân hpited,  
 borg-sorg bited,      bald ald ppited,  
 præc-fæc prited,      prâc âc smited,  
 5      syn-gryn sited,      searo-fearo glided.  
 Gorn torn grafed,      graft ræft hæfed,  
 searo hpit sôlâc,      sumur-hât côlâc,  
 fold-pela fealled,      feôndscipe pealled,  
 eord-mægen ealdâc,      ellen cealdâc.  
 10      Mē þæt pyrd gepæf      and gepyrht forgeaf,  
          þæt ic grôfe graef;      and þæt grimme geraef  
          fleôn flæscê ne mæg,      þonne flân-hred dæg  
          nýð-grápum nimeð,      þonne seô neaht becymeð,  
          seô mē êdles ofon      and mē hēr eardes oncon.  
 15      Þonne lichoma liged:      limu pyrm þiged  
          and him pynne gepiged      and þā pist gepiged,  
          ôð þæt beôð þā bân      gebrosnâd on ân  
          and æt nýhstan nân      nefne se nêðâ tân  
          balapum hēr gehloten.      Ne bið se hlisa âþroten.  
 20      Ær þæt eadig gepenceð;  
          hē hine þē oftôr spenceð,  
          byrged him þā bitran synne,  
          hyegâð tō þære betran pynne,  
          gemon meordâ lisse,  
 25      þær sindon miltsâ blisse  
          hyhtlice in heofenâ rice.  
          Uton nū hálgun gelice  
          seyldum biscerede      seyndan generede  
          pommum biperede,      puldrê gehêrede,  
 30      þær mon-cyn môt      for meotude rôð  
          sôðne God geseôn      and á in sibbe gefeôn!

## N O T E S.

---

PAGE 1. THE GOSPELS were read in Anglo-Saxon as part of the Church service. Several manuscripts written before the Norman Conquest are preserved. An edition was printed by Parker in 1571, by Marshall in 1665, by Thorpe in 1842. Bouterwek published the Northumbrian version of the Lindisfarne Codex (Durham Book) in 1857, and both the Lindisfarne and Rushworth for the three first Gospels have been printed for the Surtees Society, 1854-1863. Kemble at his death in 1857 was at work on an edition, of which Matthew has since been printed for the Syndics of the University Press at Cambridge. It has the Latin *Vetus Italica* and four Anglo-Saxon texts printed together, with the various readings of three others. Two of these are the Lindisfarne and Rushworth, the others are copies of the received version of the West-Saxon Church: the best was written about 1000. A critical edition of the Gospels is still wanting. We have a careful edition of the Psalms by Grein. Ælfric's translation of the Heptateuch was published by Thwaites, 1698.

PAGE 2. THE LORD'S PRAYER. The end of Matthew, vi., 13, *For thine is the kingdom*, etc., is not in the Latin, and so not in the Anglo-Saxon. It is wanting in many Greek manuscripts.

PAGE 9. ULFILAS (Gothic VULFILA) was born in 311, and died in 381. He was a Goth, and for forty years bishop of the Goths in Dacia. Fragments of his translation of the Bible have been found in eight manuscripts. The extract here given is from the so-called Codex Argenteus, written on parchment in silver and gold letters, in Italy, in the fifth century, and, after various fortunes, now in the library of the University of Upsala. It had originally 330 leaves, and contained the four Gospels; of these 177 remain. The other fragments are mainly from Paul's epistles, enough to make about 145 more such pages. See further for Gothic, §§ 7-9, and the Index.

PAGE 12. THE LORD'S PRAYER. *Father* our thou in *heavens*, *Hallowed*-*be* name thine. Come *kingdom* thine. Worth will thine, so in *heaven* and on earth. Loaf our the *daily* give us *this* day. And off-let us that in *which* we debtors are, so so also we off-let them debtors ours. And not bring us in *temptation*, but loose us of the evil; *since* thine is *kingdom* and might and *glory* in ever. Amen.

*Atta*, v. 45; *unsar*, A.-S. *úser*, *ûre* > our, Ger. *unser*, § 132; *þu*, v. 39, § 130, for its use as a relative, § 381; in *himinam*, v. 45; *veihnái* < *veihnan*, § 170, akin to *veih*s, holy, A.-S. *pih*, Ger. *weih-*, akin to *witch*; *namô*, declens., § 95, A.-S. *nama* > name, Ger. *name*, Lat. *nomen* > noun, Gr. *ὄνομα*, Sansk. *nâman*, *√gna*, know; *þein*, v. 39; *kvimái*, v. 47; *þiudi*-

*nassus*, declens., § 93, from *piuda*, v. 46; *vairpái*, v. 45; *vilja*, declens., § 95, v. 40; *spé*, v. 48; *jah*, v. 38; *ana*, v. 45; *airp-a*, dat. -ái, declens., § 88, A.-S. *corde*, Ger. *erde*, *√ar*, plough, till? *Illáifs*, § 70, A.-S. *hláf* > loaf, Ger. *laib*; *pana*, § 104; *sinteins*, declens., § 107, akin to A.-S. *sin-*, O. H. G. *sin-*, Lat. *sem-*, Gr. *évo-ε*, Sansk. *sa-ná'*, § 254; *gif*, v. 42; *uns*, *himma*, A.-S. *him*, § 130; *dags*, § 70, A.-S. *dæg*, Ger. *tag*; *aflét'*, v. 40; *patei*, v. 38; *skula*, declens., § 95, verb *skulan*, A.-S. *sculan* > shall, Ger. *sollen*, § 212; *sijáima*, v. 48; *veis*, § 130; *pé*, Ger. *wir*; *briggáis*, A.-S. *bringan* > bring, Ger. *bringen*; *fráistubn-i*, dat. -jái < *fráisan*, A.-S. *frásian* > O. Engl. *fraise*, to tempt, question, O. H. G. *freisa*; *ak*, v. 39; *láusei*, A.-S. *leōsan* > loose, Ger. *licsen*, Lat. *luo*, *so-lu-tus*, Gr. *λόω*, Sansk. *lú*; *ubilin*, *unté*, v. 45; *piudan-gardi*, king-court, see *piudinassus* above, -*gards*, A.-S. *geard* > yard, garden, Ger. *garten*, Lat. *hortus*, Gr. *χόρος*, a place girt, enclosed; *mahts*, § 89, A.-S. *meahte* > might, Ger. *macht* > verb *mag*, may; *vulpus*, A.-S. *puldor*, glory, declens., § 93; *áws*, time, declens., § 89, A.-S. *ápu* > aye, Ger. *je*; *Amén*, true, Hebrew.

PAGE 13. DIALOGUES OF CALLINGS. This was one of the standard textbooks for the study of Latin in the Anglo-Saxon schools. It was prepared with interlinear Latin and Anglo-Saxon by Ælfrie, the grammarian, after the Homilies (see p. 75), and enlarged by Ælfrie Bata, his pupil. Manuscripts are in the British Museum and the Oxford library. It was printed by Thorpe in 1831, and has been often reprinted. It is good school-master's Anglo-Saxon, and gives a lively picture of the manners and customs of the time. It is nearly all brought in, in one place or another, in Sharon Turner's History.

1. TEACHER AND SCHOLAR.—*tēce*, teach. subj., §§ 423, 425.—*pille* < *pillad*, *rēce* < *recat*, § 165.—*spreccan* = *sprecon*, subj., § 170.—*bútan* . . ., it only it be correct speech.—*pille gē*, Do you wish.—*hwæt spriest þú?* what will you talk about? pres. for future, § 413, 4.—*hwæt peorecs*, what kind of work, § 312, *a*.—*wlcé dæg*, each day, instrumental of *dæg* without -*é*, like the dative, § 71, *b*.—*các spylce*, also likewise, also.

2. TEACHER AND PLOUGHMAN.—These dialogues are a continuation of the first.—*nis hit*, it is never, *nis* = *ne is*, § 213.—*gefastnōdum secarē and cultrē*, share and colter having been fastened, dative absolute, § 304, *d*.

PAGE 14. TEACHER AND OXHERD.—*betēce*, *tēcan*, teach, show, Lat. *ad-signo*, assign, hand over; distinguish *betēce*, take, p. 15.

PAGE 15.—*rân*, from *râ*, *n*, *m*., roebucks, *rūgan*, *f*., roe.

PAGE 16.—*spá fela* . . . *spá fela spá*, so many . . . as.—*for hwý*, for what reason, instrumental of *hwæt*, § 135.—*mē is*, dative of possessor, § 298, *b*.—*fela spilces*, many (of) such, partitive, § 312.—*þænne þe* . . ., than one which is able to sink or kill not only me, but also my comrades: *one* understood, *þe hē*, which, § 381, *nā hwæt ân*, not only, *ac cács spylce*, but also. EXTRACT 7.—*fela pīscenū*, many (of) ways, § 312.—*seceoldon*, what should they be to me, i. e., of what use? infinitive omitted, § 435, *d*, so after *ean*, I know (how to tame them)

PAGE 17.—*pintrâ, pudd, sumerâ*, § 93.—*ôt þat ân*, to that alone, so much.—*nâ þæt*, not only. EXTRACT 8.—*eal spâ*, all so, for the same price as.—*þanon*, whence, from which.

PAGE 18.—*nylpyrdnesse*, partitive genitive after *þpart*, § 312, *a*. EXTRACT 10.—*gereordunge*, luncheon, *metê*, dinner.—*Hþile mannâ* . . . Which of men enjoys (sweet meats) savory dishes? *pered*, adj., sweet, dative after *purh-brýged*, § 300.—*búton ic* . . . unless I as a guard am with you, who do not even eat your vegetables without me. EXTRACT 11.—*hpæder*, interrogative sign, need not be translated, § 397.—*tô þel*, well to that degree, so well. EXTRACT 12.—*on ænigum*, in any way.

PAGE 19.—EXTRACT 13.—*ic áhsie þá*, I ask about those—who are those? EXTRACT 14.—*is gefuht*, seems, Lat. *videtur*, § 408, *c*.

PAGE 20.—*slecgedâ*, gen. plur., § 85, *a*.—*craflê minê*, instrumental, § 300; the text has *minum*, dative; the schoolmaster's license has been taken to introduce the instrumental for drill.—*ne furdon*, not even.—*hpætllicor*, very quickly.—*ânru gehpylc*, each of ones, each one, § 386, *b*, 7.—*nelle, ne pille*, subj. pres., if he wish not to be, perhaps really a mistake for infinitive *nellan*, in analogy with Lat. *nolle*.—*pitad* rare for *piton*.

PAGE 21.—*be eallum hâlgum*, of all saints, all-hallows.—*be þam*, about that, dative of theme, § 334.

PAGE 23.—THE ANGLO-SAXON CHRONICLE. A Chronicle is known to have been kept at the monasteries as early as the time of Alfred. It has been supposed that he had it compiled, and copies made for the libraries. How the later records were kept is not known; they come down to 1154, Henry II. The Chronicle has been often printed and translated. Thorpe's edition, 1861, contains seven fully printed parallel texts, a translation, and indexes. It has been used in preparing these extracts. They are, however, much condensed and freely handled, so that the students will find it easier to read them by the aid of the vocabulary than to look up the passages in Bohn. As far as Bede's history extends, the Chronicle is, for the most part, abridged from it or drawn from a common source.

*búend*, inhabitants, nom. plur., § 87.—*Armorica*, Lat., undeclined, the Chr. have *Armenia*, but see Bede, 1, 1.—*ær þam þe*, before this that, before.—*ge-eode þel manige* . . ., subdued very many (a) great town, § 395, 2. A.D. 47.—*æt neáðstan* generally means *at last*, here Bede has *pene*, almost, declension of proper names, § 101. A.D. 167.—*onfeng* may take a dative, accusative, or genitive object, § 299.—*bæd* with genitive, § 315, *a*. A.D. 381.—*feóper hund*, 400, the numerals in the Chronicle are generally denoted by the Roman letters, oftenest followed by a partitive genitive, § 393.—*hund*, § 139. A.D. 443.—*heom*, for themselves, §§ 366, 8, 315, *a*. A.D. 449.—*Hengest* and *Horsa* are both *horses*, some suppose them mythic.—*þu þam þe*, in exchange for this, that—for which, §§ 359, 380, 3.—*Angel, es*, m., Angeln is now the name of a tract in Schleswig, between the Schley and Flensburg.—*nû gyt*, now yet.—*se á súðlan* . . ., which ever since has stood waste: they are Bede's statements, 1, 15.—Woden, the god from whom

Wednesday is named, Scandinavian Odin, who is the supreme deity. A.D. 538.—*ǣr calende*: *calend*, like Lat. *calendæ* in the poets, is used for *month*. It is sometimes singular, sometimes plural. A.D. 540.—*steorran hi*, stars they appeared; repeated subject, § 288, *b*. A.D. 565.—*se Columba*, the Columba (above mentioned), § 368, *a*. A.D. 603.—*tō cyninge*, whom Æthelbert, king of the men of Kent, established there *as king*: compare English *took to wife*, § 352, factitive.—*æt handá*, at (by) the hand. A.D. 611.—*cóm*, *cpam* > *cpom* > *euom* > *cóm* > *com*, Orm. *comm*, is very often marked long in the Chronicle, though the discrimination from plur. *cómon* favors *com*. A.D. 664.—*forman*, first, Beda and the Chr. have the 5th of the *nones of May*, incorrectly. Colman was from Scotland, and had been made bishop in Northumbria. He would not use the Roman mode of tonsure, but shaved the front hair from ear to ear in the form of a crescent; he kept Easter at the wrong time, and had great controversies with the Romanists on these matters, getting the worst of it. A.D. 687.—*eft*, again. A.D. 688.—*Petrus*, nominative of enunciation, § 288, *e*.—*under Christes cláðum*, in his baptismal clothes. A.D. 693.—*cynebōte*, besides the wergild paid to the heirs of a murdered king, a *bót*, or compensation was made to the state, generally equal to the other. The amount here paid is variously estimated, probably £120. A.D. 754.—*ptan*, the original of Parliament.—*þæs þe*, from this that, after.—*þá on þæs pifes geþærum*, then by the woman's gestures.—*heorá æghwílcum*, to each of them.—*lægon*, lay dead.—*þá on morgene . . .*, when in the morning the king's thanes, who had been left behind him, heard that, that the king had been slain, then rode they.—*ealdorman*, Lat. *dux*, was the governor of a shire. The king's *thanes* were dignitaries like king's ministers now: they were of many kinds—*horse-thane*, marshal; *bower-thane*, chamberlain, etc.—*þá þe*, who, *him fram noldon*, would not (go) from him, §§ 380, 3, 440.—*nænig mæg nære*, no kinsman could be; emphatic negation. A.D. 784.—*Heretaland*, Norway. A.D. 800.—*for þý . . . þý þe*, for this reason . . . because (that).—*tō cpêne*, as queen, § 352. A.D. 823.—*heom tō fride*, for themselves for peace, and as protector. A.D. 855.—*And him þá*, and to him then Charles, king of the Franks, his daughter gave as a queen for him—Charles the Bald.—*þæs þe*, from the time that, after.—*nigontéode healf*, 18½, § 147. A.D. 872.—*and þá Deniscan*, and (=but) the Danes held possession of the slaughter-place (battle-field).—*bútan þam þe heom*, besides which, against them—rode. A.D. 878.—*hinc bestel*, stole (itself), § 290, *d*.—*heom geeýrdon*, brought into allegiance to themselves.—*æfter wudum*, among the forests, § 331.—The Danes Ingvar and Hálfdán bore the Raven, 840 Danes died around it. —*him ongcán*, to meet him.—*hire*, § 312.—*his*, § 315.—*him æfter*, after it, pursued it to its intrenchment.—*poldon*, would (go), § 440.—*þritigá sum*, one of thirty, with twenty-nine companions, § 388.—*crismlýsing*, compare *Cristes cláðum*, A.D. 688. A.D. 897.—*ongcán þás æscs*, against the *æscs*, Danish long ships, like *asneu* spears.—*mild eallc*, and every thing. A.D. 901.—*calrá háligrá mæssan*, All-hallowmass (Oct. 26).—*forsápon*, despised

every compact that King Edward and his Parliament offered them. A.D. 925.—*scofode healf*, 6½, § 147. A.D. 975–978.—*Corfe* was the royal residence of Elfrida, the mother-in-law of Edward. The king while hunting was allured thither alone. She received him at the gate and kissed him. The cup was offered, and as he drank, one of her attendants stabbed him in the back. He spurred away, but soon died, and the frightened horse dragged the corpse of “Edward the Martyr.” Æthelred, “the Unready,” was her son. A.D. 991.—*þá pearð hit*, then there was, § 397.—*frid and grut*, rhyming and alliterating emphatic tautology is a characteristic of legal and other forms in the Teutonic languages. The lawyers distinguish *frid* as general peace, *grut* a special security of particular property.—*æghpider*, every whither.—*flocmælum*, adv., in flocks or troops, § 144.—Richard II., count of Normandy. The queen’s name was Emma Ælfgife, afterward wife of Cnút. A.D. 1014.—*scó burhparu*, the city, a collective singular for the body of citizens. A.D. 1028.—*pearð his man*, was his man=paid him *hom*-age. A.D. 1052.—*â-lêde*, abolished, § 209.—*þæs þe*, after.—*mid*, adv., also, it tormented men also manifoldly. A.D. 1066.—*Normandige*, Lat. *Normannia* (*un* > *nd*, *î* > *ig*, dissimilation, §§ 27, 5; 175, *b*) usually is of feminine strong declension, but genitive in *-es* occurs, A.D. 1101. The *hide* is about thirty acres, the *gird* (>yard) one fourth of a hide. A.D. 1087.—*mæl*, portion.—*þæt . . . þæt*, repeated, as in A.D. 751, and often.—*mændon*, bemoaned.—*nûð*, *es*, m., opposition.

#### CONVERSION OF THE ANGLO-SAXONS.

PAGE 35.—GREGORY. This is taken from a homily of Ælfrie, the grammarian, Hom. ii., 116. It is in Thorpe’s *Analecta*, and elsewhere. It is here abridged. These homilies are eighty in number, and were compiled and translated from Latin works, about A.D. 990, for the unlearned, whose books, except Alfred’s translations, he says were full of errors. They are, therefore, written in simple English (Anglo-Saxon), without obscure words. A careful edition, with a translation, was prepared by Thorpe for the Ælfrie Society, 1844–1846.

PAGE 36, line 35.—*hpæt*, an interjection of emphasis, § 377, *b*; compare *What, Lucius! ho!* (Shakespeare, J. C., ii., 1), *What, warden! ho!* (Scott, *Marmion*); so *Beowulf*, p. 56.

PAGE 37, line 3.—*þæt*, relative, used without agreement in gender or number like English *that*, § 374, 2. 26.—*þæron*, they were ready, *hi* understood.

PAGE 38, line 8.—*þé*, reflexive dative, § 298, *c*. 14.—*mæsse-reáfum*, robes in which to celebrate mass. 15.—*reliquas*, Latin, accusative plural of *reliquæ*, relics. 16.—*pallum*, Latin, accusative sing. of *pallum*, pall, a consecrated scarf, embroidered with purple crosses.

PAGE 38.—PAULINUS. From Beda’s *Ecclesiastical History of the Angles and Saxons*, book ii., chap. 13, with an introduction from chap. 9, and conclusion from chap. 16. Beda, “The Venerable Bede,” was born near Wear-

mouth and Yarrow, A.D. 673. He went to the abbey when seven years old, and studied there till he died, May 26, 735. He was made deacon at 19, priest at 30; declined to be abbot, as bringing distraction of mind, which hinders the pursuit of learning. He was making a translation of the Gospel of John when he died. A list of 44 of his works is given by Wright. Among them are Commentaries on the Bible, Biographies, History, Treatises on Natural Science, Grammar, Versification. He was fond of his native language and poetry, and composed verses both in Anglo-Saxon and Latin. This extract may be compared with Cædmon, page 47. The liveliest parts of Gregory and the Chronicle are also in Beda. He is one of the great authors of the world. An acute observer and profound thinker, with what our critics call a poet's heart and eye, he sets forth the gentle and beautiful traits of character in the saintly heroes of his time with unmistakable relish, and in a style graceful, picturesque, at times dramatic. Some of his best scenes have often been rendered in English verse. That from Paulinus may be read in Wordsworth's Ecclesiastical Sonnets, xv.-xvii. Beda's Works have been repeatedly published both on the Continent and in England. The Ecclesiastical History was translated from the Latin by Alfred. Wheloc's edition has Latin and Anglo-Saxon in parallel columns. Folio, Cambridge, 1644. Smith's has various readings. Folio, Cambridge, 1722. A new edition is much needed.

PAGE 38, line 21.—*pære tīde*, A.D. 625-627. 25.—*hpilc*. of what kind to them seemed and appeared; Beda's Latin *videtur* is tautologically rendered by *puhte* and *geseþen pære*. 27.—(who) was called Cefi, § 385. 33.—*þá þe*, who, § 380, 3. 34.—*I know what*, introductory exclamation still in colloquial use: there is no Latin for it in Beda.

PAGE 39, line 4.—*tô fēng*, took up the discussion. 5.—One text has *cyn-ing leófōsta*. 11.—*hpæt*, lo; *rined*, wet, looks like a mistake for *hrinen*. touched, Beda's *tangitur*. 13.—*pintrá*, § 93, *i*. 30.—Lo, he then, the king; repeated subject, § 288, *b*. 32.—*Mid þý*, When he then, the king, from the aforesaid bishop of their religion which they practised before, sought and asked who should desecrate and overthrow the idols, etc., . . . then answered.

PAGE 40, line 19.—*liged*, which extends out to the sea; relative omitted, § 385. 20.—*hê Bêda*, so says Alfred. 24.—*and* connects *hê* and *menigo*. 28.—*hócihthe neôsu þynne*, Béd. *nâso adunco pertenui*, his prominent feature like an eagle's beak (Wordsworth, l. c.); the texts read for *hócihthe*, *med-micle*, small, which destroys the feature; *nôsu*, f. is the more common form. 31.—*æghpider ymb spâ spâ*, whithersoever.—*þeâh þe*, even if. 33.—*spulce*, so much also the same king attended to utility for his people. 34-36.—*þæt* . . . *þæt*, repeated. 37.—*þá hpædere*, then yet, however.

#### ANGLO-SAXON LAWS.

A considerable body of Anglo-Saxon laws remains. Their most striking general feature is the payment of money for all sorts of offenses. Confinement was not easy or safe. The kind of offenses specified, and their com-



parative estimate, are fruitful in suggestions concerning the life and the character of our ancestors. The laws have been often printed. The best editions are those of Thorpe (2 vols., pp. 631, 551) and Schmid (Leipzig, 1858). The latter is in one volume, and has a critical text and translations in Latin and German in parallel columns, notes, and a glossary. The sections here selected are numbered as in Schmid.

PAGE 41.—Æthelbirht (-briht, i > y) was king of Kent at its conversion. See page 37. The laws were written 597–614. One manuscript copy only remains, written for Ernulf, bishop of Rochester, 1115–1125. The language used indicates that it was copied from older text, but how near the original it comes we know not.

Line 1.—*for gelde*, let him pay, subj. for imperative, § 421, 3. 2.—*gcbête, pite*; besides the *bôt* paid to the injured party, a penalty, *pite*, was generally paid to the crown. Compare Tacitus, Germania, c. 12. 4.—*leôd-geld*=*per-geld*, wergild, compensation for a man to his kin or representatives, to be distinguished from the *bôt* to the lord of the slain and the *pite* to the king; *medume*, small, half; the *bôt* is to be 100 shillings, half the wergild; *man* is freeman. 9.—*ceorl* is a freeman of low rank; *hlâf-æta*, compare *hlâf-ord*. 10.—§§ 39 and 40 are perhaps transposed. *ôder*, either. 16.—*cin-bân*, jaw-bone. Compare Goth. *kinnu*, page 10, verse 39. 17–20.—*æt . . . æt*, repeated: For the four front teeth, for each = for each of the four front teeth (pay) six shillings; the tooth which then stands by, —(pay for it) four shillings, anacoluthon, § 288, a. 22.—*gebroced* is common for *gebrocen* in the laws.

PAGE 42, line 5.—*for gelde*, let (the striker) pay; *heáh hand*, right hand, the common Scandinavian idiom. Compare *spýdre*, page 10, verse 39.

*Hlôthhere* succeeded his brother Ecgberht as king of Kent in July, 673, and reigned 11 years and 7 months. He died of wounds received in battle with his nephew *Eádric*, who then reigned one year and a half (Béd., iv., 5, 26). These laws are in the same manuscript with those of Æthelbirht.

Line 19.—*mund-byrd*, the fine for violating protection guaranteed by any one: a *ceorl* gave six shillings' worth of protection, an earl twelve, a king fifty, in Æthelbirht's time.

*Ine*, king of Wessex at the resignation of Ceadwalla, A.D. 688, abdicated and went to Rome in 725 (Béd., v., 7; and see Chronicle). His laws are found in the same manuscripts as those of Alfred, written like a continuation of Alfred's Code.

Line 27.—*gchungenes*, full grown, eminent, a member of Parliament.

PAGE 43, line 8.—Out of the highway through the forest, § 340. 9.—He is to be regarded as a thief, § 451, 337, II. 11.—And it is detected in the one that did it. 14.—*þritig*, undeclined, for *þritigum*. 15.—*pære*, subj., §§ 421, 427, let there be of them so many as there may be of them.

ALFRED'S LAWS.—Alfred was born in 848, the youngest child of Æthelwulf and Osburga; but he outlived his brothers, and became king of Wessex A.D. 871. He died A.D. 901. Students using this book will have read

some outlines of his public life in the Chronicles; but the whole story of his brilliant youth, and his suffering and struggling manhood, with all its romantic adventures, should be made familiar. He is often called Alfred the Great; the traditions of the Saxons call him The Wise, The Truth-teller, England's Shepherd, England's Darling. He was a good king, master of the arts of war and peace; a strong fighter, and an inventor of battle-ships; a statesman, a giver and codifier of laws; an educator and founder of schools; a philosopher, historian, and bard. Well he loved God's men and God's Word. He loved men of learning, and brought them about him from far countries. He loved his people, their land, and speech, and old ballads, and Bible songs; and he was the preserver of the literature and language, as well as the liberties and laws of the Anglo-Saxons.

The book of his laws begins with a history of law, gives an outline of the laws of Moses, and states the relation of them to Christ, the apostles, and Christian nations. He concludes: "I, then, Alfred, king, gathered these together, and commanded many of those to be written which our forefathers held, those which to me seemed good; and many of those which to me seemed not good, I rejected them by the counsel of my *witan*, and in other wise commanded them to be holden, for I durst not venture to set in writing much of my own, for it was unknown to me what of it would suit those who should be after us. But those which I met, either of Ine's day, my kinsman, or Æthelbirht's, who first received baptism among the English race, which seemed to me rihtest, I have here gathered, and rejected the others. I, then, Alfred, king of the West-Saxons, shewed these to all my *witan*, and they then said that it seemed good to them all to keep them." The introduction in Schmid takes up pp. 58-68, the following laws pp. 68-105. For Alfred's other works, see notes on pages 23, 38, 46, 64.

PAGE 43, line 18.—*mon*=*man*, §§ 23, 35, 2, a. 29.—*frut*, a privilege of granting protection.—*fāhmon*, one exposed to *fāhd*, the deadly feud allowed by the laws, a right of the kinsmen to whom the wergild was due to kill a murderer, adulterer, and certain other offenders, and such of their kindred as were responsible for the wergild.—*ge-ærne* and *ge-yrne* are variations of the same word; one was probably originally a gloss. 31.—For any of those offenses which was not before disclosed: *pārā þe* together is used like a nominative singular, a common idiom, the *pārā* being a repeated partitive. 33.—*Sunnan niht*, Sunday, Lat. *dies Solis*; compare fort-night, seven-night, and see note on line 34.—*Geöl* (sun-wheel), Yule, was a great pagan festival at the beginning of the year, the winter solstice, afterward confounded with Christmas.—*Eāstre* was a heathen goddess. April was named *Eāster-mōnad*, because feasts were then celebrated in honor of her (Béd., De Temp., 13). The name is akin to *east*, Lat. *aurora*, the dawn. The festival commemorating the resurrection of Christ has in Anglo-Saxon and German received this name, but other kindred nations use *pascha*. 34.—*þurres dæg* is a translation of Latin *dies Jovis*. The astrological week was allotted to the planets by hours in the received order of their orbits; the first hour to

"the widest orbit and the highest power," Saturn, the second to Jupiter, the third to Mars, the fourth to the Sun, the fifth to Venus, the sixth to Mercury, the seventh to the Moon, the eighth to Saturn again, and so on through the week. Each day was named from the planet of its first hour. Hence the order of the Latin names—*dies Saturni, dies Solis, Luna, Martis, Mercurii, Jovis, Veneris* (Dion Cassius, xxxvii., 18). The first use of any of these names by Roman writers is in the time of Julius Cæsar, *dies Saturni* for the Jewish Sabbath (Tibul., i., 3, 18), probably from associations with the Saturnalia as a time of rest. This first became common; the names of the other days gradually came in: all were in use at the end of the second century, and the week was finally established, in place of the old nine-day period, by Constantine. It spread from Rome over the North in advance of Christianity. The greatest of the gods of the North, the father and ruler of gods and men, is *Wôden*, Norse *Odin*, and we should have expected him to take Jupiter's day; but the early Romans did not recognize their Jupiter in any of the Germanic gods, and identified Woden with Mercury, whom indeed he does resemble in his tricks, his care of traders, and some other traits and offices (Tacitus, Germ., 9; Annal., 13, 57; compare Cæsar, 6, 17). So *dies Mercurii* was called *Wôdenes dæg*, Wednesday; and Jupiter's day was given to *þuner*, Norse *Thór*. He is the son of Odin and the Earth, the strongest of the gods, the enemy of the giants, the friend of man. He has three treasures—his hammer, his belt of power, which doubles his strength, and his iron gloves. His eyes flame, his hair is red as the lightning; when he drives by with his two he-goats, the mountains tremble. He is a very fair Jupiter as thus described in Norse. The Anglo-Saxons have left no mythological matter. Holy Thursday is the day on which Christ's ascension is commemorated, ten days before Whitsuntide, which is the seventh Sunday after Easter. Three days before were procession days, *Gang-dagás*. 35.—*Lencten* is spring, when the days *lengthen*. It began with the great festival of Odin. It has given name to the Church *Lent*.

PAGE 44, line 3.—*geselle*, let (the master) pay. 7.—*folc-leásung* Thorpe explains as a false report leading to breach of the peace, Schmid as a false accusation of crime, an offense which is visited with this penalty in Henry I., 34, 7. The tongue could be compounded for in this case as in others by a third of the wergild. 11.—*tpéntig*, undeclined, for *tpéntigum*; so *þritig*, *sixtig*, afterwards. 13.—*homola*, see vocabulary.

ЕССВУНТ was archbishop of York, 735–766. He was one of Bede's friends. He wrote much, and formed a library at York. His Confessionale and Pœnitentiale are translations from similar Latin works, in great part from the Pœnitentiale of Theodore, archbishop of Canterbury, 668–690, give rules relating to confession and penance, and were standard guides in the Church. No known manuscript has them in their original Northumbrian. They are in Thorpe's Laws, pp. 128–239. The extracts here made are in Rieger's Lesebuch.

PAGE 44, line 18.—*medmycles hþæt-hþega*, somewhat of small value, in

*minimis*, Theodore. 19.—*geâr* = *pinter*. 21.—*lifigendum mannum to hæle and on his hûse*, for health to living men and (health) in his house, *pro sanitate riventium et domus*, Theodore. 23.—*pîf* . . . *heô*, repeated subject, § 288, *b*. This fever-cure is several times mentioned in the old laws. Sometimes the child was put in the oven, sometimes over a furnace, or on the roof in the sun. The burning away of dross and disease is a natural thought, and gives rise to superstitions all over the world. So Thetis buried the infant Achilles nightly in the fire, and Demeter the child of Demophoon. Its repute for *fever* suggests homœopathy. 28.—*nê* . . . , nor (is it permitted that he practise) the gathering of herbs. 34.—*staca*, n., commonly *stake*, is here for Latin *acus*, needle. The making of an image of a person with magic spells, and affecting the person by treating the image, drowning, hanging, melting, piercing it with a needle, etc., is an ancient and wide-spread form of magic art:

Sagave Punicea defixit nomina cera,  
Et medium tennes in jecur egit acus?

(Ovid, *Amor.*, iii., 7, 29. Compare Horace, *Epod.*, 17, 76). For northern examples of needle-piercing, see Thorpe's *Northern Mythology*, 3, 24, 240; Grimm, *Myth.*, 1045.

PAGE 45, line 4.—*sylle*, give (any thing) to him. 6.—*Woden's day*, *Frige's day*, see note on page 43, line 34. *Frige dæg*, Friday, is intended to be a translation of Latin *dies Veneris*, the day of the goddess of love. There are, however, two northern goddesses, who seem to have been confounded. Norse *Frigg* < *fria*, O. H. G. *Frija*, A.-S. *frig*, *fri* > free; and Norse *Freyja*, akin to Goth. *frauja*, O. H. G. *frô*, A.-S. *frêd* > frau, mistress. The former is Woden's wife, and the goddess of marriage; the latter is the wife of a man, the goddess of beauty and love, Venus, but the name of the day phonetically agrees best with *Frigg*. 10.—*gescafte*, at any other object, *ubique*, Theodore. 13.—*bûton*, except. 15.—*þæs yleán*, of the same penance. 16.—The meeting of roads is a well-known place for raising the devil: there idlers congregate. Drawing through the earth, through a hole, or along in a trench scooped for the purpose, is condemned as devil's craft in Edgar's *Canons*, XVI. Drawing through hollow stones, trees, and bramble bushes was practised with the same thought of scraping away magical bad influences, or sometimes apparently of magnetizing with good influences (Grimm, *Myth.*, 1118).

PAGE 45. Chut, king of Denmark, was crowned king of England A.D. 1017. See the *Chronicle*, 1014–1035. He made vigorous and wise efforts to unite the Danes and Anglo-Saxons under a common government. He called assemblies of their representatives, and with their advice reissued a large body of laws, both civil and ecclesiastical. In Schmid they occupy pp. 250–321. He died A.D. 1035.

Line 27.—*morgen-gyfe*, a gift from the husband to the wife on the morning after marriage. It was hers after his death. 29.—*hádige*, consecrate as a member of a religious order.

PAGE 46.—ORPHEUS. This is an extract from Boethius, *De Consolatione Philosophiæ*, chap. 35, § 6, of Alfred's translation. The life of Boethius may be read in the Classical Dictionaries. The Latin of this work is printed in Valpy's Delphin edition of the Latin Classics. It opens with the complaints of Boethius; Philosophy appears, and converses with him. She persuades him that blessedness is not in riches, power, honors, glory, or fame, but that adversity often leads to it. The Supreme Good is to be found in the Deity alone. She illustrates these views, and answers objections at length. Meter and prose alternate. This work was far more read and cherished in the Middle Ages than the classic authors of pagan times. It came home to their experiences, while Homer and Virgil, with their lying myths and barbaric tales, were as remote and unreal as the Veda and *Sacuntala* are to us. Alfred recast it, and introduced much new matter, especially Christian precepts and allusions, which are wholly absent from the original. The extract here given is written on the suggestion of Book III., Metrum 12. The story is much enlarged, and has little verbal resemblance to the Latin. Two manuscripts have been used in preparing editions, one of them thought by Wanley to be of Alfred's age. We have editions by Rawlinson, 1698; Cardale, 1829; Fox, in Bohn's library, 1864. The extract here given is in Thorpe's *Analecta*, Ettmüller's *Scôpas* and *Bôceras*, and elsewhere.

PAGE 46, line 1.—"The clear well-spring of the highest good" is God: this is the language of *Philosophia* to Boethius in Latin verse. 20.—When to the harper then it seemed, that it pleased him of nothing (=he was pleased with nothing) in this world, then thought he, *hâ hâ* . . . *hâ*, correlative, so line 23, page 47, 16, § 472, 3; *puhte*, § 297; *lyste hine þinges*, §§ 290, c; 315, c. 23.—*sceold*, should (according to the story). 25.—*ongan*, he began; change of mode in lively narrative. 30.—*brohte*, subj., would bring, §§ 423, 425, c. 31.—*oflyst*, much pleased with; compare *lyste*, line 21, § 315, 1.

PAGE 47, line 2.—*hâ, who*, they say, (that *they*) know no respect for any man, but punish each man according to his works,—*who*, they say, (that *they*) control each other's fate: a repeated subject implied, § 288, b. 11.—*hæs* (*hære*?), takes the gender of *yfel*? 22.—*hpæt*, interj. 24.—*beseah he hine*, he looked around him backwards after the woman, § 359, III. 33.—*gebête*, make *bôt*, do penance for it again. Compare *gebête* in the Laws, page 41, 2, and after.

CÆDMON.—From Alfred's translation of Beda's *Ecclesiastical History of the Angles and Saxons*, Book IV., 24. See notes on Paulinus, page 38, and to Cædmon, page 52.

PAGE 47, line 34.—St. Hild was abbess of Whitby, and died A.D. 680. Beda was born in 673 in the same region, and must have known about Cædmon, may have seen him. 35.—*mid* . . ., by divine grace singularly magnified and dignified, since he was wont to make appropriate poems, which conduced to religion and piety.

PAGE 48.—*geglenclde* agrees with *sccôpggercorde*.—*imbrydnesse* renders

*compunctiōe*, stimulation to pious feeling, feeling; so Cuthbert speaks of Beda's repeating verses, *multum compunctus*, much touched, with deep feeling. 11.—*ac efne*, but even. 12.—*þā ān*, those alone, *þā þe*, which.—*his þā* . . ., which it became his (the) pious tongue to sing, § 489, *gedafenōde* governs a dative generally in West Saxon, § 299, but *mec gedæfued*, North., Luc., iv. 43. 15.—*gebeōrscipe*, by etymology, a social beer-drinking, is applied to any convivial, like Gr. *συμπόσιον*, *sym-posium*. Here the Latin is *convivium*; *symble*, line 18, is *cana*. For German beer-drinking, see Tacitus, Germ., 22, 23.—*þonne þær pæs gedēmed*, when it was decided for pleasure, § 397. 20–23.—*þā þā* . . . *þā*, when . . . then.—*þæt* . . . *þæt*, § 468.—33. Only the substance of the verses in Latin is given in Beda. It has been questioned whether Alfred rendered the Latin back or supplied the original verses. The latter is most probable. An older copy has been found added in a Latin Beda supposed to be of the 8th or 9th century. The forms resemble the earliest Anglo-Saxon Northumbrian which we have :

*Nu scylun hergan hefaenricas ward,  
metudæs maecti end his modgidanc,  
uere uuldurfadur; sue he uundra gihwæes,  
eeti dryctin, or astelidæ.  
He ærist scop aelda barnum  
heben til hrofe, haleg scepen :  
þa middungeard moncynnæs wærd,  
eeti dryctin, æfter tiadæ,  
firum fold, frea allmeectig.*

Now we-shall (should) laud heaven-realm's Ward (guardian),  
the-Creator's might and his thought,  
the-works-of-the-glorious-Father : how he, of wonders all,  
eternal Lord, the beginning established.  
He first shaped for men's children  
heaven as a roof, holy Shaper (creator),  
then mid-earth mankind's Ward,  
eternal Lord, afterward created,  
for men a world, Master almighty.

This text is from Smith's Beda, p. 597; that on page 48 is from Thorpe, *Analecta*, p. 105, adopted on the supposition that he has corrected from some manuscript the readings given by Wheloe and Smith. 35.—*perā* is a change from *peore*, the reading of more manuscripts, *facta patris glorie*, Beda.—*punderā*, partitive after *gehpæs*.—*gehpæs*, governed by *ord*. 36.—*Dryhtin*, appositive with *hē*. 38–41.—*Scyppend*, appositive with *hē*.—*Dryhten*, *Freā*, appositive with *peard*. The Northumbrian variations are mostly orthographic, §§ 26, 31. The vowel quantities are like those marked in the other text.

PAGE 49, line 3.—*Godē pyrdes songes*, words of song worthy of God, *Deo digni*, *pyrde* usually takes a genitive, here an instrumental in analogy with the Latin ablative of price so-called, §§ 320, 302, c. 4.—*ealdorman*, governor

(law term)=*qui sibi pre-erat*. 9.—*gecoren pære*, it might be decided. 10.—*pæs geseþen*, it appeared, *videtur, visum est*. 13.—That he would sing something for them, and would convert that, etc.—*sum sunge* and is not in some texts; Beda reads *hunc in modulationem carminis transferre*. 14.—*pá pisan*, undertaken the matter. 15.—*geglenged* describes *pæt him beboden pæs*. 27.—*be*, of, with dative of theme, § 334.

PAGE 50, line 2.—*betýnde and geendóde*, emphatic tautology for *conclusit*; so in the next line Beda has only *discessus* for *geþitnesse and fordfore*; and so elsewhere, repetition for emphasis and perspicuity is Anglo-Saxon. 3.—*neálæhte*, impersonal. 4.—*ær*, before (his death), *pæt*, (in this condition, namely) that, etc., conjunction: then he was fourteen days before, that he was oppressed = then there were fourteen days, etc. 25.—*míne pá leófan*, § 289, *a*. 31.—*þon* = *þam*, § 133. 32.—*him gebæd*, prayed for himself, § 298, *c*: a frequent idiom—he offered his prayers. Alfred has added these two words. 35, 36.—*pætte . . . pæt*, repeated *that*.—*eác spilce*, also. 39.—*heô há*, it then, repeated subject, § 288, *b*. 40.—*séniende*, he signing himself, nominative absolute, § 295; really an imitation of the Latin *gerund signando sese*, rather than a native idiom.

#### ANGLO-SAXON PROSE.

Specimens of Anglo-Saxon prose have now been given, arranged for ease of reading. We have remaining—

(1.) THEOLOGICAL writings.—Translations of the Bible (see pages 1-12, and notes); Homilies, page 35, and notes.

(2.) PHILOSOPHY.—Boethius, page 46, and notes.

(3.) HISTORY.—The Chronicle, page 23, and notes. Beda's Ecclesiastical History: see Paulinus, page 38, and Cædmon, page 47. Orosius, a general history of the ancient world, translated by Alfred, with additions of considerable geographical and ethnological value; repeatedly printed. Thorpe's edition, with translation and glossary, 1857, is in Bohn's Library. Many brief BIOGRAPHIES are contained in Beda and the Homilies, of which Cædmon, page 47, and Gregory, page 35, are examples. Some separate lives have been found; that of St. Guthlác has been several times printed. Goodwin, 1848.

(4.) LAW.—Pages 41-45, and notes.

(5.) NATURAL SCIENCE and MEDICINE.—Popular Treatises of Science, pp. 19, are Anglo-Saxon, Thorpe, 1841. Leechdoms, 3 vols., O. Cockayne, 1864-66.

(6.) GRAMMAR.—Ælfric, in Somner's Dictionary, 1659. Colloquy, 12-22, and notes. A few Glossaries, Wright, 1857.

#### ANGLO-SAXON POETRY.

[For the Anglo-Saxon versification, see §§ 496-515.]

We learn from the story of Cædmon how universal the knowledge of popular poetry was among the Anglo-Saxons. It was such a disgrace not

to be able to chant in turn at feasts that Cædmon left in shame as his turn approached. Most of the poetry has perished. The early Anglo-Saxon Christians condemned whatever was mixed with idolatry, and the Normans despised or neglected all Saxon literature. But enough remains to enable us to judge pretty well of the nature of their poetry. We have—

(1.) **THE BALLAD EPIC.** Here, as in Greek and most other tongues, the heroic ballads of the race were brought together, exalted and beautified, and fused into long poems. *Beowulf* (3184 lines), and a few fragments, are left from this great world of poetry, to be compared with the Homeric poems.

(2.) **THE BIBLE EPIC** is a treatment of the Bible narrative, similar in exaltation and other epic traits to the ballad epic. The origin and something of the history of this style of composition has been read in this book in Cædmon, pages 47–50. We have remaining under the name of Cædmon four poems, called by Grein *Genesis* (2935 lines), *Exodus* (589 lines), *Daniel* (765 lines), *Christ and Satan* (733 lines). We have also a fragment of *Judith* (350 lines), *Cynewulf's Christ* (1694 lines), *The Harrowing of Hell* (137 lines), and some fragments. These poems are to be compared with the *Paradise Lost* and *Paradise Regained* of Milton, and the *Christ in Hades* of Lord.

(3.) **ECCLESIASTICAL NARRATIVES.** The lives of Saints, versified *Chronicles*. Of these we have *Andreas* (1724 lines), *Juliana* (731 lines), *Guthlac* (1353 lines), *Elene* (1321 lines).

(4.) **PSALMS AND HYMNS.** Translations of a large part of the Hebrew Psalms, and a few Christian hymns and prayers.

(5.) **SECULAR LYRICS.** A few from the *Chronicle* celebrating the heroes, and others mostly elegiac, of which those on pages 68–69 are a specimen.

(6.) **ALLEGORIES, GNOMES, AND RIDDLES.** The *Phoenix*, a translation from Lactantius, expanded (677 lines); *The Panther* (74 lines); *The Whale* (89 lines); *Gnomic verses*, some in dialogue between Solomon and Saturn (Grein, ii., pages 339–368); *Riddles* (Grein, ii., pages 369–407). Pages 66–67 are specimens.

(7.) **DIDACTIC ETHICAL.** Alfred's *Meters of Boethius* (Grein, ii., pages 295–339). Pages 64–65 are specimens. Some of the Allegories, and other pieces classed under the sixth head, have a didactic purpose in natural science.

PAGE 51. **THE TRAVELER** is one of the most ancient Anglo-Saxon poems. A poet tells through what countries he has traveled and whom he has seen. It is little more than a sounding roll of names, with epithets and the briefest incidents, like the catalogues in Homer and Milton. Names enough are identified to give it reality. The lines here quoted are the last.

A single copy remains in the *Codex Exoniensis*. This was presented by Leofric, bishop of Exeter (A.D. 1046), to the library of his cathedral. It was edited by Thorpe for the Society of Antiquaries of London (1842), with an English translation, notes, and indexes. The text and translation make 500 pages.



Line 1. So roving in their destinies wander  
gleemen of men through many lands,  
their need tell, thank-words speak,  
always south or north some one *they* meet  
in songs clever, in gifts unsparing,  
who before man wishes honor to rear,  
(nobleness) earlship to gain, till that all departs,  
light and life together: praise whoever winneth,  
has under heavens high-fast (immutable) honor.

BEOWULF, see page 56.

Line 9. The hero Beowulf has slain a monster. This is part of the celebration.

At times a king's thane,  
a man glory-laden, of songs mindfull,  
who full-many of old sagas,  
very-many remembered, other words found  
rightly connected. *This* hero again began  
the feat of Beowulf with craft to recite,  
and artfully to utter sentences cunning,  
with words to exchange (thoughts).

10.—*gilp-hlæden*, defiance laden, having passed through many battles. 12.—*porn* adds emphasis to *eal-fela*. 13.—*sôte*, according to the laws of verse. 15.—*geråde*, exact in meter. 16.—To narrate. 16.—*þær*, in the great hall Heorot, see page 57. 18.—*sægde*, (he) said, *se þe*, who.—*cpæd*, repetition of *sægde*. 21.—*spá*, which.

PAGE 52. CÆDMON'S GENESIS. For Cædmon, see page 47–51, and the notes. Only one copy of these poems has survived in old manuscript. It was apparently written in the tenth century, the last seventeen pages in a different hand from the rest (212). All that is known of it is that it belonged to Archbishop Usher, who gave it to Junius, who printed it at Amsterdam in 1655, and who bequeathed it to the Bodleian Library. It is illuminated. A careful edition, with a translation, notes, and verbal index, was edited by Thorpe for the Society of Antiquaries of London, 1832. The illuminations were published in 1833. It has since been much studied in Germany, and many valuable articles upon it have been published. Grein's critical edition and translation, Bouterwek's copious Essays in his edition (1849–1854), and Dietrich's criticisms in Haupt's Zeitschrift, deserve special attention.

There is nothing but internal evidence to show that these poems are really those described as Cædmon's by Bede, and scholars have differed about it. It seems likely that they are from his original, but changed by free rewriting in a different dialect after the lapse of three or four centuries.

Those who do not know what liberties were taken by the early copyists and bards, may compare with the four first lines of Cædmon in Bede, page 48 and note, the following opening in the manuscript of Junius.

G

*Ūs is riht micel    þæt þē roderā pearð  
 peredā puldorcming    pordum herigen,  
 mōdum lufien:    hē is mægnā spēð,  
 heāfod ealrā    heāhgesceaftā,  
 frēa ælmihtig.    Næs him fruma æfre  
 ðr geporden,    ne nu ende cymd  
 êcean drihtnes.*

For us it is a great duty    that we heavens' Ward,  
 men's Glory-king    with words laud,  
 with minds love:    he is of might the fullness,  
 head of all    high creations,  
 Lord almighty.    There has not to him beginning ever,  
 origin been,    nor will now end come  
 of the eternal Lord.

Cædmon has been called the Anglo-Saxon Milton. The extracts here given will indicate on what ground.

PAGE 52. GENESIS. The opening of this book has been given above. It goes on with the story of man's first disobedience and his fall, beginning with the fallen angels. The description of Satan, *gelic þām leohtum steorrum*, like the bright stars; his first speech as here given; some striking expressions in the description of his fall, of hell, heaven, of Adam and Eve, strongly suggest that Milton borrowed from Cædmon; but it is most likely that these resemblances arise from their drawing from the same sources—from the Bible most; in demonology and the lore of angels from Gregory the Great. A large part of Cædmon's Genesis is occupied with the story of Abraham.

Line 1.—*pæs geporden*, had been.—*þā giet*, as yet: there had not here as yet, except gloom-of-shadow, aught been. 6.—*geseah*, (he) saw dark obscurity brood in perpetual night swart under heavens, wan and waste, till that this world-creation through the word existed of the king of glory. 11.—*helm*, (helmet) protector of all things, appositive with *Drihten*. 14.—*Frēa*, repeated subject, or appositive like *helm*. 15.—*gāras*, instrumental accus., § 295, *b*. 17.—*ponne pēgās*, appositive with *gārsceg*. 20.—*lifes Brytta*, appositive with *metod*. 29.—*gesceaft*, appositive with *leoht*. 31–32.—The coming on of the first night. 34.—*ford*, henceforth. 35.—*gýman*, (who should) govern the abyss.—*pæs*, (he) was.

PAGE 53, line 6. Compare Paradise Lost, 1, 75. 10.—*þeāh . . .*, though we it for the All-powerful must not own, (must not) possess our realms. 11.—*næft*=*ne hæft*, he has not. 13.—*benumen*, p. p. (in that he bath) deprived (us) of heaven-realm, § 301. 18.—*him*, expletive reflexive: shall be to himself in pleasure, § 298, *c*. 19.—*āhte*, subj., expressing a wish, § 421, *d*. 20.—and might I one hour out be be one winter hour. 21.—broken sentence. 28.—*habbað ámyrred* governs accusative *mē* and genitive *sides*, § 317, *a*.—*sál* appositive with *gespong*. 32.—*mið pihte*, in any way, *mæg of*, may (escape) from, § 436. 37.—and (I know) that the Lord of hosts also knew that (there) should to us, (me and) Adam.

evils occur in that heaven-realm, if I had the use of my hands; *unc Adame* § 287, g, . . . *pær*, if, § 475.

PAGE 54. *EXODUS* has been pronounced by some a lyric in honor of Moses. It has not the rapid narrative movement of an epic, but dilates imaginatively on a few scenes. It has the usual formal opening:

*Hpæt! pē feor and neāh      gefrigen habbað  
ofer middangeard      Moyses dōmās.*

What! we far and near      have heard  
over middle-earth      Moses' laws.

It has been generally considered one of the grandest and most characteristic poems of early Teutonic literature. It is characteristic of a certain class of writing; but it should not be forgotten that if we have an Anglo-Saxon Milton we also have an Anglo-Saxon Homer.

PAGE 54, line 1.—*Nearpe* . . ., Straitly *they* (the Israelites marching from Egypt) struggled-forward on the northways, they knew to them on the south the Sunfolks' (Ethiopian) land. 2.—*piston land*, knew the land; knew that the land lay. 4.—*heofon-colum*, instrumental after *brāne*. 5.—*fær-bryne*, fearful burning (of the sun). 5.—*bælcē*, Ger. *gebälk*, canopy, the so-called "pillar of cloud." 7.—*nettē*, repetition of *bælcē*. 8.—*peder-polcen*, Ger. *wetterwolke* (weather-welkin), storm-cloud, is the "pillar of cloud." 10.—*lig-fȳr, hāte heofontorht*, describes the sun; *hāte*, definite form, epic epithet, § 362, 1; others read it as an instrumental of *hāt*, heat. 12.—*drihtā gedrȳmōst*, gladdest of throngs, appositive with *Hæled*. 13.—*Dæg-scealdes*, trope for sun, *hleō dæg-scealdes*, the "pillar of cloud." 15.—*spā*, although. 18.—*māest*, the greatest of tents. 19.—*on sālum*, in safe places, in safety. 20.—*Heofon-beācen*, the "pillar of fire." 22.—*syllīc* agrees with beam; Strange after sun's set took care over the people with flame to shine a burning pillar. 27.—*neōple* . . ., deepest night-shadows not enough might lurking-places hide; *i. e.*, Midnight was not dark enough to hide them, the pillar was so bright. 30.—*hȳ lars* . . ., lest to them by the horrors-of-the-waste the hoar heath with raging storms ever with sudden peril their minds might distract. 35.—*hātān*, weak instrumental, epic epithet, § 362, 1.

PAGE 55, line 2.—*hȳrde*, subj. imperf. for *hȳrden*, § 170. 5.—*segn*, the pillar of fire. 10-11.—*flotan brēddon*, the sailors spread (with) tents over the mountains. 13.—Then to them (=the warriors) the warriors' mind became despondent. 20.—*on hpæl*, in circuit, round them; Grein suggests another *hpæl*, akin to *hpelan*, to clang, Dan. *hvael*, a shriek; *on hpæl*, with clangor. 25.—*deōr*, appositive with *pulfās*; *cpyldrōf* . . ., ravenous to demand on enemies' track the host's slaughter. 27.—*marc-peardās* are the wolves. 32.—*þengel*, appositive with *sige-cȳning*, the king of Egypt. 38.—*land-mannā*, the Egyptians.

*BEOWULF* has been found in only one manuscript, thought to be of the tenth century. Its existence is mentioned first in Wanley's Catalogue, 1705;

but little notice of it was taken till 1786, when two copies were made for Thorkelin, a Dane, by whom an edition was published in 1815. The manuscript had been badly injured by fire in 1731, and has had hard usage since. Since the revival of Anglo-Saxon scholarship under the impulse of Grimm, the interest in Beowulf has risen to a great height, and many editions, translations, and essays of elucidation and interpretation have appeared in England, Germany, and Denmark. Among others, Kemble, 1833-1837; Ettmüller, translation, 1840; Thorpe, 1855; Grein, two editions, 1857, 1867; Gruntvig, 1861; Heyne, two editions, 1863, 1868. The poem celebrates the exploits of Beowulf. We learn from it that he was the son of a sister of Hygelâc, king of the Geâts (Goths), and Ecgtheôw, one of the royal family of the Danes, and that after the death of Hygelâc and his son he succeeded to the throne of the Goths. The exploits here celebrated are combats with monsters, after the manner of Hercules. The tendency at first was to regard Beowulf as one of the gods, and the whole poem as mythology; but it now seems clear that Beowulf was a real prince, and that a body of fact lies under the fables. The time is the beginning of the sixth century. See the note on Hygelâc, page 58, line 30. The place is the island of Seeland (Zealand, the seat of Copenhagen) and the opposite Gothland. An attempt has, however, been made to locate it in England by Haigh, and very remarkable coincidences of names and distances are pointed out in favor of that theory.

PAGE 56, line 3.—*Gâr-Denâ*, the *Dene* (Danes) appear in Beowulf as the subjects of Seyld and his descendants, as living “in *Scedelandum*,” “on *Scedenigge*,” “by two seas,” as we suppose, in Denmark. Their epithets are *Gâr-Dene*, Spear-Danes, *Hring-Dene*, Mailed-Danes, *Beorht-Dene*, Bright-Danes. They are divided into East, West, North, and South Danes. 6.—*Seyld*, the son of *Scêf*, was drifted to Denmark, an infant alone in a boat; he there established a royal family; at his death was again committed to the sea in a boat, and departed, as he came, into the unknown. Such was the founding of the royal line of *Hrothgar*. *Scêf* is referred to in Anglo-Saxon poetry only in line 4 of Beowulf. He is identified by Grein with *Secáfa*, mentioned in the *Traveler* (see note on page 51) as king of the Longo-bards. He is probably also the *Secáf* in the pedigree of Æthelwulf, Alfred's father, inaccurately described as the son of Noah, born in the ark, Chr., 855. 7.—*mægdum*, appositive, *afteáh*, elsewhere, as here, sometimes governs the dative of the person and genitive of the object of separation, §§ 298, 317. 8.—The earl inspired terror, after he first had been found deserted. Kings are called earls as being of the same noble stock. 9.—He experienced solace for *that*, i. e. his desertion. § 315. 14.—*Him*, reflexive expletive, § 298, c.—*gepát fćran*, § 448, 4. 18.—*wordum weôld*, ruled with words; perhaps should read *word-onweald áhte*, had word-sway.—*Scyldingá*, the descendants of Seyld; (2) the people ruled by them. 26.—*gegyrpan*, infinitive, to equip a ship, i. e. of equipping, § 449, a. 31.—*less-an* = *-um*.

PAGE 57, line 6.—*sele-rædende*, hall possessors, appositive with *men*; so *hæled*. 7.—*onfeng*, with dative, § 299. 8.—*Hrôthgâr*, son of *Healfdene*,

is the king of the Danes for whose relief occurred the exploits of Beowulf here sung. His wife is *Wealththeow*. See *Scyld*, page 56, line 6. 11.—*mago-driht*, appositive with *geógod*, the band of youth, the squires. 13.—*medo-ærn*, repetition of *heal-reced*; *men*, accusative, subject of *gepyrcean*. 14.—*þone* for *þonne*, (greater) than the children of the age (men) ever heard of. 15.—(*polde*) *gedælan*. 17.—All, except the public lands and the lives of the people. 20.—*gelomp*, it happened. 22.—*Heort*, *Heorot*, i. e. hart, is found by Grein in the Danish *Hjort-holm*, a town in Zealand, about two miles from the sea. Near by is *Sial* lake, answering to Grendel's lake. At the right distance on the opposite coast of the main-land for Beowulf's grave, he finds the ruined castle of *Bø-hûs*. See note on *Hygelâc*, page 58, line 30. 24.—*beôt ne âlc̃h*, did not belie his promise, *âlc̃h* < *âl̃eôgan*. Here follows the passage quoted on page 51. 30.—*Grendel* was a monster of the moors, of the race of Cain. He broke into Heorot every night and carried off thirty warriors. This lasted twelve years. Then came Beowulf, fought him, wrenched his arm off. He escaped to his lair, and died. Beowulf pursued his mother to the place, killed her; found his body, cut off his head, and bore it to Hrothgar.

PAGE 58, line 1.—*Metod*, repeated subject of *forpræc*. 5.—*him*, plur. dat., indirect object. § 297; *þæs*, genitive of crime, § 320, d. 6.—*ncosian hûses*, examine the 'house, § 315, 111. 7.—How the Mailed-Danes had inhabited it (the house)=how they had disposed themselves to sleep. 21.—So (Grendel) ruled. 26.—*forþam* . . ., therefore afterward was it to the children of men plainly known, by songs sadly (known), that Grendel warred long against Hrothgar. 30.—*þæt*, it, Grendel's deeds, *dædā* appositive with *þæt*, § 374, 2. Higelac's thane is Beowulf. Higelac (*Hygelâc*) appears in Beowulf as reigning king of the Geāten (Goths). The seat of his kingdom was in the Swedish Gothland, near the River Gotha, and nearly opposite the Danish *Hjort-holm*. Several of his kindred, and two successive wives, are mentioned in Beowulf, and that he fell in an expedition against the Franks, Friesians, and *Hūgen*. This seems to identify him with a Gothic king, Chocilagus, mentioned by Gregory of Tours, and the Gesta Regum Francorum, as having so adventured and died, A.D. 511; and in a tenth century tradition of the same event described as *Huiclaucus*, king of the *Geti*. 33.—In the day of this life—at that time, then.

PAGE 59, line 1.—*se gōda*, used substantively. 3.—*fiſtēnā sum*, one of fifteen, with a party of fifteen, § 388. 12.—*puđu bundenne*, perhaps originally a raft, a ship. 17.—*þæt*, so far that. 20.—*eoletes* (bay < *eolh*? sea?) has not been clearly made out, *eā-lāda*, watery way, Thorpe; *eā-let*, water-stay, time on the voyage, Leo, Heyne; *eolet*, hastening, rapid voyage, Ett., Grein. Compare the puzzling *sioleſta*, found once only (Beowulf, 2367), meaning bay, core, or sea. 25.—*geseah beran*, saw (persons) bear, § 449, a. 29.—*hpæt*, § 377. 30.—*gepāt ridan*, § 448, 4; *gepāt him*, § 298, c. 35.—*lædan epōmon*, § 448, 4. 36.—The second section of the line is gone in the manuscript: *helmās bēron*, Ett., Heyne; *hýde sēcean*, Grein. Com-

pare the answer to this question, page 60, line 25, *We through kind feeling* come to seek thy lord.

PAGE 60, line 1.—*cūdlícōr*, more openly, with franker courtesy. 2.—Nor have ye words-of-permission of warriors completely known, the assent of men—but yet ye do not know surely whether ye can obtain permission from us warriors. 26.—*lārenā gōd*, good in respect of instructions, *i. e.* kindly direct us.

PAGE 61, line 4.—*se rīca*, Hrothgar. 16.—*cynnā*, fitting things, manners, courtesies. 17.—*gold-hroden*, Wealhtheow. 20.—*bæd hine blidne* bade him blithe, ellipsis of *pesan*, to be, making a factitive like *wish him well*. Compare *bade him harl*, page 62, line 13. 21.—*leōfne*, appositive with *hine*. 23.—*Helmingās*, the race of Helm. He is mentioned in the Traveler as ruling the Wulfings. Wealh-theow was of this race. 28.—*þancōde*, with dative *Gode* and genitive *þæs*, § 297, *d.*

PAGE 62, line 17.—*gamela*, weak form, epic epithet, § 362, 1. 18.—*rand-pīgan*, appositive with *Gcāt*, Beowulf. 27.—*cōman . . . scacan*: for this text of Grein's first edition his last has *þā com beorht leōma scacan ofer scadu*.—The manuscript is illegible: *þā com beorht scacan*, is one of the early copies; then came the bright light to beam over the shadows. 30.—*þyle Hrōdgāres*, the court officer who directed the conversation, the orator. His name was *Hūnferd*. He had boasted much over the wine, but did not venture to meet Grendel. He lent Beowulf his famous sword *Hrunting* for the conflict with Grendel's mother.

PAGE 63, line 3.—*se eorl*, Beowulf. He has followed the mother of Grendel deep into the water, and comes up in a cave, her hall. Then the earl found that he in hostile hall, he knew not what, was. 36.—The blood of the monster melts the blade, Beowulf presents the hilt to *Hrōdgār*.

PAGE 64, line 5.—*him*, to them the lord paid; *þæs*, therefore.

ALFRED'S METERS are versifications of parts of Boethius. They were found in one manuscript, transcribed by Junius, but since lost. Editions are by Rawlinson, 1698; Fox, 1835; Grein, 1858. See farther in the notes to Orpheus, page 46.

Line 12.—This introduction is not by Alfred. Thus Alfred to us old-lore rehearsed king of the West Saxons, skill displayed, the poets' art.

Line 17.—Meter VI. is from Book II.. Metrum III., of Boethius, which is given for comparison. The two first lines are Alfred's introduction.

Cum polo Phæbus roseis quadrigis

Lucem spargere cœperit,

Pallet albentes hebetata vultus

Flammis stella prementibus.

Cum nemus flatu Zephyri tepentis

Vernis irrubuit rosis,

Spiret insanum nebulosus Auster,

Jam spinis abeat decus.

Sæpe tranquillo radiat sereno  
 Immotis mare fluctibus :  
 Sæpe ferventes Aquilo procellas  
 Verso concitat æquore.  
 Rara si constat sua forma mundo  
 Si tantas variat vices,  
 Crede fortunis hominum caducis,  
 Bonis crede fugacibus.  
 Constat, æterna positumque lege est,  
 Ut constet genitum nihil.

PAGE 65. METER X. is founded on the 7th meter of Book II. The first 25 lines are expanded from two :

Ubi nunc fidelis ossa Fabricii jacent ?  
 Quid Brutus, aut rigidus Cato ?

Line 1.—*Weland* is the hero-smith of the North. Stories of him were among the most popular of the Middle Ages. They are mostly such as the Greeks told of Hephaistos, Erichthonios, and Daidalos. He made rings, and set them with precious stones. Nidhåd, a king in Sweden, had him bound in his sleep with heavy chains, and took from him a famous sword, and a ring which he gave to his daughter Beadohild. He afterward had him hamstringed, and confined to work for him. Weland killed the sons of Nidhåd. Beadohild, who had come to him to get her ring mended, he first stupefied with beer, and then ravished. He made himself wings and flew away, boasting of his revenge. He made Beowulf's famous coat of mail. The story of shooting the apple from his son's head, and the arrow "to kill thee, tyrant, had I slain my boy," familiar in connection with William Tell and William of Cloudesle, is a Weland story, told of his brother Egil. Scott's Wayland Smith, in Kenilworth, has his name, though little else, from this source. Alfred substitutes *Weland* for *Fabricius*, as though *Fabricius* were from *faber*, artificer.

Line 4.—*ængum* . . ., to any one may not the skill escape=no one may attain the skill. 6.—*þý êt* . . . *þe*, easier than; *beniman þræccan cræftes*, deprive a wretch (even) of his skill, § 317;—than one may turn the sun to swerve, and this swift heaven (to swerve) from his orbit, any of heroes; *ænig*, appositive with *mon*. 30.—*þcrás*, accusative, appositive with *hi*; bring them forth well known=make them familiar. 37.—*guma*, repeated subject; What then may have any of heroes, a man, from fame . . . ?

PAGE 66. SAWS. These are often called Gnostic verses. They are from pages 338+ of the Codex Exoniensis, already described in a note on the Traveler, page 51.

Line 3.—*þundrum*, wondrously. The ice, the water-helmet, locks up the plants. 14.—*þig*, repetition of *gût*. 22.—*bold-âgendum*, appositive with *him*, the wife should know wise counsels for them (herself and husband), the house holders both together. 25.—*frisan*, frizzled, ringleted, with a wealth

of tresses, Ett., Grein; other editors "Frisian." 30.—Waiteth for him on the land that his love demandeth. 31.—*pære* . . ., keep faith.

PAGE 67, line 3.—*mægð egsan pyn*, the chief of terrors, *i. e.* the sea, (holdeth) a family (many sailors). Thorpe reads *mægð cagná pyn*, a maid is the delight of the eyes. 4.—A rich man, a king, a settlement then for his people buys, when he comes to sail, *i. e.* sailing, § 448, 4. 32.—*sccal*, ought to belong to, becomes; infinitive omitted, § 435, *d.*—*Alpalda*, The All-ruling, *i. e.* the true God, (made) the glorious (world).

PAGE 68. THRENES. This extract is from a poem in the Codex Exoniensis, pages 286+, called by Thorpe The Wanderer. The ruined castle strikes the imagination powerfully in all ages, and in the decline of the Roman Empire men thought of themselves as living in a decaying world. The Anglo-Saxon poets seem to have been especially affected by this mode of thought.

Line 6.—*sumne* . . ., one a bird bore away over the high sea: *bird* trope for *ship*, Thorpe. Grein refers it to the bird *Greif*, O. H. G. *Grif*, *Grifo*, which figures in Germanic story, a counterpart to Gr. *Gryps*, griffon. 11.—*burgpará* . . ., till free from sounds of citizens old works of giants empty stood. Cities, stone figures, roads, stone swords, caves of dragons, are spoken of in Anglo-Saxon poems as *entá gepeorc*, and that is the only way in which *ent* occurs in them. 17.—Where has come horse = what has become of horse? 21.—*genáp*, has vanished, *spá*, as if. 22.—*on láste*, in the place of, forsaken by. 39.—*tó rycne*, too quickly.

PAGE 69, line 2.—*eorl*, appositive with *hê*, unless he first the remedy know how, the earl, with might to obtain. 4.—*him*, for himself.

The SECOND THRENE is from page 377 of the Codex Exoniensis, printed as "Deor the Scald's Complaint." See note on The Traveler, page 41.

Line 7.—*Weland*, see page 65, 1, and note. *Weland* for himself among dragons exile experienced. No dragon story is known of *Weland*. Grein proposes *pimman*, by means of woman. Rieger reads *be pornum*, manifoldly. 11.—*Nidhâd*, see note on page 65. 12.—*sýllan* = *séllan* < *sêl*, weak form, as epic epithet, § 362, 1. 13.—*ofercôde*, impersonal; there was a surviving of that, so there may be of this. 16.—The omitted line and a half reads:

*þæt heô gearolice      ongieten hæfde*  
*þæt heô eacen pæs:*

See for Beadohild's misfortune the note on page 65, line 1. 20.—*Eormanric*. The Gothic king *Emanaricus*, the Alexander of the North, is mentioned in the Traveler's Song and in *Beowulf*. He was king of the Ostro-Goths, A.D. 375. The stories told of him are full of anachronisms and inconsistencies. 25.—*cyne-rices*, genitive of separation, § 317. 27.—*Heodening*, Heoden, is Hetele in Gudrun, Hedin in Snorri's Edda, Hithinus in Saxo. 30.—*Heorrenda* is celebrated in the German heroic poetry as *Horant*, in Snorri as *Hirrandi*.

PAGE 70.—These rhymes are part of a poem of 87 verses in the Codex



Exoniensis. It is plainly a task poem to exhibit riming skill. The spelling obscures the sense, which needs all the light to be had. I have, therefore, used Grein's reformed orthography, and I add a Latin version by Ettmüller. Thorpe had pronounced it unintelligible. For the meter, see § 511.

Hominum genus perit, pugnae hasta lacerat,  
 versutia procax pugnat, sagittam fraus præparat,  
 fidejussionem cura mordet, audaciam senectus excindit.  
 Exilii tempus succrescit, iracundia jusjurandum cudit,  
 criminum funes expanduntur, machinationes instructæ labuntur.  
 Mæsta ira fodit, fovea retinaculum habet;  
 ornatus albus polluitur, æstas calida frigescit.  
 Populi prosperitas ruit, amicitia volvitur [evanescit],  
 terre vires inveterascunt, fervor frigescit.  
 Mihi id Parca texuit et opus imposuit,  
 ut foderem sepulcrum; neque hanc diram constitutionem  
 evitare carne possum, quo ex tempore dies celer fugerit,  
 arreptione necessaria me arripit [mors], ex quo nox venerit,  
 quæ mihi patriam negat, et me hic habitatione privat.  
 Si cadaver jacet, membra vermis comedit,  
 verrucam non curat et cibum sumit,  
 donec ossa tantum ex viro supersint,  
 et ultimo nullum [os], nisi necessitatis virgula  
 malum omen hic præbuerit, non erit fama tædio affecta.  
 Priusquam felix hoc cogitat, sæpissime se ipsum fatigat;  
 gustat amarum crimen, non curat meliorem voluptatem,  
 non recordatur hilaritatum gratias, hic sunt misericordiæ gaudia  
 speranda in cælorum regno. Eamus nunc sanctis similes  
 criminibus liberati, a dedecoribus redempti,  
 maculis puri, splendore cincti,  
 ubi humanum genus debet coram creatore lætum  
 verum Deum aspicere et in pace semper gaudere.

Note the use of adjectives as substantives: *flâh mâh flited*, subtle hostile fighteth = hostile one, fiend; *bald ald hpited*, bold old severeth = old ago cuts off the bold.

A BRIEF GRAMMAR  
OF THE  
ANGLO-SAXON LANGUAGE.

---

THE sections are numbered like the corresponding sections in the Author's Comparative Grammar of the Anglo-Saxon Language, so that the references in the notes of the Reader may answer for both when the topic is treated in both. The Comparative Grammar illustrates the forms of the Anglo-Saxon by those of the Sanskrit, Greek, Latin, Gothic, Old Saxon, Old Friesic, Old Norse, and Old High German.

## INTRODUCTION.

---

1. During the fifth and sixth centuries, England was conquered and peopled by pagans (Saxons, Angles, Jutes, etc.) from the shores of the North Sea; the center of emigration was near the mouth of the Elbe. The conquerors spoke many dialects, but most of them were Low German. Missionaries were sent from Rome (A.D. 597) to convert them to Christianity. The Roman alphabetic writing was thus introduced, and, under the influence of learned native ecclesiastics, a single tongue gradually came into use as a literary language through the whole nation. The chief seat of learning down to the middle of the eighth century was among the Angles of Northumberland. The language was long called *Englisc* (English), but is now called Anglo-Saxon. Its Augustan age was the reign of Alfred the Great, king of the West Saxons (A.D. 871-901). It continued to be written till the colloquial dialects, through the influence of the Anglo-Norman, had diverged so far from it as to make it unintelligible to the people; then, under the cultivation of the Wycliffite translators of the Bible, and of Chaucer and his fellows, there grew out of these dialects a new classic language—the English.

2. The spelling in the manuscripts is irregular, but the Northumbrian is the only well-marked dialect of the Anglo-Saxon, as old as its classic period (10th century), which has yet been explored. The Gospels and some other works have been printed in it. The common Anglo-Saxon is sometimes called West-Saxon.

3. After the period of pure Anglo-Saxon, there was written an irregular dialect called Semi-Saxon. It has few strange words, but the inflections and syntax are broken up (12th century).

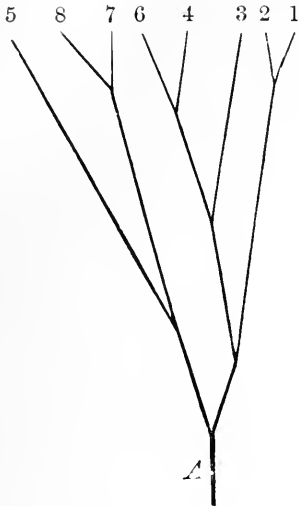
4. The former inhabitants of Britain were Celts, so unlike the invaders in race and speech, and so despised and hated, that they did not mix. There are in the Anglo-Saxon a handful of Celtic common names, and a good many geographical names: the relation of the Celtic language to the Anglo-Saxon is like that of the languages of the aborigines of America to our present English.

5. The Anglo-Saxon was shaped to literary use by men who wrote and spoke Latin, and thought it an ideal language; and a large part of the literature is translated or imitated from Latin authors. It is not to be doubted, therefore, that the Latin exercised a great influence on the Anglo-Saxon: if it did not lead to the introduction of wholly new forms, either of etymology or syntax, it led to the extended and uniform use of those forms which are like the Latin, and to the disuse of others, so as to draw the grammars near each other. There are a considerable number of words from the Latin, mostly connected with the Church; three or four through the Celts from the elder Romans.

6. There are many words in Anglo-Saxon more like the words of the same sense in Scandinavian than like any words which we find in the Germanic languages; but the remains of the early dialects are so scant that it is hard to tell how far such words were borrowed from or modified by the Scandinavians. Before A.D. 900 many Danes had settled in England. Danish kings afterward ruled it (A.D. 1013-1042). Their laws, however, are in Anglo-Saxon. The Danes were illiterate, and learned the Anglo-Saxon. Of course their pronunciation was peculiar, and they quickened and modified phonetic decay. It is probable that they affected the spoken dialects which have come up as English more than the written literary language which we call Anglo-Saxon.

7. The other languages sprung from the dialects of Low German tribes are Friesic, Old Saxon, and, later, Dutch (and Flemish), and Platt Deutsch. The talk in the harbors of Antwerp, Bremen, and Hamburg is said to be often mistaken by English sailors for corrupt English. These Low German languages are akin to the High German on one side, and to the Scandinavian on the other. These all, with the Mæso-Gothic, constitute the Teutonic class of languages. This stands parallel with the Lithuanic, the Slavonic, and the Celtic, and with the Italic, the Hellenic, the Iranic, and the Indic, all of which belong to the Indo-European family of languages. The parent speech of this family is lost, and has left no literary monuments. Its seat has been supposed to have been on the heights of Central Asia. The Sanskrit, an ancient language of India, takes its place at the head of the family. Theoretical roots and forms of inflection are given by grammarians as those of the Parent Speech, on the ground that they are such as might have produced the surviving roots and forms by known laws of change.

8. The following stem shows the order in which these classes branched, and their relative age and remoteness from each other. At the right is given the approximate date of the oldest literary remains. The languages earlier than these remains are made out



like the Parent Speech; that is, roots and forms are taken for the language at each period, which will give the roots and forms of all the languages which branch from it, but not those peculiar to the other languages.

A. Indo-European. Parent Speech.

1. Indic. B.C. 1500. Sanskrit Vedas.

2. Iranic. B.C. 1000. Bactrian Avesta.

3. Hellenic. Before B.C. 800. Greek.

4. Italic. B.C. 200. Latin.

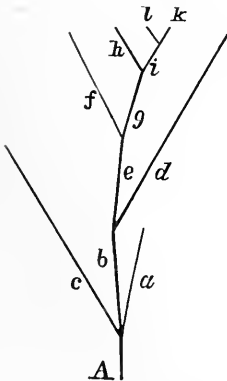
5. Teutonic. 4th Century. Mæso-Gothic Bible.

6. Celtic. 8th Century.

7. Slavonic. 9th Century. Bulgarian Bible.

8. Lithuanic. 16th Century.

9. The following stem shows the manner in which the languages of the Teutonic class branch after separating from the Slavonic. The Gothic (Mæso-Gothic) died without issue; the Low German is nearer akin to it than the High German is. The branches of the Scandinavian (Swedish, Danish, Norwegian) are not represented.



A. Teutonic. Theoretic.

a. Gothic. 4th Century.

b. Germanic. Theoretic.

c. Scandinavian. 13th Century.

d. High German. 8th Century.

e. Low German. Theoretic.

f. Friesic. 14th Century.

g. Saxon. Theoretic.

h. Anglo-Saxon. 8th Century.

i. Old Saxon. 9th Century.

j. Platt Deutsch. 14th Century.

k. Dutch. 13th Century.

# PART I.

## PHONOLOGY.

10. **Alphabet.**—The Anglo-Saxon alphabet has twenty-four letters. All but three are Roman characters: the variations from the common form are cacographic fancies. Þ þ (thorn), and Ð ð (wên), are runes. Ð ð (edh) is a crossed d, used for the older þ, oftenest in the middle and at the end of words.

| Old Forms. | Simple Forms. | Roman.                   | Names.  |
|------------|---------------|--------------------------|---------|
| Ǻ a        | A a           | A a                      | ah      |
| Ǽ æ        | Æ æ           | Æ æ                      | ä       |
| B b        | B b           | B b                      | bay     |
| C c        | C c           | C c                      | cay     |
| D d        | D d           | D d                      | day     |
| Ð ð        | Ð ð           | DH dh                    | edh     |
| E e        | E e           | E e                      | ay      |
| F f        | F f           | F f                      | ef      |
| G g        | G g           | G g                      | gay     |
| H h        | H h           | H h                      | hah     |
| I i        | I i           | I i                      | ee      |
| L l        | L l           | L l                      | el      |
| M m        | M m           | M m                      | em      |
| N n        | N n           | N n                      | en      |
| O o        | O o           | O o                      | o       |
| P p        | P p           | P p                      | pay     |
| R r        | R r           | R r                      | er      |
| S s        | S s           | S s                      | es      |
| T t        | T t           | T t                      | tay     |
| ƿ ƿ        | ƿ ƿ           | TH th                    | thorn   |
| U u        | U u           | U u                      | oo      |
| ƿ ƿ        | ƿ ƿ           | { VV vv }<br>{ (W) (w) } | wên     |
| X x        | X x           | X x                      | ex      |
| Y y        | Y y           | Y y                      | ypsilon |

Some of the German editors use ä for æ, æ for â, ü for e derived from i, ö for œ, œ for ô, j for i when a semi-vowel, and v for þ. Now and then k, q, v, z get into the manuscripts, mostly in foreign words, and uu or u for þ. The Semi-Saxon has a peculiar character for j (ȝ).

11. **Abbreviations.**—The most common are **ȝ** = and, **þ** = *þæt* (*that*), **ꝥ** = *orðe* (*or*), and **—** for an omitted *m* or *n*; as, **þā** = *þam*.

12. An **Accent** (´) is found in Anglo-Saxon manuscripts, but in none so regularly used as to make it an objective part of an Anglo-Saxon text. It is found oftenest over a long vowel; sometimes over a vowel of peculiar sound, not long; seldom, except over syllables having stress of voice. Sometimes it seems to mark nothing but stress. Most of the English editors represent it by an acute accent; the Germans generally print Anglo-Saxon with a circumflex over all single long vowels in the stem of words, and an acute over the diphthongs, as *brôðer*, *fréond*. In this book, to guide the studies of beginners, a circumflex is used over all long vowels and diphthongs, and the acute accent (´) over vowels only to denote stress.

13. **Punctuation.**—The Anglo-Saxons used one dot (.) at the end of each clause, or each hemistich of a poem, and sometimes three dots (:.) at the end of a sentence. Modern pointing is generally used in printed text.

#### 14. Sounds of Letters.—Vowels:

|   |   |
|---|---|
| a like <i>a</i> in <i>far</i> .   | i like <i>i</i> in <i>dim</i> .   |
| â “ <i>a</i> “ <i>fall</i> .  | î “ <i>ee</i> “ <i>deem</i> .   |
| æ “ <i>a</i> “ <i>glad</i> .  | o “ <i>o</i> “ <i>wholly</i> .  |
| ê “ <i>a</i> “ <i>dare</i> in New<br>England.   | ô “ <i>o</i> “ <i>holy</i> .  |
| e “ <i>e</i> “ <i>let</i> .   | u “ <i>u</i> “ <i>full</i> .  |
| e in the breakings (not diph-<br>thongs) <i>ea</i> , <i>eo</i> , <i>eâ</i> , <i>eô</i> , very<br>light. | û “ <i>oo</i> “ <i>fool</i> .   |
| ô like <i>e</i> in <i>they</i> .  | y “ <i>i</i> “ <i>dim</i> , but with the<br>lips thrust out and rounded.<br>(French <i>u</i> .) |
|   | ÿ same sound prolonged.   |

Unaccented vowels are like accented in kind, but obscure.

The *consonants* have their common English sounds; but note

|  |   |
|--|---|
| c like <i>k</i> , always.  | i (=j) before a vowel, like <i>y</i> .                            |
| ch “ <i>kh</i> in <i>work-house</i> .  | s like <i>s</i> in <i>so</i> .                                    |
| cp “ <i>qu</i> .   | t “ <i>t</i> “ <i>to</i> .  |
| ð, like Engl. <i>th</i> in a similar<br>word; <i>ôðer</i> , other, <i>dôðt</i> , doth. | þ “ <i>th</i> “ <i>thin</i> .                                     |
| g like <i>g</i> in <i>go</i> , always.   | p “ <i>w</i> .  |
| h very distinct.   | pl, pr, and final p nearly close<br>the lips. (German <i>w</i> .) |
| hp like <i>wh</i> in New England.  | x like <i>ks</i> .  |

15. **Accent.**—Rule 1. The primary accent is on the first syllable of every word : *brōd'-er*, brother ; *un'-cūtd*, uncouth.

*Exception 1.* Proper prefixes in verbs and particles take no primary accent : such are *ā*, *an*, *and*, *æt*, *be*, *bi*, *ed*, *for*, *ful*, *ge*, *geond*, *in*, *mis*, *ōd*, *of*, *ofer*, *on*, *or*, *tō*, *purh*, *un*, *under*, *puð*, *pider*, *ymb*, *ymbe* : *an-gin'nan*, begin ; *æt-gad'ere*, together ; *on-geán'*, again. The syllable after the prefix takes the accent.

(a.) But derivatives from nouns, pronouns, or adjectives retain their accent : *and'-sparian* < *and'sparu*, answer ; *in'-peardlice* < *in'-peard*, adj., inward ; *ed'-nipian* < *ed'nipe*, renewed. Such are all verbs in *and-*, *ed-*, *or-*, found in Anglo-Saxon poetry ; many adverbs in *un-*, etc.

(b.) Many editors print as compounds adverbs+verbs, both of which retain their accent. Such are those with *æfter*, *bī*, *bīg*, *efen*, *eft*, *fore*, *ford*, *from*, *fram*, *hider*, *nud*, *nider*, *gegn*, *geán*, *gén*, *tō*, *up*, *ūl*, *pel*.

*Exception 2.* The inseparable prefixes *ā-*, *be-* (*bi-*), *for-*, *ge-*, are unaccented : *ā-lýs'-ing*, redemption ; *be-gang'*, course.

Rule 2. A secondary accent may fall on the tone syllable of the lighter part of a compound or on a suffix : *o'fer-cum'an*, over-come ; *heof'on-steor'-ra*, star of heaven ; *hýr'end'e*, hearing.

#### EUPHONIC CHANGES.

27. **Gemination** is the doubling of a letter : when final or next to a consonant it is simplified or dissimilated, *mm* to *mb*, *nn* to *nd*, *ss* to *st*, *īi* to *ig*, *uu* to *up* : *dippan*, dip, makes *dip*, *dip̃te* ; *tímb̃r* for *tímm̃r*, timber ; *spindl* for *spinnl*, spindle ; *lufast*, lovest, for *lufass*, *lufige* for *lufiic*, love ; *bearupes* for *bearuues*, grove. Double *g* is written *eg*, double *f*, *bb*.

32. **Umlaut** is the assimilation of a vowel by the vowel of the following syllable.

| a-umlaut.  |                                       | i-umlaut.  |  | u-umlaut.                            |  |
|------------|---------------------------------------|--|--|--------------------------------------|--|
| It changes | <i>i</i> , <i>u</i> ,                 | <i>a</i> , <i>u</i> , <i>ea</i> , <i>eo</i> , <i>ā</i> , <i>ô</i> , <i>û</i> , <i>eā</i> , <i>eô</i> , |  | <i>a</i> , <i>i</i> ,                |  |
|            | to <i>e</i> ( <i>eo</i> ), <i>o</i> . | <i>e</i> , <i>y</i> , <i>ý</i> , <i>ý</i> , <i>â</i> , <i>ê</i> , <i>ÿ</i> , <i>ÿ</i> , <i>ÿ</i> .     |  | ( <i>o</i> ) <i>ea</i> , <i>eo</i> . |  |

**a-umlaut** : *helpan*, from root *hulp*, help ; *leofad*, root *lif*, live ; *boga*, from root *bug*, bow. The *i* which produces *i-umlaut* is often changed to *e* or dropped ; *man*, plur. *men*, from *men* ; *fōt*, plur. *fēt*, feet, from *fēti*. **u-umlaut** : *hlut*, plur. *hleodu*, slopes.

33. **Breaking** is the change of one vowel to two by a consonant.

**g**, **c**, and **sc** may break a following *a* to *ea*, *o* to *eo*, *i* to *ie*, *ā* to *eā*, *ō* to *eō*. **l**, **r**, and **h** may break a preceding *a* to *ea*, *i* to *eo* (*io*), *ie* : *geaf*, gave ; *ceaster*, Latin *castrum*, camp ; *sceō*, shoe ; *sealm*, psalm ; *earn*, arm ; *hleah̃tor*, laughter ; *meolc*, milk.

41. **Shifting** is a weakening of a letter not produced by other letters : *a* to *æ*, *ā* to *ē*, *eā* *eō* to *ē*, etc. : *dæg* from *dag*, day.



# PART II.

## ETYMOLOGY.

### NOUNS.

65. There are two classes of Declensions of Anglo-Saxon nouns:

(1.) **Strong**: those which have sprung from vowel stems.

(2.) **Weak**: that which has sprung from stems in **an**.

There are four declensions distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Singular:

| Declension 1. | Declension 2. | Declension 3. | Declension 4. |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| <b>es</b>     | <b>e</b>      | <b>a</b>      | <b>an</b>     |

### 66. SUMMARY OF CASE-ENDINGS.

|                               | STRONG.  |       |       |       |           |      | WEAK.      |      |           |      |       |
|-------------------------------|----------|-------|-------|-------|-----------|------|------------|------|-----------|------|-------|
|                               | DECL. I. |       |       |       | DECL. II. |      | DECL. III. |      | DECL. IV. |      |       |
|                               | Masc.    | Neut. | Masc. | Neut. | Feminine. |      | Masc.      | Fem. | Masc.     | Fem. | Neut. |
| Stem.....                     | a        | a     | ia    | ia    | â         | i    | u          |      | an        | an   | an    |
| SINGULAR.—                    |          |       |       |       |           |      |            |      |           |      |       |
| <i>N. &amp; V.</i> .....      | —        | —     | e     | e     | u         | —    | u          |      | a         | e    | e     |
| <i>Gen.</i> .....             | es       | es    | es    | es    | e         | e    | â          |      | an        | an   | an    |
| <i>Dat.</i> .....             | e        | e     | e     | e     | e         | e    | â          |      | an        | an   | an    |
| <i>Acc.</i> .....             | —        | —     | e     | e     | u, e      | e, — | u          |      | an        | an   | e     |
| <i>Inst.</i> .....            | ê        | ê     | ê     | ê     | e         | e    | â          |      | an        | an   | an    |
| PLURAL.—                      |          |       |       |       |           |      |            |      |           |      |       |
| <i>N., A., &amp; V.</i> ..... | âs       | u     | âs    | u     | â, e      | e, â | u, o, â    |      | an        |      |       |
| <i>Gen.</i> .....             | â        | â     | â     | â     | â, enâ    |      | â, enâ     |      | enâ       |      |       |
| <i>D. &amp; Inst.</i> ....    | um       | um    | um    | um    | um        |      | um         |      | um        |      |       |

A few masculines of Decl. 1st have some forms from **i**-stems or **u**-stems, §§ 86, 93.

67. **Gender.** General rules. For particulars, see §§ 268–270.

1. **Strong nouns.** All masculines are of the first or third declension; all feminines of the second or third; all neuters of the first.

2. *Abstract Nouns* have their gender governed by the terminations. In derivatives the feminine gender prevails.

3. *Compound Nouns* follow the gender of the last part.

4. **MASCULINE** are names of males; of the moon; of many weeds, flowers, winds; *man*, *guma*, man; *pêland*; *môna*, moon; *meor*, horse; *þorn*, thorn; *blôstma*, blossom; *pind*, wind.

5. **FEMININE** are names of females; of the sun; of many trees, rivers, soft and low musical instruments: *cpén*, queen; *cû*, cow; *Ælf-bryde*; *sunnu*, *sunne*, sun; *âc*, oak: *Danubie*, Danube; *hpistle*, whistle; *hearpe*, harp.

6. **NEUTER** are names of wife, child; diminutives; many general names; and words made an object of thought: *pif*, wife; *bearn*, *cild*, child; *mægden*, maiden; *græs*, grass; *ofet*, fruit; *corn*, corn; *gold*, gold.

7. **Epicene Nouns** have one grammatical gender, but are used for both sexes. Such names of mammalia are masculine, except of a few little timid ones: *mûs*, mouse (feminine); large and fierce birds are masculine; others feminine, especially singing birds: *nihtegale*, nightingale; large fishes are masculine, small feminine; insects are feminine.

68. **Cases alike.**—(1.) The nominative and vocative are always alike.

(2.) The nominative, accusative, and vocative are alike in all plurals, and in the singular of all neuters and strong masculines.

(3.) The genitive plural ends always in **â** or **enâ**.

(4.) The dative and instrumental plural end always in **um** (*on*).

## DECLENSION I.

Stem in **a**. Genitive singular in **es**.

70.—I. Case-endings from stem **a**+relational suffixes. **Nominative** in —.

|                           | MASCULINE.                                 | NEUTER.                      |
|---------------------------|--|------------------------------|
| Stem . . . . .            | <i>pulfa</i> , <i>wolf</i> .               | <i>scipa</i> , <i>ship</i> . |
| Theme . . . . .           | <i>pulf</i> .                              | <i>scip</i> .                |
| SINGULAR.—                |  |                              |
| <i>Nominative</i> . .     | <i>pulf</i> , <i>a wolf</i> .              | <i>scip</i> .                |
| <i>Genitive</i> . . . . . | <i>pulfes</i> , <i>of a wolf, wolf's</i> . | <i>scipes</i> .              |
| <i>Dative</i> . . . . .   | <i>pulfe</i> , <i>to or for a wolf</i> .   | <i>scipe</i> .               |
| <i>Accusative</i> . . .   | <i>pulf</i> , <i>a wolf</i> .              | <i>scip</i> .                |
| <i>Vocative</i> . . . . . | <i>pulf</i> , <i>O, wolf</i> .             | <i>scip</i> .                |
| <i>Instrumental</i> . .   | <i>pulfē</i> , <i>by or with a wolf</i> .  | <i>scipē</i> .               |
| PLURAL.—                  |  |                              |
| <i>Nominative</i> . .     | <i>pulfâs</i> , <i>wolves</i> .            | <i>scipu</i> .               |
| <i>Genitive</i> . . . . . | <i>pulfâ</i> , <i>of wolves</i> .          | <i>scipâ</i> .               |
| <i>Dative</i> . . . . .   | <i>pulfum</i> , <i>to or for wolves</i> .  | <i>scipum</i> .              |
| <i>Accusative</i> . . .   | <i>pulfâs</i> , <i>wolves</i> .            | <i>scipu</i> .               |
| <i>Vocative</i> . . . . . | <i>pulfâs</i> , <i>O, wolves</i> .         | <i>scipu</i> .               |
| <i>Instrumental</i> . .   | <i>pulfum</i> , <i>by or with wolves</i> . | <i>scipum</i> .              |

73. 2.—Long syllables drop plur. -u. 3.—*a* does not shift to *æ* in plur. of monosyllables in a single consonant. 4.—Umlaut of *i* to *eo* is rare. 5.—Gemination, see § 27. 6.—An unaccented short vowel before a single consonant is often dropped. 7, 8.—*g* and *h* interchange and drop. 9.—See § 27. 10.—Like *æ* decline *cealf*, *cild*, *lamb*.

| 2. Long monosyllables.                  | 3. Shifting.                                   | 4. U-umlaut.                | 5. Gemination.   |
|---|--|-----------------------------|--|
| Stem . . . . <i>porda</i> , n.<br>word. | <i>daga</i> , m. <i>fata</i> , n.<br>day. vat. | <i>hlida</i> , n.<br>slope. | <i>torra</i> , m. <i>spella</i> , n.<br>tower. speech. |
| Theme . . . <i>pord</i>                 | <i>dæg</i> <i>fæt</i>                          | <i>hlit</i>                 | <i>tor</i> <i>spel</i>                                 |
| SINGULAR.—                              |  |                             |  |
| N., A., & V. <i>pord</i>                | <i>dæg</i> <i>fæt</i>                          | <i>hlit</i>                 | <i>tor</i> <i>spel</i>                                 |
| Gen. . . . . <i>pordes</i>              | <i>dæges</i> <i>fætes</i>                      | <i>hlides</i>               | <i>torres</i> <i>spelles</i>                           |
| Dat. . . . . <i>porde</i>               | <i>dæge</i> <i>fæte</i>                        | <i>hlide</i>                | <i>torre</i> <i>spelle</i>                             |
| Inst. . . . . <i>pordê</i>              | <i>dægê</i> <i>fætê</i>                        | <i>hlidê</i>                | <i>torrê</i> <i>spellê</i>                             |
| PLURAL.—                                |  |                             |  |
| N., A., & V. <i>pord</i>                | <i>dagàs</i> <i>fatu</i>                       | <i>hleodu</i> (-i-)         | <i>torràs</i> <i>spel</i>                              |
| Gen. . . . . <i>pordâ</i>               | <i>dagâ</i> <i>fatâ</i>                        | <i>hleodâ</i> (-i-)         | <i>torrâ</i> <i>spellâ</i>                             |
| D. & Inst. . . <i>pordum</i>            | <i>dagum</i> <i>fatum</i>                      | <i>hleodum</i> (-i-)        | <i>torrum</i> <i>spellum</i>                           |

| 6. Syncope.   | 7. Stem in -ga.              | 8. Stem in -ha.              |
|---|------------------------------|------------------------------|
| Stem . . . . <i>tungola</i> , m.<br>star.   | <i>tungola</i> , n.<br>star. | <i>beâga</i> , m.<br>ring.   |
| Theme . . . <i>tungol</i>   | <i>tungol</i>                | <i>beâg</i>                  |
| SINGULAR.—  |                              |                              |
| N., A., & V. <i>tung-ol</i> , -ul, -el, -l  | <i>beâ(g)</i> , h            | <i>mear(h)</i> , g, -hoh, hô |
| Gen. . . . . <i>tung-oles</i> , -ules, -eles, -les  | <i>beâges</i>                | <i>mear</i> es <i>hós</i>    |
| Dat. . . . . <i>tung-ole</i> , -ule, -cle, -le  | <i>beâge</i>                 | <i>meare</i> <i>hō</i>       |
| Inst. . . . . <i>tung-olê</i> , -ulê, -elê, -lê   | <i>beâgê</i>                 | <i>mearê</i> <i>hō</i>       |
| PLURAL.—  |                              |                              |
| N., A., & V. { m. <i>tung-olàs</i> , -ulàs, -clàs, -làs<br>n. <i>tung-olu</i> , -ol, -ul, -el, -l | <i>beâgàs</i>                | <i>mearàs</i> <i>hós</i>     |
| Gen. . . . . <i>tung-olâ</i> , -ulâ, -clâ, -lâ  | <i>beâgâ</i>                 | <i>mearâ</i> <i>hòâ</i>      |
| D. & I. . . . <i>tung-olum</i> , -ulum, -elum, -lum   | <i>beâgum</i>                | <i>mearum</i> <i>hòum</i>    |

| 9. Stem in -pa.                                     | 10. Stem + er.   |
|---|--|
| Stem . . . . <i>bearpa</i> , m., grove.             | <i>cneôpa</i> , n., knee.  |
| Theme . . . <i>bearu</i>                            | <i>cneôp</i>   |
| SINGULAR.—  |  |
| N., A., & V. <i>bear-u</i> , -o                     | <i>cneôp</i> , <i>cneô</i>   |
| Gen. . . . . <i>bear-pes</i> , -upes, -opes, -epes  | <i>cneô-pes</i> , -s   |
| Dat. . . . . <i>bear-pe</i> , -upe, -ope, -epe      | <i>cneô-pe</i> , -   |
| Inst. . . . . <i>bear-pê</i> , -upê, -opê, -epê     | <i>cneô-pê</i> , -   |
| PLURAL.—  |  |
| N., A., & V. <i>bear-pàs</i> , -upàs, -opàs, -epàs  | <i>cneô-pu</i> , -p, -   |
| Gen. . . . . <i>bear-pâ</i> , -upâ, -opâ, -epâ      | <i>cneô-pâ</i> , <i>cneâ</i>   |
| D. & I. . . . <i>bear-pum</i> , -upum, -opum, -epum | <i>cneô-pum</i> , -um, -m  |
|   | <i>æg-er-u</i> , -ru<br><i>æg-er-â</i> , -râ<br><i>æg-er-um</i> , -rum |

83.—II. Case-endings from stem **-ia** + relational suffixes.

Stem . *hirdia*, m., *ricia*, n.,  
*shepherd.* *realm.*

Theme *hird.* *ric.*

SINGULAR.—

*Nom.* *hirdē* *rice*  
*Gen...* *hirdes* *rices*  
*Dat...* *hirdē* *rice*  
*Acc...* *hirdē* *rice*  
*Voc...* *hirdē* *rice*  
*Inst...* *hirdē* *rice*

PLURAL.—

*Nom.* *hirdās* *ricu*  
*Gen...* *hirdā* *ricā*  
*Dat...* *hirdum* *ricum*  
*Acc...* *hirdās* *ricu*  
*Voc...* *hirdās* *ricu*  
*Inst...* *hirdum* *ricum*

84.—III. Case-endings from stem **-i** + relational suffixes.

*byri*, m., *fōti*, m., *mani*, m.,  
*son.* *foot.* *man.*

*byr* *fōt* *man*

*byre* *fōt* *man*  
*byres* *fōtes* *mannes*  
*byre* *fēt, fōte* *men*  
*byre* *fōt* *man*  
*byre* *fōt* *man*  
*byrē* *fēt, fōtē* *men.*

*byre, -ās* *fēt, fōtās* *men*  
*byrā* *fōtā* *mannā*  
*byrum* *fōtum* *mannum*  
*byre, -ās* *fēt, fōtās* *men*  
*byre, -ās* *fēt, fōtās* *men*  
*byrum* *fōtum* *mannum*

86. Stem *in i*. The plur. *-e* is found in names of peoples: *Dene*, Danes; *Rômâne*, Romans; *leōde*, men; and in *pine*, friend; *mere*, sea; and a few others. Umlaut, as in *fōt*, is found in *tōt*, tooth; so also in the feminines *bōc*, book; *brōc*, breeches; *gōs*, goose; *mūs*, mouse; *lūs*, louse; *cū*, cow, plur. gen. *cūnā*; *burh*, gen. dat. *byrig*, borough; *turf*, turf. See § 90.

87. A few anomalous consonant stems which sometimes have genitive *-es* may be placed here.

*Stems in -nd and -r.*

SINGULAR.—

**nd-stem.**

**r-stem.**

*Nom., A., & V.....* *feōnd.*

*brōctor* (*ur, er*).

*Gen. ....* *feōndes.*

*brōctor.*

*Dat. & Inst. ....* *feōnde.*

*brēcter.*

PLURAL.—

*Nom., A., & V.....* *feōnd, -ās, fýnd.*

*brōctor, brōctru* (*a*).

*Gen. ....* *feōndā,*

*brōctrā.*

*Dat. & Inst.....* *feōndum.*

*brōdrum.*

Participial nouns in *-nd*, plur. *-nd, -ndās*, are common. Like *brōtor* are fem. *mōdor*, mother; *dōhtor*, daughter; *speostor*, sister. *Fæder* has undeclined forms, and also gen. *-es*, plur. *-ās, -ā, -um*. *Neaht*, f., night, gen. *nihte, nihtes*, plur. *niht*. *Feld*, field; *ford*, ford; *sumor*, summer; *pinter*, winter, etc., have dat. *-ā*.

Stem in **â** or **i**. Genitive singular in **e**.

| 88. — I. Case-endings from stem <b>â</b> +relational suffixes. |                     | II.—Case-endings from stem <b>i</b> +relational suffixes. |                     |
|--|---------------------|---|---------------------|
| Stem . . .   | gifâ, <i>gift</i> . |   | dâdi, <i>deed</i> . |
| Theme . . .  | gif.                |   | dâd.                |
| SINGULAR.—   |                     |   |                     |
| Nominative . .   | gifu.               |   | dâd.                |
| Genitive . . . .   | gife.               |   | dâde.               |
| Dative . . . . .   | gife.               |   | dâde.               |
| Accusative . .   | gifu, gife.         |   | dâd, dâde.          |
| Vocative . . . .   | gifu.               |   | dâd.                |
| Instrumental .   | gife.               |   | dâde.               |
| PLURAL.—   |                     |   |                     |
| Nominative . .   | gifâ, gife.         |   | dâde, dâdâ.         |
| Genitive . .   | gifâ, gifendâ.      |   | dâdâ.               |
| Dative . . .   | gifum.              |   | dâdum.              |
| Accusative . .   | gifâ, gife.         |   | dâde, dâdâ.         |
| Vocative . . . .   | gifâ, gife.         |   | dâde, dâdâ.         |
| Instrumental .   | gifum.              |   | dâdum.              |

90. Stem.. 4. bôci, *book*.      5. mûsi, *mouse*.      6. ceasteri, *city*.  
 Theme      bôc.                      mûs.                      ceaster, ceastr.

| SINGULAR.—  |      |      |            |
|-------------|------|------|------------|
| Nom. . .    | bôc. | mûs. | ceaster.   |
| Gen. . . .  | bêc. | mÿs. | ceastre.   |
| Dat. . . .  | bêc. | mÿs. | ceastre.   |
| Acc. . . .  | bôc  | mûs. | { ceaster. |
|             |      |      | { ceastre. |
| Voc. . . .  | bôc. | mûs. | ceaster.   |
| Inst. . . . | bêc. | mÿs. | ceastre.   |

| PLURAL.—    |        |        |                       |
|-------------|--------|--------|-----------------------|
| Nom. . .    | bêc.   | mÿs.   | ceastre ( <i>d</i> ). |
| Gen. . . .  | bôcâ.  | mûsâ.  | ceastrâ.              |
| Dat. . . .  | bôcum. | mûsum. | ceastrum.             |
| Acc. . . .  | bêc.   | mÿs.   | ceastre ( <i>d</i> ). |
| Voc. . . .  | bêc.   | mÿs.   | ceastre ( <i>d</i> ). |
| Inst. . . . | bôcum. | mûsum. | ceastrum.             |

Feminines in *-ung* and a few others sometimes have dative *-â*.

92. *Head-cases in a Vowel*.—Genitive in **a**.

|                      |                       |                         |
|----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Stem.....            | 1. sunu, <i>son</i> . | 2. handu, <i>hand</i> . |
| Theme....            | sun.                  | hand.                   |
| SINGULAR.—           |                       |                         |
| <i>Nominative..</i>  | sunu.                 | hand.                   |
| <i>Genitive.....</i> | suná.                 | handá.                  |
| <i>Dative.....</i>   | suná, sunu.           | handá, hand.            |
| <i>Accusative...</i> | sunu.                 | hand.                   |
| <i>Vocative.....</i> | sunu.                 | hand.                   |
| <i>Instrumental.</i> | suná.                 | handá, hand.            |
| PLURAL.—             |                       |                         |
| <i>Nominative..</i>  | sunu (o), suná.       | handá.                  |
| <i>Genitive.....</i> | { suná,<br>sunená. }  | handá.                  |
| <i>Dative.....</i>   | sunum.                | handum.                 |
| <i>Accusative...</i> | sunu (o), suná.       | handá.                  |
| <i>Vocative.....</i> | sunu (o), suná.       | handá.                  |
| <i>Instrumental.</i> | sunum.                | handum.                 |

## 95. WEAK NOUNS.

Case-endings < stem **an** + relational suffixes.—Genitive in **an**.

## (DECLENSION IV.)

|                  | 1. MASCULINES. | 2. FEMININES. | 3. NEUTERS. | CONTRACTS.  |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|
| Stem.. {         | hanan,         | tungan,       | eágan,      | tâan,       |
|                  | cock.          | tongue.       | eye.        | toe.        |
| Theme            | han.           | tung.         | eág.        | tâ.         |
| SINGULAR.—       |                |               |             |             |
| <i>Nom. ...</i>  | hana.          | tunge.        | eáge.       | tâe, tâ.    |
| <i>Gen. ...</i>  | hanan.         | tungan.       | eágan.      | tâan, tân.  |
| <i>Dat. ...</i>  | hanan.         | tungan.       | eágan.      | tâan, tân.  |
| <i>Acc. ...</i>  | hanan.         | tungan.       | eáge.       | tâan, tân.  |
| <i>Voc. ...</i>  | hana.          | tunge.        | eáge.       | tâe, tâ.    |
| <i>Inst. ...</i> | hanan.         | tungan.       | eágan.      | tâan, tân.  |
| PLURAL.—         |                |               |             |             |
| <i>Nom. ...</i>  | hanan.         | tungan.       | eágan.      | tâan, tân.  |
| <i>Gen. ...</i>  | hanená.        | tungená.      | eágená.     | tâená, tâná |
| <i>Dat. ...</i>  | hanum.         | tungum.       | eágum.      | tâum.       |
| <i>Acc. ...</i>  | hanan.         | tungan.       | eágan.      | tâan, tân.  |
| <i>Voc. ...</i>  | hanan.         | tungan.       | eágan.      | tâan, tân.  |
| <i>Inst. ...</i> | hanum.         | tungum.       | eágum.      | tâum.       |

101. PROPER NAMES.

(1.) PERSONS.—Names of women in -u or a consonant are strong, those in -e or -a are weak. Declension II., *ā*-stem: Begu, Freiparn; *i*-stem: Beadobild, Hygd, and most others. Declension IV.: Elene, Eve, Ada, Maria, etc., from foreign names; Dealhþeô(p), dat. Dealhþeôn (§ 99).

Names of men in -u, -e, or a consonant are strong, those in -a are weak. Declension III., *u*-stem: Leôfsumu? Declension I., *a*-stem: Ælfrêd, Beôpulf, Eâdmund, Sigemund (gen. also Sigemunde < munn, f. Rask)? Dêland, and most other strong names; syncopated: Ecgþeô(p), gen. Ecgþeôpes, Ecgþeôdes, etc.; Ongenþeô(p); Grendel, gen. Grendeles, Grendles, etc.; Hrêdel; *ia*-stem: Ine, Hedde, Gíslhere, Dulfhere, Eâdpine, Godpine, and others from -here and -pine; umlaut not found: Hereman, dat. Heremanne. Declension IV.: Ætla, Becca, and many others.

(a.) Foreign names sometimes retain foreign declension, or are undeclined, but are generally declined as above; those in -as, -es, -us do not often increase in the genitive. Those from Latin -us, Greek -os, of the second declension, sometimes drop their endings and take those of the Anglo-Saxon first: Crist (<Christus), Cristes, Criste, etc. In less familiar words -us oftener stands in the nom. and gen., but Latin and Anglo-Saxon forms may mix throughout: Petrus, gen. Petrus, Petruses, Petres, Petri, dat. Petro, Petre, acc. Petrus, Petrum; so -as and -es: Andreás, gen. Andreás, dat. Andreá, acc. Andreás, Andream; Hêrôdês, Hêrôdes, Hêrôde, Hêrôd-em, -ês, or -e.

(b.) In Gothic these Latin and Greek names of the second declension are regularly given in the *u*-declension: Paitrus, gen. Paitraus, dat. Paitrau, acc. Paitru (§ 93, a). The Anglo-Saxon genitive Petrus may be a relic of the *u*-declension.

(2.) PEOPLES.—Plurals in -âs and -e are strong, in -an weak. Declension I., *a*-stem: Brittâs, Scottâs, etc.; *ia*-stem and *i*-stem: Dene, gen. Den-â, -iâ, -igâ, -geâ (§ 85, a); Românc, etc. Declension IV.: Gotan, Seaxan, etc.

The singular is oftenest an adjective in -isc regularly declined: Egyptisc man, *Egyptian man*; Egyptisc ides, *Egyptian woman*; þâ Egyptiscan, *the Egyptians*, etc. Sometimes ân Brit, a Briton.

Often is found a collective with a genitive, or with an adjective, or compounded: Seaxnâ þeôd; Filistêa fole; Caldêa cyn; Ebrêa perâs; Sodomisc cyn; Rôm-pare (§ 86); Nord-men (§ 84, 3), etc. Foreign names are treated as are names of persons.

(3.) COUNTRIES.—A few feminine names are found: Engel, *England*; Bryten, *Britannia*. Oftenest is found the *people's*

*name in the genitive with land, rice, êtel, etc., or in an oblique case with a preposition: Englà land; Sodomâ rice; on Eâst-Englum; of Seaxum; on Egyptum. Foreign names are treated as are names of persons.*

(4.) CITIES.—Names found alone are regularly declined according to gender and endings: Rôm, *f.* Rôme; Babylon, *n.* Babylo-nes; Sodoma, *m.* Sodomān. *Oftenest they are prefixed undeclined to burg, ceaster, pic, dūn, hām, etc.: Lunden-pic, Rôma-burg, etc.; or the folk's name in the genitive followed by burg, ceaster, etc., is used: Calcêa burg. Foreign names treated as names of persons.*

#### IV. ADJECTIVES.

##### INDEFINITE AND DEFINITE DECLENSIONS.

103. An adjective in Anglo-Saxon has one set of strong and one of weak endings for each gender. The latter are used when the adjective is preceded by the definite article or some word like it. Hence there are two declensions, the indefinite and the definite.

##### 104.—I. *The Indefinite Declension.*

Case-endings < stem **a**, **â**, or **i** + relational suffixes.

|            | MASCULINE.          | FEMININE.                 | NEUTER.           |
|------------|---------------------|---------------------------|-------------------|
| Stem...    | { blindâ,<br>blind. | blindâ, blindi,<br>blind. | blindâ,<br>blind. |
| Theme.     | blind,              | blind.                    | blind.            |
| SINGULAR.— | ⏟                   | ⏟                         | ⏟                 |
| Nom. ....  | blind               | blind(u) (o) (e)          | blind             |
| Gen. ....  | blindes             | blindre                   | blindes           |
| Dat. ....  | blindum             | blindre                   | blindum           |
| Acc. ....  | blindne             | blinde                    | blind             |
| Voc. ....  | blind               | blind(u)                  | blind             |
| Inst. .... | blindē              | blindre                   | blindē            |
| PLURAL.—   |                     |                           |                   |
| Nom. ....  | blinde              | blinde                    | blind(u) (o) (e)  |
| Gen. ....  | blindrā             | blindrā                   | blindrā           |
| Dat. ....  | blindum             | blindum                   | blindum           |
| Acc. ....  | blinde              | blinde                    | blindu            |
| Voc. ....  | blinde              | blinde                    | blindu            |
| Inst. .... | blindum             | blindum                   | blindum           |



105.—II. *The Definite Declension.*Case-endings < stem **an** + relational suffixes.

|            | MASCULINE.              | FEMININE.      | NEUTER.      |
|------------|-------------------------|----------------|--------------|
| Stem..     | blindan, <i>blind</i> . | blindan,       | blindan,     |
| Theme      | blind.                  | blind.         | blind.       |
| SINGULAR.— |                         |                |              |
| Nom....    | se blindā.              | seô blinde.    | pæt blinde.  |
| Gen....    | pæs blindan.            | pære blindan.  | pæs blindan. |
| Dat....    | pam blindan.            | pære blindan.  | pam blindan. |
| Acc....    | þone blindan.           | pā blindan.    | pæt blinde.  |
| Voc. ....  | se blindā.              | seô blinde.    | pæt blinde.  |
| Inst....   | þý blindan.             | pære blindan.  | þý blindan.  |
| PLURAL.—   |                         |                |              |
| Nom....    |                         | pā blindan.    |              |
| Gen....    |                         | pārā blindenā. |              |
| Dat....    |                         | pām blindum.   |              |
| Acc....    |                         | pā blindan.    |              |
| Voc. ....  |                         | pā blindan.    |              |
| Inst....   |                         | pām blindum.   |              |

106.—*Theme ending Short (Root Shifting).*

|            | glada, <i>glad</i> . | gladā, gladi. | glada.       |
|------------|----------------------|---------------|--------------|
| Theme      | glad > glæd.         | glad > glæd.  | glad > glæd. |
| SINGULAR.— |                      |               |              |
| Nom....    | glæd.                | gladu.        | glæd.        |
| Gen....    | glades.              | glædre.       | glades.      |
| Dat....    | gladum.              | glædre.       | gladum.      |
| Acc....    | glædne.              | glade.        | glæd.        |
| Voc. ....  | glæd.                | gladu.        | glæd.        |
| Inst....   | glæð.                | glædre.       | glæð.        |
| PLURAL.—   |                      |               |              |
| Nom....    | glade.               | glade.        | gladu.       |
| Gen....    | glædrā.              | glædrā.       | glædrā.      |
| Dat....    | gladum.              | gladum.       | gladum.      |
| Acc....    | glade.               | glade.        | gladu.       |
| Voc. ....  | glade.               | glade.        | gladu.       |
| Inst....   | gladum.              | gladum.       | gladum.      |

In the Definite Declension it has  $\sqrt{\text{glad}}$  throughout, and agrees wholly with *blind*. The ending -u may change to -o, -e, —.

## 122. COMPARISON.

*Comparison* is a variation to denote degrees of quantity or quality. It belongs to adjectives and adverbs.

(a.) In Anglo-Saxon it is a variation of stem, and is a matter rather of derivation than inflection; but the common mode of treatment is convenient.

(b.) The suffixes of comparison were once less definite in meaning than now, and were used to form many numerals, pronouns, adverbs > prepositions, and substantives, in which compared correlative terms are implied: *either, other, over, under, first*, etc.

(c.) Anglo-Saxon adverbs are in brackets: (*spīde*).

123. ADJECTIVES are regularly compared by suffixing to the theme of the positive *-ir* > *-er* or *-ōr* for the theme of the comparative, and *-ist* > *-est* or *-ōst* for the theme of the superlative.

The *Comparative* has always weak endings and syncopated stem.

The *Superlative* has both weak and strong endings.

ADVERBS are compared like adjectives: the positive uses the ending *-e*, the comparative and superlative have none; *-ir* drops.

*Strong*, spīð, *strenuous*; spīðra; spīðōst.  
*Weak*, se spīða; se spīðra; se spīðōsta.  
*Adverb*, (spīde); (spīðōr); (spīðōst).

124. i-umlaut may change a, â, ea, eâ, eo, ô, u, û,  
to e, ê, y, e, ý, y, ê, y, ý.

*lang*, long; *lengra* (*leng*); *lengest*.

*eald*, *alð*, old; *yldra*, *eldra*; *yldest*, *eldest*.

128. HETEROCLITIC forms abound from themes in *-ir* and *-ōr*, *-ist*, *-ōst*: *sēl*, good; *-ra*, *-la*, (*sēl*); *--est*, *-ōst*; *rice*, rich; *ricest*, *ricōst*; *glæd*, glad; *glædra*, *glædra*, etc. (§ 125). Some have themes with and without double comparison: *læt*, late; *lættra*; *latōst*, *latemest*; *sīd*, late; *sūtra* (*sīd*, *sīdōr*); *sūd-āst*, *-est*, *-mest*.

129. DEFECTIVE are the following. Words in capitals are not found.

(1.) *Mixed Roots*:

|               | POSITIVE.                      | COMPARATIVE.                                   | SUPERLATIVE.  |
|---------------|--------------------------------|--|---|
| <i>good</i> , | { gōd }<br>{ BÆT }             | { betera, betra, § 124<br>{ bætra, § 125 (bet) | betst, betōst, -āst<br>(betst)                      |
| <i>bad</i> ,  | { yfel }<br>{ peor }<br>{ sām- | { pyrsa, (pyrs),<br>§ 123, b<br>{ sāmra, § 124 | { pyrst, pyrresta,<br>(pyrst), (pyrrest)<br>sāmeest |

|                               | POSITIVE.                                   | COMPARATIVE.                            | SUPERLATIVE.          |
|-------------------------------|---|---|-----------------------|
| <i>great,</i><br><i>much,</i> | { micel }<br>{ fela }<br>MÂ                 | { (micle) }<br>{ (fela) }<br>mâra, (mâ) | mâest, § 124; 123, a  |
| <i>little,</i>                | { lytel }<br>{ LÆS (Goth. <i>lasivs</i> ) } | { (lyt) }<br>læssa (læs), § 35, B       | { læs-âst, -est, -t } |

(2.) *From Adverbs of time and place* (compare §§ 126, 127):

|                                   |                                    |                                       |   |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|---|
| <i>ever,</i><br><i>ere, erst,</i> | { â-, ê- }                         | { (êr) > êrra,<br>(êr-ôr, -ur) }      | { êr-est }                                    |
| <i>after-</i><br><i>ward,</i>     | { af, æf=of, }<br>{ æfterpeard }   | (æf-ter) > æftera                     | { æf-tem-est<br>æfter-mest, § 127 }           |
| <i>else,</i>                      | (elles)                            | (ellôr), elra                         | —   |
| <i>fore,</i>                      | forepeard, (fore)                  | fyrra                                 | { for-ma > (fyrrest),<br>fyrst, fruma, § 51 } |
| <i>far,</i>                       | feor, (fyr)                        | fyrre, (fyr)                          | fyrrest (eo > y)                              |
| <i>forth,</i>                     | fordpeard, (ford)                  | (furð-ôr, -ur)                        | { (furð-un),<br>ford-m-est }                  |
| <i>behind,</i>                    | { hinde(r)peard, }<br>{ (hindan) } | (hinder)                              | { hinduma,<br>hinde-ma, § 126, b }            |
| <i>inner,</i>                     | innepeard, (in)                    | innera                                | inne-ma, (-m-est)                             |
| <i>mid,</i>                       | { middepeard, }<br>{ (mid) }       | —                                     | { med-ema (-uma?)<br>mid-m-est }              |
| <i>north,</i>                     | { norðpeard, }<br>{ (norð) }       | (nord-ôr)                             | nord-m-est                                    |
| <i>nether,</i>                    | { uidepeard, }<br>{ (niðe) }       | { nið-ra,<br>(nið-ôr, -er (i > eo)) } | { niðema, § 126<br>niðe-m-est (i > eo) }      |
| <i>upper,</i>                     | ûfepeard, (up)                     | { ufera,<br>(ufôr) }                  | { yf(e)-m-est, § 124 }                        |
| <i>outer,</i>                     | ûtepeard, (ût)                     | ûtra, (uttôr, ûttôr)                  | { ûtema, ûtmest,<br>ÿt-(c-)m-est, § 124 }     |

So *sûdemest, eâstemest, pestemest*, south-, east-, west-most.

DECAY OF ENDINGS.—(1), Declension: Layamon, strong, sing. mase. —, -cs, -en, -ne; fem. —, -rc, -re, -e; neut. —, -es, -en, —; plur. -e, -rc, -en, -c; but *n, s, r* may drop. Weak, -e, -en, as in § 102.—Ormulum, strong, sing. —, plur. -c. Weak, -e.—Chaucer, monosyllables as in Orm., others undeclined.—Shakespeare, no declension.

(2), Comparison: Layamon, Ormulum, -re, -est.—Chaucer (= Modern English), -er, -est.

V. PRONOUNS (*Relational Names*, § 56).130. PERSONAL PRONOUNS (*Relational Substantives*).

| SING.—1. <i>I.</i>   | 2. <i>thou.</i>   | 3. <i>he,</i> | <i>she,</i>  | <i>it.</i>   |
|----------------------|-------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>N.</i> ic         | þû                | hê            | heô          | hît          |
| <i>G.</i> mîn        | þîn               | his           | hire         | his          |
| <i>D.</i> mê         | þê                | him           | hire         | him          |
| <i>A.</i> mec, mê    | þec, þê           | hine          | hîe, hî, heô | hît          |
| <i>V.</i> —          | þû                | —             | —            | —            |
| <i>I.</i> mê         | þê                | him           | hire         | him          |
| PLURAL.—             |                   |               |              |              |
| <i>N.</i> pê         | gê γ <sup>c</sup> | hîe, hî, heô  | hîe, hî, heô | heô, hîe, hî |
| <i>G.</i> ûser, ûre  | eôper             | heorâ, hyrâ   | heorâ, hyrâ  | heorâ, hyrâ  |
| <i>D.</i> ûs         | eôp               | him           | him          | him          |
| <i>A.</i> ûsic, ûs   | eôpic, eôp        | hîe, hî, heô  | hîe, hî, heô | heô, hîe, hî |
| <i>V.</i> —          | gê                | —             | —            | —            |
| <i>I.</i> ûs         | eôp               | him           | him          | him          |
| DUAL.—               |                   |               |              |              |
| <i>N.</i> pît        | git               |               |              |              |
| <i>G.</i> uncer      | incer             |               |              |              |
| <i>D.</i> une        | ine               |               |              |              |
| <i>A.</i> uncit, une | incit, inc        |               |              |              |
| <i>V.</i> —          | git               |               |              |              |
| <i>I.</i> unc        | inc               |               |              |              |

|                   | SING. NOM.     | GENITIVE.      | PLUR. NOM.     |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| <i>P. Sp.</i> ... | i-s, i-ja, i-t | i-sja          | aj-as          |
| <i>Latin</i> ...  | i-s, ea, i-d   | ejus           | ii, eæ, ea     |
| <i>Gothic</i> ... | i-s, si, i-ta  | is, izôðs, is  | eis, iþôs, ija |
| <i>O. Sax.</i>    | hi, siu, i-t   | is, ira, is    | siâ, siâ, siu  |
| <i>O. H. G.</i>   | i-r, siu, i-z  | sîn, irâ, is   | siê, siô, siu  |
| <i>O. Norse</i>   | hann, hon,—    | { hans, hen- } | —              |
|                   |                | { nar, — }     |                |

131. REFLEXIVES are supplied by the personal pronouns with *self* (self), or without it. *Self* has strong adjective endings like *blind* (§ 103); in the nominative singular also weak *selfa*.

132. POSSESSIVES are *mîn, þîn, sîn, ûser, ûre, eôper, uncer, incer*. They have strong adjective endings (§ 103). Those in *-er* are usually syncopated (§ 79). *Ûser* has assimilation of *r > s* (§ 35, *B*).

| SING.—                   |            |               |                | PLUR.—                |
|--------------------------|------------|---------------|----------------|-----------------------|
|                          | Masculine. | Feminine.     | Neuter.        | Masc. & Fem. Neut.    |
| <i>N.</i> ûser           |            | ûser          | ûser           | (ûsere) ûsse (a) ûser |
| <i>G.</i> (ûseres) ûsses |            | (ûserre) ûsse | (ûseres) ûsses | (ûserrâ) ûssû         |
| <i>D.</i> (ûserum) ûssum |            | (ûserre) ûsse | (ûserum) ûssum | (ûserum) ûssum        |
| <i>A.</i> ûserne         |            | (ûsere) usse  | ûser           | (ûsere) ûsse ûser     |
| <i>V.</i> ûser           |            | ûser          | ûser           | (ûsere) ûsse ûser     |
| <i>I.</i> (ûserê) ûssê   |            | (ûserre) usse | (ûserê) ûssê   | (ûserum) ûssum        |

## 133. DEMONSTRATIVES.

*Definite Article.*

|              | 1. <i>that</i> and <i>the</i> . |                    |                 |  | 2. <i>this</i> . |               |               |
|--------------|---------------------------------|--------------------|-----------------|--|------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>Nom.</i>  | <i>se</i>                       | <i>seô</i>         | <i>þæt</i>      |  | <i>þes</i>       | <i>þeôs</i>   | <i>þis</i>    |
| <i>Gen.</i>  | <i>þæs</i>                      | <i>þære</i>        | <i>þæs</i>      |  | <i>þisses</i>    | <i>þisse</i>  | <i>þisses</i> |
| <i>Dat.</i>  | <i>þam, þæm</i>                 | <i>þære</i>        | <i>þam, þæm</i> |  | <i>þissum</i>    | <i>þisse</i>  | <i>þissum</i> |
| <i>Acc.</i>  | <i>þone (a, æ)</i>              | <i>þā</i>          | <i>þæt</i>      |  | <i>þisne</i>     | <i>þās</i>    | <i>þis</i>    |
| <i>Voc.</i>  | <i>se</i>                       | <i>seô</i>         | <i>þæt</i>      |  | —                | —             | —             |
| <i>Inst.</i> | <i>þý</i>                       | <i>þære</i>        | <i>þý, þê</i>   |  | <i>þýs</i>       | <i>þisse</i>  | <i>þýs</i>    |
|              |                                 |                    |                 |  |                  |               |               |
| <i>Nom.</i>  | .....                           | <i>þā</i>          |                 |  |                  | <i>þās</i>    |               |
| <i>Gen.</i>  | .....                           | <i>þārā, þæreā</i> |                 |  |                  | <i>þissā</i>  |               |
| <i>Dat.</i>  | .....                           | <i>þām, þæm</i>    |                 |  |                  | <i>þissum</i> |               |
| <i>Acc.</i>  | .....                           | <i>þā</i>          |                 |  |                  | <i>þās</i>    |               |
| <i>Voc.</i>  | .....                           | <i>þā</i>          |                 |  |                  | —             |               |
| <i>Inst.</i> | .....                           | <i>þām, þæm</i>    |                 |  |                  | <i>þissum</i> |               |

134. RELATIVES.—(1.) *se, seô, þæt*, who, which, that, is declined as when a demonstrative (§ 133). (2.) *þe* used in all the cases, both alone and in combination with *se, seô, þæt*, or a personal pronoun, is indeclinable. (3.) *spā*, so, used like English *as* and Old German *so* in place of a relative, is indeclinable.

135. INTERROGATIVES are *hpā*, who; *hpæder*, which of two; *hpyle, hūlic*, of what kind. They have strong adjective endings: *hpæder* is syncopated (§ 84.)

| SING.—       | Masc.        | Fem. | Neut.       |                 |
|--------------|--------------|------|-------------|-----------------|
| <i>Nom.</i>  | <i>hpā</i>   | —    | <i>hpæt</i> |                 |
| <i>Gen.</i>  | <i>hpæs</i>  | —    | <i>hpæs</i> |                 |
| <i>Dat.</i>  | <i>hpam</i>  | —    | <i>hpam</i> | Plural wanting. |
| <i>Acc.</i>  | <i>hpone</i> | —    | <i>hpæt</i> |                 |
| <i>Voc.</i>  | —            | —    | —           |                 |
| <i>Inst.</i> | <i>hpam</i>  | —    | <i>hpý</i>  |                 |

## 136. INDEFINITES.

(1.) *The Indefinite Article* *ân* < *án*, *one*.

| SING.—       | Masc.                | Fem.        | Neut.       | PLUR.— M., F., N. |
|--------------|----------------------|-------------|-------------|-------------------|
| <i>Nom.</i>  | ... <i>ân</i>        | <i>ân</i>   | <i>ân</i>   | <i>âne</i>        |
| <i>Gen.</i>  | ... <i>ânes</i>      | <i>ânre</i> | <i>ânes</i> | <i>ânrá</i>       |
| <i>Dat.</i>  | ... <i>ânum</i>      | <i>ânre</i> | <i>ânum</i> | <i>ânum</i>       |
| <i>Acc.</i>  | ... <i>âne, ænne</i> | <i>âne</i>  | <i>ân</i>   | <i>âne</i>        |
| <i>Voc.</i>  | ... <i>ân</i>        | <i>ân</i>   | <i>ân</i>   | <i>âne</i>        |
| <i>Inst.</i> | ... <i>ânē</i>       | <i>ânre</i> | <i>ânē</i>  | <i>ânum</i>       |

## 138. NUMERALS.

| Cardinals.                          | ORMULUM.                      | Ordinals.   | Symbols. |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|----------|
| 1. ân                               | ân                            | { forma (fruma, âresta) }<br>{ fyrsta, § 129 }                            | I.       |
| 2. { tpegen, tpâ, tu }<br>{ < tpa } | twâ                           | ôder  | II.      |
| 3. þrí, þreô                        | þreo, þré                     | þrida   | III.     |
| 4. feôper                           | fowwerr                       | feôperða (feôrða)   | IV.      |
| 5. fif                              | fif                           | fifta   | V.       |
| 6. six                              | sexe                          | sixta   | VI.      |
| 7. seofon (syfone)                  | { se(o)fenn, }<br>{ (-ffne) } | seofoda (-eða)  | VII.     |
| 8. eahta                            | chhte                         | eahtoda (-eða)  | VIII.    |
| 9. nigon (-en)                      | niþhenn                       | nigoda (-eða)   | IX.      |
| 10. tŷn, tèn                        | têne, (tenn)                  | teôða   | X.       |
| 11. endleofan (ellefne)             |                               | endleofta (eo > u, y, e)  | XI.      |
| 12. tpelf                           | twelf                         | tpelfta   | XII.     |
| 13. þreôttŷne                       | þrittêne                      | þreôteôða   | XIII.    |
| 14. feôpertŷne                      |                               | feôperteôða   | XIV.     |
| 15. fiftŷne                         |                               | fifteôða  | XV.      |
| 16. sixtŷne                         | sextêne                       | sixteôða  | XVI.     |
| 17. seofontŷne                      |                               | seofonteôða   | XVII.    |
| 18. eahtatŷne                       |                               | eahtateôða  | XVIII.   |
| 19. nigontŷne                       |                               | nigonteôða  | XIX.     |
| 20. tpêntig                         | twenntiþ                      | tpêntigôða  | XX.      |
| 21. ân and tpêntig                  |                               | { ân and tpêntigôða }<br>{ tpêntigôða and forma }                         | XXI.     |
| 30. þritig, þrittig                 | þrittiþ                       | þritigôða   | XXX.     |
| 40. feôpertig                       | fowwerttiþ                    | feôpertigôða  | XL.      |
| 50. fiftig                          | fifftiþ                       | fiftigôða   | L.       |
| 60. sixtig                          | sixtiþ                        | sixtigôða   | LX.      |
| 70. hundseofontig                   | seofenntiþ                    | hundseofontigôða  | LXX.     |
| 80. hundeahtatig                    |                               | hundeahtatigôða   | LXXX.    |
| 90. hundnigontig                    |                               | hundnigontigôða   | XC.      |
| 100. { hundteôntig }<br>{ hund }    | hundredd                      | hundteôntigôða  | C.       |
| 101. hund and ân                    |                               | { ân and hundteônti- }<br>{ gôða }<br>{ hundteôntigôða and }<br>{ forma } | CI.      |

| Cardinals.            | FORMULUM. | Ordinals.           | Symbols. |
|-----------------------|-----------|---------------------|----------|
| 110. hundendleofantig |           | hundendleofantigôða | CX.      |
| 120. hundtpeftig      |           | hundtpeftigôða      | CXX.     |
| 130. hund and þrittig |           | hund and þritigôða  | CXXX     |
| 200. tpa hund         |           | tpa hundteôntigôða  | CC.      |
| 1000. þúsend          | þúsennde  | (not found.)        | M.       |

(a.) The order of combined numbers is indicated by the examples. The substantive defined is oftenest placed next the largest of the numbers.

(b.) Combined numbers are sometimes connected by *êac* (added to) or *and* governing a dative: *þridða êac tpêntigum* = 23d; sometimes by the next greater ten and *pana, las*, or *bútan*: *ânes pana þrittig*, thirty less one; *tpâ las XXX*, two less than thirty; *XX bútan ân*, § 393.

(c.) For *hund-* from 70 to 120, see § 139, *e*; indefinites, § 136, 2.

(d.) The unaccented syllables often suffer precession, sometimes syncope, often cacography.

# DECLENSION.

141. CARDINALS.—1, *ân*, is declined, § 136.

|            |                        |                  |                      |
|------------|------------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| N., A., V. | 2, tpegen tpâ tu < tpa | 3, þrí (-ý, -ie) | þreô þreô (-iâ, -iô) |
| Gen. ....  | tpegrâ, tpegâ          |                  | þreôrâ               |
| D., Inst.. | tpâm > tpâm            |                  | þrím (-ým)           |

Like *tpegen* decline *begen*, *bá*, *bu*, both.

4-19.—Cardinals from *feóper* to *tpelf*, and from *þreô-týne* to *nigon-týne*, are used as indeclinable, but are also declined like *i-*stem nouns of the First Declension (*byre*, § 84), oftenest when used as substantives: nom. acc. voc. *feópere*, gen. *feóperá*, dat. inst. *feóperum*. Such forms of *eahta* are not found. *Týne* < *teón*, umlaut, § 32, 2.

(a.) Those in *-týne* have also sometimes a neut. nom. and acc. in *-u* > *-o*, or *-a*: *fiftýn-u*, *-o*, *-a* (fifteen); *þreóteno* (=thirteen). (*ý* > *î* > *e*.)

(b.) They are quasi-adjectives like *Dene*, § 86.

20-120.—Forms in *-tig* are declined as singular neuter nouns: *þrittig* (thirty), gen. *þritiges*; or, as adjectives, have plural gen. *-rá*, dat. *-um*: *þritigrá*, *þritigum*.

100-1000.—*Hund*, n., is declined like *pord*, § 73; *hundred* and *þúsend*, like *scip*, § 70; pl. *þúsend-u*, *-o*, *-e*, *-a* (Psa. lxxvii, 17), § 393.

142. ORDINALS have always the regular weak forms of the adjective, except *óder* (second), always strong. Indefinites, § 136, 2.

143. MULTIPLICATIVES are found in *-feald* (fold): *ánfeald*, simple: *tpífeald*, two-fold; *þúsend-mælum*, thousandfoldly.

144. DISTRIBUTIVES may be expressed by repeating cardinals, or by a dative: *seofon and seofon*, seven by seven; *bi tpám*, by twos.

145. In answer to *how often*, numeral adverbs are used, or an ordinal or cardinal with *sít* (time): *æne*, once; *tpípa* (*tpíga*), twice; *þrípa* (*þríga*), thrice; *þriddan sít*, the third time; *feóper sítum*, four times.

146. For adverbs of division the cardinals are used, or ordinals with *dæl*: *on þreo*, in three (parts); *seofedan dæl*, seventh part.

147. An ordinal before *healf* (half) numbers the whole of which the half is counted: *hê pæs þá tpá geâr and þridde healf*, he was there two years and (the) third (year) half =  $2\frac{1}{2}$  years. The whole numbers are usually understood: *hê ricsóde nigonteóde healf geâr*, he reigned half the nineteenth year =  $18\frac{1}{2}$  years. A similar idiom is used in German and Scandinavian.

148. *Sum*, agreeing with a numeral, is indefinite, as in English: *sume tén geâr*, some ten years, more or less; limited by the genitive of a cardinal it is a partitive of eminence: *códe cahta sum*, he went one of eight = with seven attendants or companions.

## VERB.

149. The notion signified by a verb root may be predicated of a subject or uttered as an interjection of command, or (2) it may be spoken of as a substantive fact or as descriptive of some person or thing. In the first case proper verb stems are formed, or auxiliaries used, to denote time, mode, and voice; and suffixes (personal endings) are used to indicate the person and number of the subject: thus is made up the verb proper or finite verb. In the second case a noun stem is formed, and declined in cases as a substantive or adjective.

150. TWO VOICES.—The *active* represents the subject as acting, the *passive* as affected by the action. The *active* has inflection endings for many forms, the *passive* only for a participle. Other passive forms help this participle with the auxiliary verbs *eom* (am), *beón*, *pesan*, *peordan*.

(*n*.) The *middle voice* represents the subject as affected by its own action. It is expressed in Anglo-Saxon by adding pronouns, and needs no paradigms.

151. SIX MODES.—The *indicative* states or asks about a fact, the *subjunctive* a possibility; the *imperative* commands or in-



treats; the *infinitives* (and gerunds) are substantives, the *participles* adjectives. Certain forms of possibility are expressed by auxiliary modal verbs with the infinitive. They need separate discussion, and are conveniently called a *potential* mode.

152. FIVE TENSES.—*Present, imperfect, future, perfect, pluperfect.* The present and imperfect have tense stems; the future is expressed by the present, or by aid of *seal* (shall) or *pille* (will); the perfect by aid of the present of *habban* (have) or, with some intransitives, *beôn* (be), *pesan* or *peordan* (be); the pluperfect by aid of the imperfect of *habban*, *beôn*, *pesan*, or *peordan*.

157. CONJUGATION.—Verbs are classified for conjugation by the stems of the imperfect tense.

*Strong Verbs* express tense by varying the root vowel; *weak verbs*, by composition. Strong verbs in the imperfect indicative singular first person have the root vowel *unchanged*, or changed by accent (*progression*), or *contraction* with old reduplication.

| No change.     | <i>Progression.</i> | <i>Contraction.</i> | <i>Composition.</i> |
|----------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| CONJUGATION I. | II., III., IV.      | V.                  | VI.                 |
| a > (æ, ea)    | â, eâ, ô            | eô > ê              | + de > te           |

158. Further subdivision gives the following classes. The Roman numerals give Grimm's numbers. We arrange in alphabetical order of the stem vowels of the imperfect. For the vowels in ( ), see §§ 32, 33, 41.

| STRONG.                |                                |                |                 |           |                        |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------|------------------------|
| Class.                 | Root Vowel.                    | Present.       | Imperfect Sing. | Plur.     | Passive Participle.    |
| 1, X., XI.             | a                              | i (>e, eo)     | a (>æ, ea)      | â (>æ, ê) | e, u > o               |
| 2, XII.                | a                              | i (>e, eo)     | a (>æ, ea)      | u         | u > o                  |
| 3, VIII.               | i                              | î              | â               | i         | i                      |
| 4, IX.                 | u                              | eô, û          | eâ              | u         | o                      |
| 5, VII.                | â                              | a (>ea)        | ô               | ô         | a                      |
| 6, I.-VI.              | a > ea, â, eâ, ê, ô            | eô > ê         | eô > ê          | eô > ê    | a > ea, â, eâ, ê, ô, ô |
| WEAK (§§ 160, 165, d). |                                |                |                 |           |                        |
| 7,                     | affix -ia > -ie > -e > —       | +ede > de > te | +ed > d > t     |           |                        |
| 8,                     | affix -ô > -â; -ia > -ige, -ie | +ôde           | +ôd             |           |                        |

The present has the same radical vowel throughout all the modes, except in the *indic. sing. 2d and 3d persons* of Conj. 1, 3, 4, 5. These, especially if syncopated, retain *i, y* in Conj. 1; and have by i-umlaut *ÿ* in Conj. 3, *e* in Conj. 4, *y, iê, ÿ, or ê* in Conj. 5.

The imperfect has one radical vowel throughout, except in the *indic. sing. 1st and 3d persons* of Conj. 1, 2, 3.

The passive participle retains the root vowel, or, in Conj. 1, 3, has it assimilated, *a* changing to *e, u*, or *o*, and *u* to *o*.

| INDICATIVE PRESENT.                            |     |     | IMPERFECT.                |       | PART. PAST.      |                |
|--|-----|-----|---------------------------|-------|------------------|----------------|
| 1st.   | 2d. | 3d. | SING.                     | PLUR. |                  |                |
| I. <i>ete, it(e)st, it(ed);</i>                |     |     | <i>æt, æton;</i>          |       | <i>eten,</i>     | <i>eat.</i>    |
| <i>sitle, sit(e)st, sit;</i>                   |     |     | <i>sæt, sæton;</i>        |       | <i>ge-seten,</i> | <i>sit.</i>    |
| <i>nime, nim(e)st, nim(e)d;</i>                |     |     | <i>nam, nâmon;</i>        |       | <i>numen,</i>    | <i>take.</i>   |
| <i>stele, stilst, stild;</i>                   |     |     | <i>stæl, stælon;</i>      |       | <i>stolen,</i>   | <i>steal.</i>  |
| <i>spimme, spimst, spimd;</i>                  |     |     | <i>spam, spummon;</i>     |       | <i>spummen,</i>  | <i>swim.</i>   |
| <i>peorde, pyrst, pyrd(ed);</i>                |     |     | <i>peard, purdon;</i>     |       | <i>porden,</i>   | <i>become.</i> |
| II. <i>rise, risest (rist), rised (rist);</i>  |     |     | <i>râs, rison;</i>        |       | <i>risen,</i>    | <i>rise.</i>   |
| <i>stige, stihst, stihd;</i>                   |     |     | <i>stâh, stigon;</i>      |       | <i>stigen,</i>   | <i>ascend.</i> |
| III. <i>sûpe, sÿpst, sÿph;</i>                 |     |     | <i>seâp, supon;</i>       |       | <i>sopen,</i>    | <i>sup.</i>    |
| <i>leôfe, lÿfst, lÿfd;</i>                     |     |     | <i>leâf, lufon;</i>       |       | <i>lofen,</i>    | <i>love.</i>   |
| <i>ceôse, ceôsest (cÿst), ceôsed (cÿst);</i>   |     |     | <i>ceâs, curon;</i>       |       | <i>coren,</i>    | <i>choose.</i> |
| IV. <i>gale, gæl(e)st, gæl(ed);</i>            |     |     | <i>gôl, gôlon;</i>        |       | <i>galen,</i>    | <i>sing.</i>   |
| <i>stande, standest, stande (stent);</i>       |     |     | <i>stôd, stôdon;</i>      |       | <i>standen,</i>  | <i>stand.</i>  |
| <i>sperie, sperest, spered;</i>                |     |     | <i>spôr, spôron;</i>      |       | <i>sporen,</i>   | <i>swear.</i>  |
| <i>hebbe (&lt; hafie), hef(e)st, hêf(e)d;</i>  |     |     | <i>hóf, hōfon;</i>        |       | <i>hafen,</i>    | <i>heave.</i>  |
| V. <i>fealle, feal(e)st (fÿlst), feal(le)d</i> |     |     | <i>feól, feóllon;</i>     |       | <i>feallen,</i>  | <i>fall.</i>   |
| <i>(fÿld, feld);</i>                           |     |     |                           |       |                  |                |
| <i>sâpe, sâpest (sâpst), sâped (sâpd);</i>     |     |     | <i>seôp, seópon;</i>      |       | <i>sâpen,</i>    | <i>sow.</i>    |
| <i>beâte, beâtest (bÿlst), beâted (bÿt);</i>   |     |     | <i>beôt, beôton;</i>      |       | <i>beâten,</i>   | <i>beat.</i>   |
| <i>græte, græte(e)st, græted (grÿt);</i>       |     |     | <i>grêt, grêton;</i>      |       | <i>grâten,</i>   | <i>greet.</i>  |
| <i>pêpe, pêp(e)st, pêp(e)d;</i>                |     |     | <i>peôp, peópon;</i>      |       | <i>pêpen,</i>    | <i>weep.</i>   |
| <i>rôpe, rôpest (rêpst), rôped (rêpd);</i>     |     |     | <i>reôp, reópon;</i>      |       | <i>rôpen,</i>    | <i>row.</i>    |
| VI. <i>nerie, nerest, nered;</i>               |     |     | <i>{ ner(e)de, ner- }</i> |       | <i>nered,</i>    | <i>save.</i>   |
|  |     |     | <i>{ (e)don; }</i>        |       |                  |                |
| <i>lufige, lufâst, lufâd;</i>                  |     |     | <i>lufô-de, -don;</i>     |       | <i>ge-lufôd,</i> | <i>love.</i>   |
| <i>iclle, telest, teled;</i>                   |     |     | <i>teal-de, -don;</i>     |       | <i>teald,</i>    | <i>tell.</i>   |
| <i>sêce, sêcest, sêced;</i>                    |     |     | <i>sôh-te, -ton;</i>      |       | <i>sôht,</i>     | <i>seek.</i>   |

## 164. FIRST CONJUGATION.

## Active Voice.

*niman*, to take.

| Pres. Infinitive. | Imperfect Sing. | Plur.         | Passive Participle. |
|-------------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------------|
| <i>niman;</i>     | <i>nam,</i>     | <i>nâmon;</i> | <i>numen.</i>       |

## INDICATIVE MODE.

## Present (and Future) Tense.

| SINGULAR.                      | PLURAL.                     |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>ic nime, I take.</i>        | <i>pê nimad, we take.</i>   |
| <i>pû nimest, thou takest.</i> | <i>gê nimad, ye take.</i>   |
| <i>hê nimet, he taketh.</i>    | <i>hî nimad, they take.</i> |

Plur. -*ad*, and other plurals, change to -*e* before a subject pronoun.

## Imperfect.

| SINGULAR.                     | PLURAL.                     |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| ic nam, <i>I took.</i>        | pê nâmon, <i>we took.</i>   |
| pû nâme, <i>thou tookest.</i> | gê nâmon, <i>ye took.</i>   |
| hê nam, <i>he took.</i>       | hî nâmon, <i>they took.</i> |

## Future.

*I shall or will take.*

|                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| ic sceal (pille) niman. | pê sculon (pillad) niman. |
| pû scealt (pilt) niman. | gê sculon (pillad) niman. |
| hê sceal (pille) niman. | hî sculon (pillad) niman. |

## Perfect.

| TRANSITIVE FORM.           | INTRANSITIVE FORM.       |
|----------------------------|--------------------------|
| SING. <i>I have taken.</i> | <i>I have (am) come.</i> |
| ic hæbbe numen.            | ic eom cumen.            |
| pû hæfst (hafðst) numen.   | pû eart cumen.           |
| hê hæfðt (hafðt) numen.    | hê is cumen.             |
| PLUR.                      |                          |
| pê habbaðt numen.          | pê sind (sindon) cumene. |
| gê habbaðt numen.          | gê sind (sindon) cumene. |
| hî habbaðt numen.          | hî sind (sindon) cumene. |

## Pluperfect.

|                           |                          |
|---------------------------|--------------------------|
| SING. <i>I had taken.</i> | <i>I had (was) come.</i> |
| ic hæfde numen.           | ic pæs cumen.            |
| pû hæfdest numen.         | pû pære cumen.           |
| hê hæfde numen.           | hê pæs cumen.            |
| PLUR.                     |                          |
| pê hæfdon numen.          | pê pæron cumene.         |
| gê hæfdon numen.          | gê pæron cumene.         |
| hî hæfdon numen.          | hî pæron cumene.         |

OTHER FORMS: *nam, nom; nâmon, -an (â>ô); sceal, seel; scul-on, -un, -an; sceol-on, -un, -an; pille, pile, pilt (i>y); hæbbe, hebbe, habbe, haf-a, -u, -o; hæfest; hæfed; hæbbad; eom, eam; is, ys; sind, sint, sindan (i>y, ie, eo), ear-on, -un.* For *eom* may be used *peorde* or *beôm*; for *pæs, pearð* (§ 178). Imp. plur. *-an, -um, -un, -en, -e*, occur.

## 169. SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## Present Tense.

| SINGULAR.                                | PLURAL                                    |
|--|---|
| ic nime, ( <i>if</i> ) <i>I take.</i>    | pê nimen, ( <i>if</i> ) <i>we take.</i>   |
| þû nime, ( <i>if</i> ) <i>thou take.</i> | gê nimen, ( <i>if</i> ) <i>ye take.</i>   |
| hê nime, ( <i>if</i> ) <i>he take.</i>   | hî nimen, ( <i>if</i> ) <i>they take.</i> |

## Imperfect.

|  |   |
|--|---|
| ic nâme, ( <i>if</i> ) <i>I took.</i>    | pê nâmen, ( <i>if</i> ) <i>we took.</i>   |
| þû nâme, ( <i>if</i> ) <i>thou took.</i> | gê nâmen, ( <i>if</i> ) <i>ye took.</i>   |
| hê nâme, ( <i>if</i> ) <i>he took.</i>   | hî nâmen, ( <i>if</i> ) <i>they took.</i> |

## Future.

(If) *I shall (will) take.*

|                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| ic scyle (pille) niman. | pê scylen (pillen) niman. |
| þû scyle (pille) niman. | gê scylen (pillen) niman. |
| hê scyle (pille) niman. | hî scylen (pillen) niman. |

## Perfect

| TRANSITIVE FORM.                         | INTRANSITIVE FORM.                     |
|--|--|
| SING. ( <i>If</i> ) <i>I have taken.</i> | ( <i>If</i> ) <i>I have (be) come.</i> |
| ic hæbbe numen.                          | ic sî cumen.                           |
| þû hæbbe numen.                          | þû sî cumen.                           |
| hê hæbbe numen.                          | hê sî cumen.                           |
| PLUR.                                    |  |
| pê hæbben numen.                         | pê sîn cumene.                         |
| gê hæbben numen.                         | gê sîn cumene.                         |
| hî hæbben numen.                         | hî sîn cumene.                         |

## Pluperfect.

|   |   |
|---|---|
| SING. ( <i>If</i> ) <i>I had taken.</i> | ( <i>If</i> ) <i>I had (were) come.</i> |
| ic hæfde numen.                         | ic pâre cumen.                          |
| þû hæfde numen.                         | þû pâre cumen.                          |
| hê hæfde numen.                         | hê pâre cumen.                          |
| PLUR.                                   |   |
| pê hæfden numen.                        | pê pâren cumene.                        |
| gê hæfden numen.                        | gê pâren cumene.                        |
| hî hæfden numen.                        | hî pâren cumene.                        |

OTHER FORMS: *scyle*, *scyl-en*, -on, -an, -e (*y* > *i*, *u*, *eo*); *hæbben*, *habban*, *habbon*; *sî*, *sîn* (*i* > *ý*, *ic*, *eó*, *ig*); *pær-en*, -an, -on (*ā* > *ē*). For *sî* may be *beó*, *pese*, *peorde*; for *pære*, *purde*. Plur. -án, -an, -on, -e, occur.

## 172. IMPERATIVE MODE.

SING.

2. *nim*, *take*.

PLUR.

*nimad*, *take*.

## 173. INFINITIVE.

*niman*, *to take*.

## GERUND.

*tô nimanne*, *to take*.

## PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

*nimende*, *taking*.

## PAST PARTICIPLE.

*numen*, *taken*.174. IMPERATIVE STEM *nama*.

| Sanskrit.              | Greek.                               | Gothic.       | O. Saxon.     | O. Norse.     | O. H. G.      |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| SING. — <i>nâma</i>    | <i>νέμε</i> , <i>Latin eme</i>       | <i>nim</i>    | <i>nim</i>    | <i>nem</i>    | <i>nim</i>    |
| PLUR. — <i>nâma-ta</i> | <i>νέμε-τε</i> , <i>Latin emi-te</i> | <i>nimi-þ</i> | <i>nima-d</i> | <i>nemi-d</i> | <i>nema-t</i> |

Plural *-tata* > *ta* > *t* (§ 38) > *d* (shifting, § 41, a). O. F. = A. Sax.

## 175. NOUN FORMS.

1. Infinitive *nam + ana*; 2. Gerund. *nam + ana + ja*.

|               |   |                     |                    |                  |                                     |
|---------------|---|---------------------|--------------------|------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. Dative ... | { <i>nâm-anâj-a</i> } { <i>νέμ-ενν&lt;-εναι</i> } { (§ 79, a) } { (§ 70, a) }                       | <i>nim-an</i>       | <i>nim-an</i>      | <i>nem-a</i>     | <i>nem-an</i>                       |
| 2. (§ 120),   | <i>nâm-anîja</i> , <i>Latin em-endo</i> , <i>O. Saxon nim-annia</i> > <i>-anna</i> .                |                     |                    |                  | <i>nem-enne</i>                     |
| 3. Pr. Part.  | <i>nâma-nt</i> { <i>νέμο-ντ-ος</i> } { <i>Lat. eme-nt-is</i> }                                      | <i>nima-nd(a)-s</i> | <i>nima-nd</i>     | <i>nema-nd-i</i> | <i>nema-nt-i</i>                    |
| 4. P. Part.   | { <i>bhug-nâ</i> } { <i>τέκ-νο-ν (born)</i> } { <i>(Strong.) (bent)</i> } { <i>do-nu-m (gift)</i> } | <i>numa-n-s</i>     | <i>numa-n</i>      | <i>numi-nn</i>   | { <i>ga-nom-</i> } { <i>an-ér</i> } |
| 5. P. Part.   | { <i>na(m)-tâ</i> } { <i>νέμ-η-τό-ς</i> } { <i>(Weak.) (em(p)-tu-s)</i> }                           | <i>nasi-þ(a)-s</i>  | <i>(gi)-neri-d</i> | <i>tal-d-r</i>   | <i>ga-neri-t</i>                    |

(a.) The dative case ending is gone in Teutonic infinitives. § 38.

(b.) Gerund *-enne* > *-ende* (§ 445, 2, *nn* > *nd*, § 27, 5), so in O. N.; M. H. Ger.; Friesic, O. Sax., and O. H. Ger. have a genitive *nim-annias*, *-an-nas* (-es); *nem-ennes*; and M. H. German has gen. *nem-endes*.

(c.) To these stems of the participles are added suffixes contained in the case endings. §§ 104–106.

(d.) The Greek verbals in *-τός* are not counted participles (Hadley, 261, c). Only weak verbs have *-da*, *-da*, in Teutonic. Few verbs have the participle in *-na* in Sanskrit; only relics are found in Greek and Latin, but all the strong verbs use it in Teutonic.(e.) Weak stems in *-ia* and *-ô* have *i*, *e*, *ig* or *ige*, before *-an*, *-anne*, *-end*. § 165, d.

## 176. PERIPHRASTIC CONDITIONAL FORMS.

## POTENTIAL MODE.

Modal verbs *magan*, *cunnan*, *môtan*, *durran*, *pillan*, *sculan*, *pîtan* > *utan*,  
may, can, must, dare, will, shall, let us.

*Present Tense.*

| Indicative Forms.                  |                 | Subjunctive Forms.                |                 |
|------------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------|
| SING.                              |                 |                                   |                 |
| <i>mæg, can, môt, dear</i>         | } <i>niman.</i> | <i>mæge, cunne, môte, durre</i>   | } <i>niman.</i> |
| <i>meaht, canst, môst, dearest</i> |                 | <i>mæge, cunne, môte, durre</i>   |                 |
| <i>mæg, can, môt, dear</i>         |                 | <i>mæge, cunne, môte, durre</i>   |                 |
| PLUR.                              |                 |                                   |                 |
| <i>mâgon, cunnon, môton, dur-</i>  | }               | <i>mâgen, cunnen, môten, dur-</i> | }               |
| <i>ron</i>                         |                 | <i>ren, utan</i>                  |                 |

SING. *Imperfect Tense, Indicative Forms.*

|  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| <i>meahte, cûde, môste, dorste, polde, sc(e)olde</i>             | } <i>niman.</i> |
| <i>meahtest, cûdest, môstest, dorstest, poldest, sc(e)oldest</i> |                 |
| <i>meahte, cûde, môste, dorste, polde, sc(e)olde</i>             |                 |
| PLUR.  |                 |
| <i>meahton, cûdon, môston, dorston, poldon, sc(e)oldon</i>       |                 |

*Imperfect Tense, Subjunctive Forms.*

|  |                 |
|--|-----------------|
| SING. <i>meahte, cûde, môste, dorste, polde, sc(e)olde</i>       | } <i>niman.</i> |
| PLUR. <i>meahten, cûden, môsten, dorsten, polden, sc(e)olden</i> |                 |

## GERUNDIAL FORM.

I am to take = I must or ought to take or be taken.

| SING.          |                      | PLUR.                |
|----------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| <i>ic eom</i>  | } <i>tô nimanne.</i> | <i>pê sind</i>       |
| <i>þu eart</i> |                      | <i>gê sind</i>       |
| <i>hê is</i>   |                      | <i>hî sind</i>       |
|                |                      | } <i>tô numanne.</i> |

## 177. OTHER PERIPHRASTIC FORMS.

1. *eom* (am) + present participle.

|                      |                                       |
|----------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Present.....         | <i>eom, eart, is; sind nimende.</i>   |
| Imperfect.....       | <i>pæs, pære, pæs; pæron nimende.</i> |
| Future .....         | <i>beôm, bist, bið; beôð nimende.</i> |
|                      | <i>sccal pesan nimende.</i>           |
| Infinitive Future... | <i>beôn nimende.</i>                  |

2. *ðon* (do) + infinitive, § 406, a.

OTHER FORMS: *meaht, meahte*, etc. (*ea* > *i*); *mâg-on, -um, -un, -an* (*â* > *æ*); *meahtes; meaht-on, -um, -an, -en, -e* (§§ 166, 170); *can, con; const; cunn-on, -un, -an; cudes; cud-on, -an, -en; môt-on, -um, -un, -an, -en; môt-en, -an, -e; môst-es; môst-um, -on, -an; durre* (*u* > *y*); *durr-on, -an; dorst-on, -en; poldes; pold-on, -um, -un, -an, -e; sc(e)oldes; sc(e)old-on, -un, -an, -en, -e*. Forms of *eom*, *peorde*, and *beôm* interchange (§ 178).

178. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MODE.

SINGULAR.

PLURAL.

Present and Perfect, *I am taken or have been taken.*

|                           |                               |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ic eom* (peorde) numen.   | pê sind(on) (peordad) numene. |
| pû eart (peordest) numen. | gê sind(on) (peordad) numene. |
| hê is (peordet) numen.    | hî sind(on) (peordad) numene. |

Past and Pluperfect, *I was taken or had been taken.*

|                        |                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------|
| ic pâs (peard) numen.  | pê pâron (purdon) numene. |
| pû pâre (purde) numen. | gê pâron (purdon) numene. |
| hê pâs (peard) numen.  | hî pâron (purdon) numene. |

Future.

1. *I shall be taken.*

|                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| ic beô(m)* numen. | pê beôð numene. |
| pû bist numen.    | gê beôð numene. |
| hê bið numen.     | hî beôð numene. |

2. *I shall or will be taken.*

|                              |                                 |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| ic sceal (pille) beôn numen. | pê seulon (pillad) beôn numene. |
| pû scealt (pilt) beôn numen. | gê seulon (pillad) beôn numene. |
| hê sceal (pille) beôn numen. | hî seulon (pillad) beôn numene. |

Perfect, *I have been taken.*

|                         |                               |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------|
| ic eom geporden numen.  | pê sind(on) gepordene numene. |
| pû eart geporden numen. | gê sind(on) gepordene numene. |
| hê is geporden numen.   | hî sind(on) gepordene numene. |

Pluperfect, *I had been taken.*

|                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| ic pæs geporden numen.  | pê pâron gepordene numene. |
| pû pâre geporden numen. | gê pâron gepordene numene. |
| hê pæs geporden numen.  | hî pâron gepordene numene. |

179. SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

Present.

(If) *I be taken.*

| SING.                  | PLUR.                    |
|------------------------|--------------------------|
| ic (pû, hê) beô numen. | pê (gê, hî) beôn numene. |

\* The forms of *peorde*, *eom*, and *beôm* interchange.

Past.

*(If) I were taken.*

|             |             |                           |
|-------------|-------------|---------------------------|
| SING.       |             | PLUR.                     |
| ic (þú, hê) | pâre numen. | pê (gê, hí) pâren numene. |

## 180. IMPERATIVE MODE.

|       |                       |       |                     |
|-------|-----------------------|-------|---------------------|
| SING. | <i>Be thou taken.</i> | PLUR. | <i>Be ye taken.</i> |
|       | pes þú numen.         |       | pesað gê numene.    |

## 181. INFINITIVE.

beôn numen, *to be taken.*

## PARTICIPLE.

numen, *taken.*

## 182. PERIPHRASTIC CONDITIONAL (§ 176).

POTENTIAL MODE.

*Present Tense.*

|       |                   |                    |
|-------|-------------------|--------------------|
| SING. | Indicative Forms. | Subjunctive Forms. |
|       | mæg (&c.)         | māge (&c.)         |
|       | meaht (&c.)       | māge (&c.)         |
|       | mæg (&c.)         | māge (&c.)         |
|       | beôn numen(e).    | beôn numen(e).     |
| PLUR. | māgon (&c.)       | māgen (&c.)        |

*Imperfect.*

|       |                |                |
|-------|----------------|----------------|
| SING. | meahte (&c.)   | meahte (&c.)   |
|       | meahtest (&c.) | meahte (&c.)   |
|       | meahte (&c.)   | meahte (&c.)   |
|       | beôn numen(e). | beôn numen(e). |
| PLUR. | meahton (&c.)  | meahten (&c.)  |

For *beôn* (infinitive) is found *pesan* or *peordan*. The forms interchange of *beô*, *sî*, *pese*, *peorde*; of *pêre*, *purde*; of *pes*, *beô*, *peord*. *Bist*, but ( $i > y$ ); *beô*, *beôd* ( $eô < iô$ ). Ælfric's grammar has indic. pres. *com*, imperf. *pæs*, fut. *beô*, perf. *pæs fulfremedlice* (completely), pluperf. *pæs gcfyrn* (formerly); subjunctive for a wish, pres. *beô gyt* (yet), imperf. *pêre*, pluperf. *pêre fulfremedlice*; for a condition, pres. *com nu* (now), imperf. *pæs*, fut. *beô gyt* (yet); imperative *sî*; infinitive *beôn*.



183. WEAK VERBS.—(CONJUGATION VI.)

*Active Voice.*

| PRES. INFINITIVE.    | IMPERF. INDICATIVE. | PASSIVE PARTICIPLE. |
|----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>nerian, save;</i> | <i>nerede;</i>      | <i>nered.</i>       |
| <i>hýran, hear;</i>  | <i>hýrde;</i>       | <i>hýred.</i>       |
| <i>lufian, love;</i> | <i>lufóde;</i>      | <i>(ge-)lufód.</i>  |

INDICATIVE MODE.

Present (and Future) Tense (§ 165, d).

*I save, hear, love.*

| SINGULAR.                         | PLURAL.                          |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>ic nerie, hýre, lufige.</i>    | <i>pê neriad, hýrad, lufiad.</i> |
| <i>pû nerest, hýrest, lufást.</i> | <i>gê neriad, hýrad, lufiad.</i> |
| <i>hê nered, hýred, lufád.</i>    | <i>hî neriad, hýrad, lufiad.</i> |

Imperfect (§§ 160, 166, 168).

*I saved, heard, loved.*

|  |                                     |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| <i>ic neredē, hýrde, lufóde.</i>       | <i>pê neredon, hýrdon, lufódon.</i> |
| <i>pû neredest, hýrdest, lufódest.</i> | <i>gê neredon, hýrdon, lufódon.</i> |
| <i>hê neredē, hýrde, lufóde.</i>       | <i>hî neredon, hýrdon, lufódon.</i> |

Future (§ 167).

*I shall (will) save, hear, love.*

|                         |   |                           |   |
|-------------------------|---|---------------------------|---|
| <i>ic sceal (pille)</i> | } <i>nerian, hýran,</i><br>} <i>lufian.</i> | <i>pê sculon (pillad)</i> | } <i>nerian,</i><br>} <i>hýran,</i><br>} <i>lufian.</i> |
| <i>pû scealt (pilt)</i> |   | <i>gê sculon (pillad)</i> |   |
| <i>hê sceal (pille)</i> |   | <i>hî sculon (pillad)</i> |   |

Perfect (§ 168).

| TRANSITIVE.                        | INTRANSITIVE.                |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>I have saved, heard, loved.</i> | <i>I have (am) returned.</i> |
| SING.                              |                              |
| ic hæbbe                           | ic eom                       |
| pû hæfst, hafást                   | pû eart                      |
| hê hæfd, hafád                     | hê is                        |
|                                    |                              |
| PLUR.                              |                              |
| pê habbat                          | pê sind (sindon)             |
| gê habbat                          | gê sind (sindon)             |
| hî habbat                          | hî sind (sindon)             |
|                                    |                              |

*Ia, iga, igēa, ga* interchange, and *ie, ige, ge*: *ô* to *â, a, u, e*. For variations of auxiliaries and endings, see corresponding tenses of strong verbs.

## Pluperfect (§ 168).

| TRANSITIVE.                       |                        | INTRANSITIVE.                |              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|------------------------------|--------------|
| <i>I had saved, heard, loved.</i> |                        | <i>I had (was) returned.</i> |              |
| SING.                             |                        |                              |              |
| ic hæfde                          | } nered, hýred, lufód. | ic pæs                       | } gecyrred.  |
| þú hæfdest                        |                        | þú pære                      |              |
| hê hæfde                          |                        | hê pæs                       |              |
| PLUR.                             |                        |                              |              |
| pê hæfdon                         | } nered, hýred, lufód. | pê pæron                     | } gecyrrede. |
| gê hæfdon                         |                        | gê pæron                     |              |
| hî hæfdon                         |                        | hî pæron                     |              |

## 184. SUBJUNCTIVE MODE.

## Present (§ 170).

*(If) I save, hear, love.*

| SINGULAR. |                        | PLURAL. |                           |
|-----------|------------------------|---------|---------------------------|
| ic        | } nerie, hýre, lufige. | pê      | } nerien, hýren, lufigen. |
| þú        |                        | gê      |                           |
| hê        |                        | hî      |                           |

## Imperfect (§ 171).

*(If) I saved, heard, loved.*

|    |                           |    |                             |
|----|---------------------------|----|-----------------------------|
| ic | } neredde, hýrde, lufóde. | pê | } nereden, hýrden, lufóden. |
| þú |                           | gê |                             |
| hê |                           | hî |                             |

## Future (§ 167).

*(If) I shall (will) save, hear, love.*

|                  |                          |                    |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| ic scyle (pille) | } nerian, hýran, lufian. | pê scylen (pillen) | } nerian, hýran, lufian. |
| þú scyle (pille) |                          | gê scylen (pillen) |                          |
| hê scyle (pille) |                          | hî scylen (pillen) |                          |

## Perfect (§ 168).

| TRANSITIVE.                       |                 | INTRANSITIVE.                     |                |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------|-----------------------------------|----------------|
| <i>(If I) have saved, &amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>(If I) have (be) returned.</i> |                |
| SING. hæbbe                       | } nered, hýred, | sē                                | } gecyrred(e). |
| PLUR. hæbben                      |                 | sīn                               |                |

## Pluperfect (§ 168).

|                                  |                 |                                    |                |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|------------------------------------|----------------|
| <i>(If I) had saved, &amp;c.</i> |                 | <i>(If I) had (were) returned.</i> |                |
| SING. hæfde                      | } nered, hýred, | pære                               | } gecyrred(e). |
| PLUR. hæfdon                     |                 | pæren                              |                |



# CONJUGATION OF WEAK VERBS.—WEAK PRESENTS. 127

## 185. IMPERATIVE MODE (§ 174).

*Save, hear, love.*

SING.

2. *nerē, hȳr, lufā.*

PLUR.

*neriad, hȳrad, lufiad.*

## 186. INFINITIVE MODE (§ 175).

*To save, hear, love.*

Present. *nerian* > *nerigan*, *nerigean*, *nergan*; *hȳran*; *lufian* > *lufigan*, *lufigean*.

Gerund. *tō nerianne*, *hȳranne*, *lufianne*.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Saving, hearing, loving.*

Present. *neriende*, *hȳrende*, *lufigende*.

*saved. heard. loved.*

Past.... *nered*, *hȳred*, *(ge-)lufōd*.

187. The special periphrastic forms and the whole passive voice of weak verbs are conjugated with the same auxiliaries as those of strong verbs (§§ 176–182).

## 188. PRESENTS (*Weak*).

(a.) Like *nerian* inflect stems in *-ia* from short roots: *derian*, hurt; *helian*, cover; *hegian*, hedge; *scerian*, apportion; *spyrian*, speer; *sȳlian*, soil; *punian*, thunder, etc.

(b.) But many stems in *-ia* from short roots have compensative gemination of their last consonant where it preceded *i*—(throughout the present, except in the indicative singular second and third, and the imperative singular); *ci* > *ce*, *di* > *de*, *fi* > *fe*, *gi* > *ge*, *li* > *le*, etc.; indicative *leege* (< *legie*), lay, *legest*, *leged*; *leegad* (< *legiad*); subjunctive *leege*, *leegen*; imperative *lege*, *leegad*; infinitive *leegan*; part. pres. *leegende*; part. past *leged*. So *reccan*, reach; *hrecddan*, rescue; *habban*, have; *sellan*, give; *tellan*, tell; *fremman*, frame; *chlynnan*, clang; *dippan*, dip; *cnyssan*, knock; *settan*, set, etc.

(c.) Like *hȳran* inflect stems in *-ia* > *-e* > — from long roots: *dēlan*, deal; *dēman*, deem; *belūpan*, leave; *mēnan*, mean; *sprengan*, spring; *styrman*, storm; *cennan*, bring forth; *cyssan*, kiss, etc. Infinitives in *-can* occur: *sēc-ean*, § 175, c.

(d.) Like *lufian* inflect stems showing -*ō* in the imperfect: *ārian*, honor; *beorhtian*, shine; *cleopian*, call; *hopian*, hope. Past participles have *ō*, *ā*, *e*; *gegearp-ōd*, *-ād*, *-ed*, prepared.

### 189. SYNCOPATED IMPERFECTS (*Weak*).

(a.) Stem -*e* < -*ia* is syncopated after long roots: *cīg-an*, call, *cīg-de*; *dēl-on*, deal, *dēl-de*; *dēm-an*, deem, *dēm-de*; *drēf-an*, trouble, *drēf-de*; *fēd-an*, feed; *hēd-an*, heed; *hȳr-an*, hear; *lēd-an*, lead; *be-lēp-an*, leave; *mān-an*, mean; *nȳd-an*, urge; *rēd-an*, read; *spēd-an*, speed; *spreng-an*, spring, *spreng-de*; *bærn-an*, burn, *bærn-de*; *stȳrm-an*, storm; so *sep-de* and *sep-te*, showed.

(b.) ASSIMILATION.—After a surd, -*d* becomes surd (-*t*). (Surd *p*, *t*, *c* (*x*), *ss*, *h*, not *f* or *s* alone, §§ 17, 30): *rēp-an*, bind, *rēp-te*; *bēt-an*, better, *bēt-te*; *grēt-an*, greet, *grēt-te*; *mēt-an*, meet, *mēt-te*; *drēnc-an*, drench, *drēnc-te*; *lȳx-an*, shine, *lȳx-te*; but *lȳs-an*, release, *lȳs-de*; *fȳs-an*, haste, *fȳs-de*; *rēs-an*, rush, *rēs-de*.

(c.) DISSIMILATION.—The mute *c* becomes continuous (*h*) before -*t*: *tāc-an*, teach, *tāh-te*; *ēc-an*, eke, *ēh-te* and *ēc-te*, 36, 3.

(d.) UMLAUT LOST.—Themes in *ecg*; *ecc*, *ell*; *enc*, *eng*; *ēc*; *yeg*, *ync*, i-umlaut for *aeg*; *acc*, *all*; *anc*, *ang*; *ōc*; *ueg*, *unc*, may retain *a* (> *æ*; *ea*; *o*); *ō*; *u* > *o* in syncopated imperfects (§§ 209–211): *leegan*, lay, *læge*; *reccan*, rule, *reah-te*; *epellan*, kill, *epealde*; *þencan*, think, *þoh-te*; *brengan*, bring, *brohte*; *rēcan*, reckon, *rōhte*; *byegan*, buy, *boh-te*; *þyncan*, seem, *þoh-te*.

(e.) GEMINATION is simplified, and *mn* > *m* (Rule 13, page 10): *cenn-an*, beget, *cen-de*; *clipp-an*, clip, *clip-te*; *cyss-an*, kiss, *cys-te*; *dypp-an*, dip, *dyp-te*; *ēht-an*, pursue, *ēhte*; *fyll-an*, fill, *fyl-de*; *gyrd-an*, gird, *gyrde*; *hredd-an*, rescue, *hredde*; *hyrd-an*, harden, *hyrde*; *hyrt-an*, hearten, *hyrte*; *hæft-an*, bind, *hæfte*; *leeg-an*, lay, *leg-de*; *merr-an*, mar, *mer-de*; *mynt-an*, purpose, *mynte*; *nemn-an*, name, *nem-de*; *rest-an*, rest, *reste*; *riht-an*, right, *rihte*; *scild-an*, guard, *scilde*; *send-an*, send, *sende*; *spill-an*, spill, *spilde*; *sett-an*, set, *sette*; *still-an*, spring, *stil-de*; *stylt-an*, stand astonished, *stylte*; *pemm-an*, spoil, *pem-de*.

(f.) ECTHILIPSIS occurs (*g*): *cēgan*, call, *cēgde*, *cēde*. See § 209.

190. PAST PARTICIPLES are syncopated like imperfects in verbs having lost umlaut, often in other verbs having a surd root (§ 189, b), less often in other verbs: *sellan*, give, *sealde*; *ge-sēc-an*, seek, *ge-sōh-te*, *gesōht*; *sett-an*, set, *sette*, *seted* and *set*; *send-an*, send, *sende*, *sended* and *send*; *heān*, raise, *heād*, raised.

191. PRESENTS.—*Illustrations of Umlaut.*

| Conjugation..... (I.)     | (I.)                 | (I.)                    | (III.)                   | (III.)                  |
|---------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| drepan,<br>strike.        | cuman,<br>come.      | beorgan,<br>guard.      | scûfan,<br>shove.        | creôpan,<br>creep.      |
| SING.— 1. drepe           | cume                 | beorge                  | scûfe                    | creôpe                  |
| 2. {drip(e)st<br>{drepest | {cym(e)st<br>{cumest | {byrhst<br>{beorgest(y) | {scÿf(e)st<br>{scûfest   | {crÿp(e)st<br>{creôpest |
| 3. {drip(e)ð<br>{drepeð   | {cym(e)ð<br>{cumed   | {byrhð<br>{beorged(y)   | {scÿf(e)ð (t)<br>{scûfed | {crÿp(e)ð<br>{creôped   |
| PLUR.— drepað             | cumað                | beorgað                 | scûfað                   | creôpað                 |
| Conjugation... (IV.)      | (IV.)                | (V.)                    | (V.)                     | (V.)                    |
| faran,<br>fare.           | bacan,<br>bake.      | feallan,<br>fall.       | lâcan,<br>leap.          | grôpan,<br>grow.        |
| SING.— 1. fare            | bace                 | fealle                  | lâce                     | grôpe                   |
| 2. {fier(e)st<br>{farest  | {becst<br>{bacest    | {felst<br>{feallest     | {lâcest<br>{lâcest       | {grêpst<br>{grôpest     |
| 3. {fier(e)ð<br>{fareð    | {becð<br>{baced      | {feld<br>{fealled       | {lâc(e)ð<br>{lâced       | {grêpð<br>{grôped       |
| PLUR.— farað              | bacað                | feallað                 | lâcað                    | grôpað                  |

192. *Illustrations of Assimilation.*

| Conjugation.... (I.)      | (I.)                   | (I.)                        | (I.)                        | (I.)                 |
|---------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|
| etan,<br>eat.             | tredan,<br>tread.      | bindan,<br>bind.            | epedan,<br>quoth.           | lesan,<br>collect.   |
| SING.— 1. ete             | trede                  | binde                       | epede                       | lese                 |
| 2. {it(e)st<br>{etest     | {tri(de)st<br>{tredest | {bin(t)st<br>{bindest       | {epist<br>{epedest          | {list<br>{lesest     |
| 3. {ited, it<br>{eted     | {trit<br>{treded (i)   | {bint<br>{binded            | {cpid<br>{epeded            | {list<br>{lesed      |
| PLUR.— etað               | tredað                 | bindað                      | epedað                      | lesað                |
| Conjugation..... (I.)     | (III.)                 | (IV.)                       | (III.)                      | (I.)                 |
| berstan,<br>burst.        | leôgan,<br>lie.        | sleân<<br>sleahan,<br>slay. | fleôn<<br>fleohan,<br>flee. | liegan,<br>lie.      |
| SING.— 1. berste          | leôge                  | sleâ                        | fleô                        | liege                |
| 2. {birst<br>{berstest    | {lÿhst<br>{leôgest     | {slehst (y)<br>{sleagest    | {flÿhst                     | {ligst<br>{licgest   |
| 3. {birst(ed)<br>{bersted | {lÿhð<br>{leôged       | {slehð (y)<br>{sleaged      | {flÿhð                      | {li(g)ð<br>{li(c)ged |
| PLUR.— berstað            | leogað                 | sleâð                       | fleôð                       | liegað               |

|        |                 |                      |                             |                 |
|--------|-----------------|----------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------|
|        | <i>cpedan</i> , | <i>sleahan</i> >     | <i>seahan</i> >             | <i>ceósan</i> , |
|        | quoth.          | <i>sleán</i> , slay. | <i>seón</i> , see.          | choose.         |
| SING.— | <i>cpætt</i>    | <i>slôh</i> (g)      | <i>seah</i>                 | <i>ceás</i>     |
|        | <i>cpæde</i>    | <i>slôge</i>         | <i>sæge</i> , <i>sápe</i>   | <i>cure</i>     |
|        | <i>cpætt</i>    | <i>slôh</i> (g)      | <i>seah</i>                 | <i>ceás</i>     |
| PLUR.— | <i>cpædon</i>   | <i>slôgon</i>        | <i>sægon</i> , <i>sápon</i> | <i>curon</i>    |
| PART.— | <i>cpeden</i>   | <i>slægen</i>        | <i>sepen</i>                | <i>coren</i> .  |

212. PRETERITIVE PRESENTS.—FIRST CONJUGATION.—√*a*.

|                | Indicative Sing.   | Plur.                          | Subjunctive.                                      | Imperat.  | Inf.               | Part. |
|----------------|--|--------------------------------|---|---|--------------------|-------|
|                | 1st & 3d.  | 2d.                            |   |   |                    |       |
| Pres. ....     | <i>mæg</i> , <i>meah-t</i> (i);  | <i>mágon</i> ( <i>æ</i> ) (u); | <i>mæg-e</i> , -en; —;                            | <i>mag-an</i> (u); —;                             |                    |       |
| (§§ 199, 200). |  |                                |   |   |                    |       |
| Imperf. ....   | <i>meah-te</i> (i), <i>meah-ton</i> (i);                               |                                | -te, -ten; am strong, (may),                      | <have grown.                                      |                    |       |
| Pres. (§ 199). | <i>be-neah</i> , —;  | <i>be-nugon</i> ;              | <i>benug-e</i> , -en; —;                          | <i>benugan</i> ?                                  | —;                 |       |
| Imperf. ....   | <i>be-noh-te</i> , -ton (§ 211);                                       |                                | -te, -ten; hold and use                           | <have come to.                                    |                    |       |
| Pres. (§ 201). | <i>an</i> (o), —;  | <i>unnon</i> ;                 | <i>unne</i> , -en; —;                             | <i>unn-an</i> ; ( <i>ge</i> ) <del>unn-en</del> ; |                    |       |
| Imperf. ....   | <i>û-de</i> , -don (Goth. <i>þ</i> irregular), § 37;                   |                                | -de, -den; favor                                  | <have given.                                      |                    |       |
| Pres. (§ 201). | <i>can</i> (o), <i>canst</i> (o);                                      | <i>cunnon</i> ;                | <i>cunne</i> , -en; —;                            | <i>cunn-an</i> ; —;                               |                    |       |
| Imperf. ....   | <i>cû-de</i> , -don (Goth. <i>kunþa</i> ), § 37;                       |                                | -de, -den; know                                   | <have got.  | <i>cûde</i> .      |       |
| Pres. (§ 201). | <i>ge-man</i> (o), -manst; -munon;                                     |                                | -e, -en; <i>gemun</i> , -ad; <i>gemun-an</i> ; —; |   |                    |       |
| Imperf. ....   | <i>ge-munde</i> , -don;  |                                | -de, -den; remember                               | <have called to mind.                             |                    |       |
| Pres. (§ 203). | <i>sc(e)al</i> ( <i>scel</i> ), <i>sc(e)alt</i> ; <i>scul-on</i> (eo); |                                | { <i>scul-e</i> , en } —;                         | <i>sculan</i> ; —;                                |                    |       |
|                |  |                                | { (eo, y, i); }                                   |   |                    |       |
| Imperf. ....   | <i>sc(e)ol-de</i> (io), -don;  |                                | -de, -den; shall                                  | <ought  | <have got in debt. |       |
| Pres. (§ 204). | <i>d(e)ar</i> , <i>d(e)arst</i> ; <i>durr-on</i> ;                     |                                | -e, -en (y); —;                                   | <i>durr-an</i> ; —;                               |                    |       |
| Imperf. ....   | <i>dors-te</i> , -ton (Goth. <i>dauars-ta</i> );                       |                                | -te, -ten; dare                                   | <have fought.                                     |                    |       |
| Pres. (§ 204). | <i>þ(e)arf</i> , <i>þ(e)arf-t</i> ; <i>þurf-on</i> ;                   |                                | <i>þurfe</i> , -en (y); —;                        | <i>þurf-an</i> ; —;                               |                    |       |
| Imperf. ....   | <i>þorf-te</i> , -ton;   |                                | -te, -ten; need                                   | <have worked (opus est).                          |                    |       |

SECOND CONJUGATION (§ 205).—√*i*; *îgan*, not found, *pitan*, § 205.

|           |                           |               |                       |                                    |
|-----------|---------------------------|---------------|-----------------------|------------------------------------|
| Pres. ... | <i>âh</i> , <i>âhst</i> ; | <i>âgon</i> ; | <i>âg-e</i> , -en; —; | <i>âgan</i> , -ne; <i>âgende</i> ; |
| Imperf..  | <i>âh-te</i> , -ton;      |               | -te, -ten; own        | <have earned or taken.             |

*náh* = (*ne* + *âh*), &c., not o.n.

|           |  |  |  |
|-----------|--|--|--|
| Pres. ... | <i>pât</i> , <i>pâst</i> ( <i>æ</i> ); | <i>piton</i> ;   | <i>pit-e</i> , -en; <i>pit-e</i> , -ad; <i>pitan</i> (y)-ne; <i>pitén</i> , -de;                             |
| Imperf..  | <i>pis-te</i> (y), -ton;               | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{pis-se, -son,} \\ \S\S 36, 3; 35, \\ \textit{B, pestan;} \end{array} \right\}$ | $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{-te, -se,} \\ \textit{-ten, -sen;} \end{array} \right\}$ know < have seen. |

|           |   |                        |                                       |
|-----------|---|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Pres. ... | <i>nât</i> (= <i>ne</i> + <i>pât</i> ), <i>nyton</i> (e); | <i>nyt-e</i> , -en; —; | <i>nitan</i> (y); <i>nyten</i> , -de; |
| Imperf..  | <i>nyste</i> , <i>nysse</i> ; <i>nyston</i> (&c.);        |                        | not know.                             |

THIRD CONJUGATION (§ 206).—√*u*; *dûgan* not found.

|           |                               |                |                        |                                 |
|-----------|-------------------------------|----------------|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| Pres. ... | <i>deáh</i> (g), —;           | <i>dugon</i> ; | <i>dug-e</i> , -en; —; | <i>dugan</i> ; <i>dugende</i> ; |
| Imperf..  | <i>doh-te</i> , -ton (§ 211); |                | -te, -ten; is fit      | <has grown.                     |

FOURTH CONJUGATION (§ 207).— $\sqrt{a}$ ; *matan* not found.

| Indicative Sing.                       | Plur.          | Subj.               | Imp.               | Infinitive     | Part. |
|--|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|----------------|-------|
| 1st & 3d. 2d.                          |                |                     |                    |                |       |
| Pres. ... <i>môt, môt</i> ;            | <i>môton</i> ; | <i>môt-e, -en</i> ; | —;                 | <i>môtan</i> ; | —;    |
| Imperf. <i>môs-te, -ton</i> (§ 36, 3); |                | <i>-te, -ten</i> ;  | is meet < has met. |                |       |

Grimm takes *beô*, be, for a præteritive present from a *bûan*, to dwell, of the Fifth Conjugation.

From an imperfect subjunctive of the Second Conjugation (Goth. *viljau* <  $\sqrt{vil}$ , inflected like *nemjau*, § 171) arise

Pres. ... *pille, pilt*; *pillad(y)*; *pill-e, -en*; *-e, -at*; *pill-an*; *-ende*;  
Imperf. *pol-de, -don* (Goth. *vilda*); *-de, -den*; will < have wished.

Pres. ... *nelle, nelt*; *nellad(y, i)*; *-e, -en*; *-e, -ad*; *-an*; *-ende*;  
Imperf. *nol-de, -don, &c.* *ne + pille*, will not.

*pi* > *po*, assimilation (§ 35, 2, a); *i* > *e*, a-umlaut; *pi* > *y*, §§ 32, 23; *ll* > *l*.

## 213.—II. VERBS WITHOUT CONNECTING VOWEL (Relics of Sanskrit 2d Class, § 158):

(1.) The common forms of the substantive verb are from three roots:  $\sqrt{as}$ ,  $\sqrt{bhu}$ ,  $\sqrt{vas}$ .

| (a.)—    | Sanskrit. | Greek.         | Latin.   | Gothic.    | O. Saxon.  | Anglo-Saxon. | O. Norse.          |
|----------|-----------|----------------|----------|------------|------------|--------------|--------------------|
| Stem,    | as, s     | es             | es, s    | is, s      | is, s      | is, ir, s ;  | ar<br>er           |
| SINO.—1. | ús-mi     | ei-mi > es-mi  | *s-u-m   | i-m < is-m | —          | eo-m         | ea-m<br>e-m < er-m |
| 2.       | ús-(s)l   | es-si, ei      | es-      | is-        | —          | —            | ear-t<br>er-t      |
| 3.       | ús-ti     | es-ti          | es-t     | is-t       | is-t       | is-          | —<br>er-           |
| PLUR.—1. | *s-más    | es-mév         | *s-u-mus | —          | *s-ind     | *s-ind(on)   | ear-on<br>er-u-m   |
| 2.       | *s-thá    | es-ré          | es-tis   | —          | *s-ind     | *s-ind(on)   | ear-on<br>er-u-ð   |
| 3.       | *s-ánti   | es-ánti, e-iei | *s-unt   | *s-ind     | *s-ind(un) | *s-ind(on)   | ear-on<br>er-u     |

*As* > *s*, compensation, gravitation (§§ 37, 38); *as* > *is*, precession (§ 38); *ys* < *is*, bad spelling; *s* > *r*, shifting (§ 41, 3, b); *irm* > (*corm*) > *com*, *arm* > (*earm*) *cam*, breaking (§ 33); second person *-s* and *-t* (§ 165); *nt* > *nd*, shifting (§ 19), *nt* is often found. *Seond-on, -un* (*ie, y*), u-umlaut? (§ 32); *-on* in *earon* (O. Norse *er-u-m*) (§ 166, a); in *sind-on*, a double plural through conformation (§ 40); *aron, earon*, are rare in West Saxon.

The subjunctive (Sansk. \*s-já-m, Greek *es-în-v*, Lat. \*s-iê-m > *sim*, Goth. \*s-ija-u, O. H. Ger., O. Sax., Ang.-Sax. \*s-i, O. Norse \*s-ê) is inflected like the imperfect given in § 171. Anglo-Saxon has also *sî* > *sig* (dissimilated gemination, § 27) > *sie, seô* (a peculiar progression, § 25) > *sý* (bad spelling); so plur. *sîn, sîen, seôn, sýn*. The subjunctive often has the force of an imperative, and is given as the imperative in Ælfric's grammar.

(b.)  $\sqrt{bhu}$ , be. Sansk. *bhav-âmi*, Greek *ph-v*, Lat. *fu-i*, correspond in form to Goth. *báu-an*, Ang.-Sax. *bû-an*, dwell. From the same root are found forms without a connecting vowel in Ang.-Sax., O. Sax., O. H. Ger. In O. Sax. are only *biu-m, bi-st*; in O. H. Ger. *pi-m, pi-s*, —, plur. *pi-rumes, pi-rit, pi-run* (*r* < *s* <  $\sqrt{as}$ ). Ang.-Sax. has *beô-(m)* (*iô*), *bi-st* (*y*), *bi-t* (*y*), plur. *beôut* (*iô*), and a present subjunctive, imperative, and infinitive, with the

common endings;  $eô > \hat{y} > y > i$ , umlaut, precession, and shifting (§§ 32, 38, 41).

(c.)  $\sqrt{vas} > vis$  (ablaut) is inflected in the First Conjugation, §§ 199, 197, but the present indicative forms are so rare that they are not given in the grammars.

#### PARADIGMS FOR PRACTICAL USE.

##### PRESENT :

| SING.—    | Indicative.            | Subjunctive.             | Imperative.         | Infinitive.   | Participle.     |
|-----------|------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------|---------------|-----------------|
| <i>ic</i> | <i>eom, beô(m);</i>    | <i>sî, beô, pese;</i>    |                     |               |                 |
| <i>hû</i> | <i>eart, bist;</i>     | <i>sî, beô, pese;</i>    | <i>beô, pes;</i>    |               |                 |
| <i>hê</i> | <i>is, bid;</i>        | <i>sî, beô, pese;</i>    |                     | <i>beôn,</i>  |                 |
| PLUR.—    |                        |                          |                     | or            | <i>pesende.</i> |
| <i>pê</i> | <i>sind(on), beôd;</i> | <i>sîn, beôn, pesen;</i> |                     | <i>pesan;</i> |                 |
| <i>gê</i> | <i>sind(on), beôd;</i> | <i>sîn, beôn, pesen;</i> | <i>beôd, pesad;</i> |               |                 |
| <i>hî</i> | <i>sind(on), beôd;</i> | <i>sîn, beôn, pesen;</i> |                     |               |                 |

##### IMPERFECT :

###### SING.—

|           |              |              |                  |
|-----------|--------------|--------------|------------------|
| <i>ic</i> | <i>pæs;</i>  | <i>pære;</i> |                  |
| <i>hû</i> | <i>pære;</i> | <i>pære;</i> |                  |
| <i>hê</i> | <i>pæs;</i>  | <i>pære;</i> | <i>ge-pesen.</i> |

###### PLUR.—

|                   |               |               |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|
| <i>pê, gê, hî</i> | <i>pæron;</i> | <i>pæren;</i> |
|-------------------|---------------|---------------|

The negative *ne* often unites with forms beginning with a vowel or *p*: *neom* = *ne* + *eom*; *nîs*; *næs* = *ne* + *pæs*, p. p. *nærende* < *ne pærende*, etc.

(2.)  $\sqrt{dha}$ , place: Sansk. *da-dhā-mi*, Greek *τι-θη-μι*, Goth. —, O. Sax. *dô-n*, O. H. Ger. *tuo-n*, do. Anglo-Saxon imperfect from reduplicated theme *dad*;  $a > \varpi$  (ablaut, § 199)  $> y > i$ , irregular weakening. § 168.

|          | Indicative Sing.            | Plur.           | Subj.             | Imperat.       | Inf.         | Participle.        |
|----------|-----------------------------|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|--------------|--------------------|
| Pres. .. | <i>dô, dê-st, dê-d;</i>     | <i>dô-d;</i>    | <i>dô, -n;</i>    | <i>dô, -d;</i> | <i>dô-n;</i> | <i>do-nde.</i>     |
| Imperf.  | <i>did-e (y), -est, -e;</i> | <i>-on (x);</i> | <i>-e (x), n;</i> |                |              | <i>dô-n, dê-n.</i> |

(3.)  $\sqrt{ga}$ , go: Sansk. *g'i-gâ-mi*, Greek *βί-βη-μι*, Goth. *gaggan*, O. Sax. *gâ-n*, O. H. Ger. *gê-n*. Imperfect from  $\sqrt{i}$  (Sansk. *ê'-mi*, Greek *ει-μι*, Lat. *i-re*, go, § 158, a)  $>$  Goth. *i-ddja*, weak form strengthened.

|          |                           |                    |                |                |                 |
|----------|---------------------------|--------------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| Pres. .. | <i>gâ, gâ-st, gâ-d;</i>   | <i>gât;</i>        | <i>gâ, -n;</i> | <i>gâ, -d,</i> | <i>gâ-n;</i>    |
| Imperf.  | <i>eô-de, -dest, -de;</i> | <i>-don (§37);</i> |                |                | <i>ge-gâ-n.</i> |

From the same root are the nasalized forms *gangan*, imperf. *geông, gêng*, *giêng* (§ 208, b); *geongan* (§ 201); and *gengan*, imperf. *gengde*.

214. REDUPLICATE PRESENTS (Relics of Sanskrit 3d Class, § 158): *gangan* <  $\sqrt{ga} > ga-gâ-mi$ , go (§ 213); so *hangan*, *standan*, § 216).

215. STEMS IN *-ia* of strong verbs (Relics of Sanskrit 4th Class, § 158): *friege*, inquire, etc. (§ 199); *sperie*, swear, etc. (§ 207, d).



## PART III.

### SYNTAX.

271. **Syntax** is the doctrine of grammatical combinations of words. It treats of the use of the etymological forms in discourse—their agreement, government, and arrangement.

#### SIMPLE COMBINATIONS.

272. There are four simple combinations: the *predic'ative*, *attributive*, *objective*, and *adverbial*.

##### 273.—I. **Predicative**

=*nominative substantive* + *agreeing verb*;

=*nominative substantive* + *agreeing predicate noun*;

=*nominative substantive* + *predicate adverb*.

*gold glisnád*, gold glistens; *gold is beorht*, gold is bright;

*Ælfréd wæs cyning*, Alfred was king; *ic eom hér*, I am here.

(a.) This is a combination between a **subject**, of which something is said (= *gold*, *Ælfréd*, *ic*), and a **predicate**, which is said of the subject (= *glisnád*, *beorht*, *cyning*, *hér*).

(b.) **Copula**.—The sign of predication is the stem-ending of a notional verb (= *á* in *glisnád*), or is a relational verb (*is*, *wæs*, *eom*). The substantive verb, when so used, is called the *copula*—a good name for any sign of predication. **Copulative** verbs take a predicate noun.

(c.) *Quasi-predicative* is the relation between the implied subject and predicate in a *quasi-clause*. § 278, d.

##### 274.—II. **Attributive** = *agreeing noun* + *substantive*; = *genitive substantive* + *substantive*.

*gôð cyning*, good king; *Ælfréd ædeling*, Alfred the prince;  
*Englâ land*, land of the Angles.

(a.) This combination expresses the relation of **subject** + **attribute** as taken for granted. The leading substantive is called the

**subject**, that to which the attribute belongs (*cyning*, *Ælfréd*, *land*); an **attributive** is the agreeing adjective (*gôð*), or genit. substantive (*Englâ*); an **appositive** is the agreeing substantive (*ædeling*).

(b.) The sign of this relation is the agreeing case-endings, or the attributive genitive ending, or a preposition (§ 277, 2).

275.—III. **Objective** = *verb* + *governed noun*.  
= *adjective* + *governed noun*.

*ic huntige heortás*, I hunt harts; *hê sylt him hors*, he sells him a horse; *gilpes þú gyrnest*, thou wishest fame; *þære fêhte hê gefeah*, he rejoiced at the vengeance; *hî macað hine (tô) cynninge*, they make him king; *hpî segst þû mē gôdne*, why callest thou me good? *beôð gemindige Lodes wifes*, remember Lot's wife.

(a.) This combination expresses the relation of an *act* or *quality* to its *completing notional object*.

**Objective** verbs or adjectives are those which need such object (*huntige*, etc.).

**Subjective** need no such object (*ic slæpe*, I sleep).

**Transitive** verbs have a suffering object (*huntige*, *syld*, *macað*, etc.).

**Intransitive** have no suffering object (*gyrnest*, *gefeah*).

The completing object may be

**suffering** (= *direct*), an accusative merely affected (*heortás*, *hors*, *hine*, *mē*);

**dative** (= *indirect* = *personal*), a receiver to or for whom is the act (*him*);

**genitive**, suggesting or exciting the act (*gilpes*, *fêhte*, *wifes*);

**factive**, a product or result in fact or thought (*cynninge*, *gôdne*).

(b.) The sign of relation is the case-ending or a preposition.

(c.) Many Anglo-Saxon verbs require an object, when the English by which we translate them do not. Many objects conceived as *exciting* in Anglo-Saxon are conceived as *suffering* in English; many as merely adverbial.

(d.) The factitive object often has a quasi-predicative relation to the suffering object, agreeing with it like a predicate noun (*mē + gôdne*). Such clauses are nearly equivalent to two (why sayest thou that I am good?).

276.—IV. **Adverbial** = *verb* + *adverb* or *adverbial phrase*.  
= *adjective* + *adverb* or *adverbial phrase*.  
= *adverb* + *adverb* or *adverbial phrase*.

*ic gâ út*, I go out; *ic singe ælcê dæg*, I sing each day; *þe sprecað gepemmodlice*, we speak corruptly; *hê com mid þâ fêmman*, he came with the woman; *mid sorgum libban*, to live having cares; *hpî fandige gē mîu*, why tempt ye me? *muclê mâ man is sceâpe betera*, man is much (more) better than a sheep.

(a.) This combination is between an *act* or *quality* and its *unessential relations*. The most common relations are **place** (*út*), **time** (*ælcê dæg*), **manner** (*gepemmodlice*), **co-existence** (*mid fêmman*, *mid sorgum*), **cause** (*hpî*), **intensity** (*muclê*, *mâ*, *sceâpe*).

(b.) The sign is an adverbial ending, case-ending, or preposition.

(c.) The *adverbial* combination is given by Becker as a subdivision of the *objective*, but the linguistic sense of the Indo-European races uniformly recognizes the adverb as a separate part of speech.

277. **Equivalents of the Noun and Adverb** in the combinations:

(1.) For a **SUBSTANTIVE** may be used a *substantive noun* or *pronoun*, an *adjective* or any of its equivalents, an *infinitive*, a *clause*, any *word* or *phrase* viewed merely as a thing.

(2.) For an **ADJECTIVE** may be used an *adjective noun* or *pronoun*, an *article* (attributively), a *participle*, a *genitive substantive*, an *adverb*, a *preposition with its case*, a *relative clause*.

(3.) For an **ADVERB** may be used an *oblique case* of a noun with or without a preposition, a *phrase*, a *clause*.

### SENTENCES.

278. A **Sentence** is a thought in words. It may be **declarative**, an assertion, *indicative, subjunctive, or potential*; **interrogative**, a question, *indicative, subjunctive, or potential*; **imperative**, a command, exhortation, entreaty; a species of **exclamatory**, an expanded interjection. §§ 149–151.

(a.) A **clause** is *one finite verb* with its subject, objects, and all their attributives and adjuncts. Its *essential part* is its predicative combination. The (*grammatical*) subject of the predicative combination, its attributives and adjuncts, make up the *logical* subject of the clause; the *grammatical* predicate and its objects with their attributives and adjuncts make up the *logical* predicate.

(b.) A **subordinate** clause enters into grammatical combination with some *word* in another (**principal**) clause; **co-ordinate** clauses are coupled as wholes.

(c.) The sign of relation between clauses is a relative or conjunction.

(d.) **Quasi-clauses**. — (1) *Infinitives, participles, and factitive* objects mark quasi-predicative combinations, and each has its quasi-clause. (2) *Interjections and vocatives* are exclamatory quasi-clauses.

279. A **Sentence** is *simple, complex, or compound*.

280. A **simple** sentence is *one independent* clause.

#### I. A predicative combination.

**Verb** for predicate: *fiscerās fisciāt*, fishers *fish*.

**Adjective**: *God is gōd*, God is *good*.

**Genitive**: *tōl Cæsares is*, tribute is *Cæsar's*.

**Substantive**: *Cædmon pæs leóðpyrhta*, Cædmon was a *poet*.

**Adverb**: *pē sind hēr*, we are *here*.

**Adverbial**: *God is in heofenum*, God is *in heaven*.

**Subject indefinite**: (*hit*) *snīpet*, it *snows*; *mē þyrst*, me it *thirsteth*.

## II. Clause with attributive combination.

**Adjective attribute:** *gôð gold glisnâð*, good gold glistens.

**Genitive:** *folces stemn is Godes stemn*, folk's voice is God's voice.

**Appositive:** *pê cildra sind ungelæwede*, we children are untaught.

## III. Clause with objective combination.

**Direct object:** *Cædmon porhte leôðsangâs*, Cædmon made poems.

**Dative:** *læn mē þrī hlāfâs*, give me three loaves.

**Genitive:** *þæt pif áhlôh drihtnes*, the woman laughed at the lord.

**Factitive:** *Simônem hē nemde Petrum*, Simon he named Peter.

## IV. Clause with adverbial combination.

**Place:** *ic gâ út*, I go out.

**Time:** *ic gâ út on dægrêd*, I go out at dawn.

**Manner:** *se cyning scrýt mē pel*, the king clothes me well.

**Co-existence:** *mid sorgum ic libbe*, I live with cares.

**Cause:** *hē hâs is for cylde*, he is hoarse from cold; *se cnapa þýpát oxan mid gadisenê*, the boy drives oxen with an iron goad.

281.—V. Abridged complex sentence. Clause containing a quasi-clause. § 278, *d*.

**Infinitive:** *túc ús spreca*n, teach us to speak.

**Factitive:** *hpî segst þú mē gôðne*, why callest thou me (to be) good?

**Participle** (adjectival): *ic hæbbe sumne cnapan, þýpendne oxan*, I have a boy, (driving) who drives oxen; (adverbial, gerund), *Boetius gebæd singende*, Boethius prayed singing; (absolute), *þínre durâ belocenre, bide þínne fæder*, thy door having been locked, pray thy father.

282.—VI. Abridged compound sentence (§ 284). Verbs > verb.

**Compound subject:** *hē and seô s'rgad*, he and she sing.

**Compound predicate:** *hē is gôð and pîs*, he is good and wise; *seô lufâð hinc and mē*, she loves him and me.

283. A **complex** sentence is one *principal* clause with its *subordinate* clause or clauses. § 278, *b*. The subordinate may be a

**Substantive:** (subject), *is sægd þæt hē com*, that he came is said; (object), *ic pāt þæt hē com*, I wot that he came; (appositive), *ic com tō þam, þæt hē pære gefulpôð*, I came for this, that he might be baptized.

**Adjective:** *stæf-craeft is seô cæg, þe þêrá bôcâ andgit unlycd*, grammar is the key, that unlocks the sense of the books.

**Adverb:** (place), *hpider þú gæst*, ic gâ, I go whither thou goest; (time), *ic gâ hpæenne þú gæst*, I go when thou goest; (manner), *þú spræce spâ spâ ân stunt pîf*, thou spakest as a stupid woman speaks; (intensity),

*beôð gleápe spá næðran*, be wise *as serpents*; *leófre is hlehhhan þonne grætan*, it is better to laugh *than cry*; (cause = efficient, motive, means, argument, condition [protasis to an apodosis], concession, purpose): *hit þunrát forþam God pilt*, it thunders *because God wills*; *pacíad, forþam þe gē nyton þone dag*, watch, *because ye know not the day*; *Onsend Higeláce, gif mec hild nime*, (protasis) *if me battle take*, (apodosis) send to Higelac, etc. Co-existence is usually in an abridged participial clause (§ 281).

284. A **compound** sentence is a number of *co-ordinate* clauses. § 278, *b*.

**Copulative**: *ic gā út and ic geocie oxan*, I go out *and* I yoke oxen.

**Adversative**: *fýr is gôð þegn, ac is frécne fréa*, fire is a good servant, *but* is a bad master; *ne nom hē mā, þeáh hē monige geseah*, he took no more, *though* he saw many.

**Disjunctive**: *ic singe odde ic ræde*, I sing *or* I read.

**Causal**: *forþý gē ne gehýrad, forþam þe gē ne synd of Gode*, *therefore* ye do not hear, (*for this that*) *because* ye are not of God.

## 482. PRINCIPAL RULES OF SYNTAX.

### SUBSTANTIVES.

#### *Agreement.*

I. A **predicate** noun denoting the same person or thing as its **subject**, agrees with it in *case*, § 286.

II. An **appositive** agrees in *case* with its **subject**, § 287.

### NOMINATIVE CASE.

III. The **subject** of a *finite* verb is put in the **nominative**, § 288.

### VOCATIVE CASE.

IV. A **compellative** is put in the **vocative**, § 289.

### ACCUSATIVE CASE.

#### *Objective Combinations.*

V. The **direct object** of a *verb* is put in the **accusative**, § 290.

VI. **Impersonals** of *appetite* or *passion* govern an **accusative** of the person suffering, § 290, *c*.

VII. Some verbs of **asking** and **teaching** may have **two accusatives**, one of a *person*, and the other of a *thing*, § 292.

*Quasi-predicative Combinations.*

VIII. The **subject** of an *infinitive* is put in the **accusative**, § 293.

IX. Some verbs of **making**, **naming**, and **regarding** may have **two accusatives** of the *same person* or *thing*, § 294.

*Adverbial Combinations.*

X. The **accusative** is used to express **extent** of time and space after verbs, § 295.

XI. The **accusative** is used with **prepositions**, § 295, *c*.

DATIVE AND INSTRUMENTAL CASES.

*Objective Combinations.*

XII. An object of **influence** or **interest** is put in the **dative**, § 297.

XIII. Verbs of **granting**, **refusing**, and **thanking** may take a **dative** and **genitive**, § 297, *d*.

XIV. Words of nearness and likeness govern the **dative**, § 299.

XV. The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote an object of **mastery**, § 300.

XVI. Some words of **separation** may take an object **from which** in the **dative** or **instrumental**, § 301.

*Adverbial Combinations.*

XVII. The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote **instrument**, **means**, **manner**, or **cause**, § 302.

XVIII. The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote **price**, § 302, *c*.

XIX. The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote **measure of difference**, § 302, *d*.

XX. The **instrumental** or **dative** may denote an object **sworn by**, § 302, *e*.

XXI. The **comparative** degree may govern a **dative**, § 303.

XXII. The **dative** may denote **time when** or **place where**, § 304.

XXIII. A **substantive** and **participle** in the **dative** may make an adverbial clause of **time**, **cause**, or **co-existence**, § 304, *d*.

XXIV. The **dative** with a preposition may denote an object of **influence** or **interest**, **association**, **mastery**, or **separation**; or an **instrumental**, **ablative**, or **locative adverbial relation**, § 305. **Instrumental**, §§ 306-308.

The **dative**, with or without *qr*, is sometimes used for the **genitive**.

## GENITIVE.

*Attributive Combinations.*

XXIV. An **attributive genitive** may denote the **possessor** or **author** of its *subject*, § 310.

XXV. An **attributive genitive** may denote the **subject** or **object** of a *verbal*, § 311.

XXVI. An **attributive genitive** may denote the **whole** of which its subject is **part**, § 312.

XXVII. An **attributive genitive** may denote a **characteristic** of its *subject*, § 313.

*Predicative Combinations.*

XXVIII. A **predicate** substantive may be put in the **genitive** to denote a **possessor** or **characteristic** of the subject, or the **whole** of which it is **part**, § 314.

*Objective Combinations.*

XXIX. The **genitive** may denote an **exciting** object, § 315.

XXX. Verbs of **asking**, **accusing**, **reminding**, may take an **accusative** and **genitive**, § 315, *a*.

XXXI. Verbs of **granting**, **refusing**, and **thanking** may take a **dative** and **genitive**, § 315, *b*.

XXXII. The **genitive** may denote an object affected in **part**, § 316.

XXXIII. The **genitive** may denote an **object of separation**, § 317.

XXXIV. The **genitive** may denote an **object of supremacy** or **use**, § 318.

XXXV. The **genitive** or **instrumental** may denote the **material** of which any thing is made or full, § 319.

XXXVI. The **genitive** in combination with *adjectives* may denote **measure**, § 320.

XXXVII. The **genitive** in combination with *adjectives* may denote the **part** or **relation** in which the quality is conceived, § 321.

*Adverbial Combinations.*

XXXVIII. The **genitive** may denote **by what way**, § 322.

XXXIX. The **genitive** may denote **time when**, § 323.

XL. The **genitive** may denote **means**, **cause**, or **manner**, §§ 324, 325.

XLI. The **genitive** with a preposition is sometimes used to denote **instrumental**, **ablative**, or **locative** adverbial relations, § 326.

## P R E P O S I T I O N S.

XLII. A **preposition** governs a **substantive**, and shows its **relation** to some other word in the clause, § 327.

## A D J E C T I V E S.

XLIII. An **adjective** agrees with its **substantive** in *gender, number, and case*, § 361.

XLIV. The **weak forms** are used after the **definite article, demonstratives, and possessives**; and often in attributive *vocatives, instrumentals, and genitives*. **Comparative forms** are all weak, § 362.

## P R O N O U N S.

XLV. A **substantive pronoun** agrees with its **antecedent** in *gender, number, and person*, § 365.

## A D V E R B S.

XLVI. **Adverbs** modify *verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs*, § 395.

## V E R B S.

*Agreement.*

XLVII. A **finite verb** agrees with its **subject** in *number and person*, § 401.

*Voices.*

XLVIII. The **active voice** is used to make the *agent* the *subject* of predication, § 403.

XLIX. The **passive voice** is used to make the *direct object* of the action the *subject* of predication, § 409.

*Tenses.*

L. **Principal tenses** depend on **principal tenses, historical on historical**, § 419.

*Modes.*

LI. The **indicative** is used in *assertions, questions, and assumptions* to express **simple predication**, § 420.

LII. The **subjunctive** is used to express **mere possibility, doubt, or wish**, § 421.

LIII. The **subjunctive** may be used by **attraction** in clauses **subordinate** to a subjunctive, § 422.



LIV. The **subjunctive** may be used in a **substantive** clause expressing something *said, asked, thought, wished, or done*, § 423.

LV. The **subjunctive** may be used in **indefinite adjective** clauses, § 427.

LVI. The **subjunctive** may be used in **indefinite adverbial** clauses of **place**, § 428.

LVII. The **subjunctive** may be used in adverbial clauses of **future** or *indefinite time*, § 429.

LVIII. The **subjunctive** may be used in clauses of **comparison** expressing that which is *imagined or indefinite*, or descriptive of a *force*.

LIX. The **subjunctive** is used in a **protasis** when proposed as **possible**, the *imperfect* when assumed as *unreal*, § 431.

LX. The **subjunctive** may be used in a **concessive** clause, § 432.

LXI. The **subjunctive** is used in clauses expressing **purpose**, § 433.

LXII. The **subjunctive** may express a **result**, § 434.

LXIII. The **potential** expresses **power**, liberty, permission, necessity, or duty, § 435.

LXIV. The **imperative** is used in **commands**, § 444.

XLV. The **infinitive** is construed as a **neuter noun**, § 446.

XLVI. The **gerund** after the **copula** expresses what *must, may, or should* be done, § 451.

LXVII. The **gerund** is sometimes used to describe or define a **noun**, § 452.

LXVIII. The **gerund** may be used as a **final object** to express an act on the first object, § 453.

LXIX. The **gerund** is used to denote the **purpose** of motion, § 454.

LXX. The **gerund** with an **adjective** may express an act for which any thing is *ready*, or in respect to which any thing is *pleasant, unpleasant, easy, worthy*, § 454.

LXXI. A **participle** agrees with its **substantive** in *gender, number, and case*, § 456.

LXXII. A **participle** may **govern the case** of its verb, § 456.

#### INTERJECTIONS.

LXXIII. The **interjection** has the syntax of a **clause**, § 461.

#### CONJUNCTIONS.

LXXIV. **Co-ordinate** conjunctions connect **sentences** or **like parts** of a sentence, § 462.

LXXV. A **subordinate conjunction** connects a **subordinate clause** and the **word** with which it combines, § 467.

## PART IV.

---

### PROSODY.

---

496. **Prosody** treats of the *rhythm* of Poetry.

497. **Rhythm** is an orderly succession of beats of sound.

This beat is called an *ictus* or *arsis*, and the syllable on which it falls is also called the *arsis*. The alternate remission of voice, and the syllables so uttered, are called the *thesis*.

498. **Feet** are the elementary combinations of syllables in verse.

(a.) Feet are named from the order and make of their *arsis* and *thesis*. A monosyllabic *arsis*+a monosyllabic *thesis* is a *trochee*; +a dissyllabic *thesis* is a *dactyle*, etc.

**Stress.** In Anglo-Saxon these depend on the *accented* syllables, which are determined by the stress they would, if the passage were prose, receive to distinguish them from other syllables of the same word, or from other words in the sentence.

Accent is therefore verbal, syntactical, or rhetorical. An unemphatic dissyllable may count as two unaccented syllables, like the second part of a compound. Secondary accents may take the *arsis*.

1. A **tonic** is a single accented syllable+a pause.
2. A **trochee** is an accented+an unaccented syllable.
3. A **dactyle** is an accented+two unaccented syllables.
4. A **pæon** is an accented+three unaccented syllables.
5. A **pyrrhic** is two unaccented syllables; a **spondee** is two accented; an **iambus** is an unaccented+an accented; an **anapæst** is two unaccented+an accented; a **tribrach** is three unaccented; a single unaccented syllable is called an **atonic**; and unaccented syllables preliminary to the normal feet of a line are called an **anacrusis** (striking up) or *base*.

(b.) **Time.** The time from each *ictus* to the next is the same in any section. It is not always filled up with sound. More time is given to an accented than an unaccented syllable.

(c.) **Pitch.** The English and most other Indo-Europeans raise the pitch with the verbal accent; the Scots lower it. With the rhetorical accent the pitch varies every way.

(d.) **Expression.** Feet of two syllables are most conversational; those of three are more ornate; those of one syllable are emphatic, like a *thud* or the blows of a hammer. The trochee, dactyle, and pæon, in which the accented syllable precedes, have more ease, grace, and vivacity. Those feet in which the accented syllable comes last have more decision, emphasis, and strength (Crosby, § 695). The Anglo-Saxon meters are trochaic and dactylic; the English oftener iambic and anapestic.

499. A **verse** is an elementary division of a poem.

It has a twofold nature; it is a series of feet, and also a series of words.

(a.) As a series of feet, it is a sing-song of regular ups and downs, such as children sometimes give in repeating rhymes.

As a series of words, each word and pause would be the same as if it were prose, as persons who do not catch the meter often read poetry.

The cantillation never is the same as the prose utterance; lines in which it should be would be prosaic.

The art of versification consists in so arranging the prose speech in the ideal framework of the line that the reader may adjust one to the other without obscuring either, and with continual happy variety.

(b.) The manner of adapting the *arsis* and *thesis* to the prose pronunciation is different in different languages. In Sanskrit, and classical Greek and Latin, the *arsis* was laid on syllables having a *long sound*, and variety was found in the play of the prose accent. In other languages, including modern Greek and Latin, the *arsis* is made to fall on *accented syllables*, and free play is given to long and short vowel sounds, and combinations of consonants. The Sanskrit and Greek varied farther from prose speech in the recitation of poetry than modern habits and ears allow. The Hindoos still repeat Sanskrit poetry in recitative.

500. Verses are named from the prevailing foot *trochaic*, *dactylic*, *iambic*, and *anapaestic*, etc.

Verses are named from the number of feet. A **monometer** is a verse of one foot; a **dimeter** of two; a **trimeter** of three; a **tetrameter** of four; a **pentameter** of five; a **hexameter** of six; a **heptameter** of seven; an **octometer** of eight.

(a.) A verse is *catalectic* when it wants a syllable, *acatalectic* when complete, *hypercatalectic* when redundant.

501. **Cæsura**.—Anglo-Saxon verses are made in two *sections* or **hemistichs**. The pause between these sections is called the **cæsura**. A *foot casura* is made by the cutting of a *foot* by the end of a *word*.

(a.) **Expression**. The character of versification depends much on the management of the cæsuras. When the weight of a verse precedes the cæsura, the movement has more vivacity; when it follows, more gravity.

502. **Rime**.—Rime is the rhythmical repetition of letters.

Nations who unite *arsis* and prose accent need to mark off their verses plainly. They do it by rime. Other nations shun rime.

1. When the riming letters begin their words, it is called **alliteration**.
2. When the accented vowels and following letters are alike, it is called **perfect rime** (= rhyme).
3. When only the consonants are alike, it is called **half rime**.
4. When the accented syllable is final, the rime is *single*; when one unaccented syllable follows, the rime is double; when two, it is *triple*.

(a.) **Line-rime** is between two words in the same section. **Final-rime** between the last words of two sections or verses.

503. **Alliteration** is the recurrence of the same initial sound in the first accented syllables of words.

1. **Consonants**.—The first initial consonant of alliterating syllables must be the same, the other consonants of a combination need not be;

*Beópulf*: *breme*::*blæd* (B., 18); *Caines*: *cynne*::*cpealm* (107); *Cristenrá*::*Cyriacus* (El., 1069); *cúde*::*cniht* (B., 372); *funden*::*frófre* (7); *frætpum*: *flet* (2054); *geong*: *geardum*::*God* (13); *geógode*::*gleáþóst* (C., 221, 1); *grumma*: *gæst* (B., 102); *heofenum*: *hlæste* (52); *hæledá*: *hryre*::*hpate* (2052); *hnitan*::*hringum* (Rid., 87, 4); *sóðlice*::*speotolan* (B., 141); *scearp*: *scyld*::*scád* (288); *scriðende*::*sceapum* (Trav., 135); *Scottá*::*scip* (Chr., 938); *þeód*::*þrym* (B., 2); *pén*: *plenco*::*præc* (338).

2. **Vowels.**—A perfect vowel alliteration demands different vowels: *isig*: *úlfús*::*ædelunges* (B., 33);—sometimes the same vowels repeat: *eorlá*: *eortan*::*eóper* (B., 248).

(a.) **sc, sp, or st** seldom alliterate without repeating the whole combination; but: *scyppend*::*scrifen* (B., 106); *spere*: *sprengde*::*sprang* (By., 137); *stræla*: *storm*::*strengum* (B., 3117).

(b.) Words in *ia-*, *ið-*, *iu-*, **Hie-**, alliterate with those in *g-*. They are mostly foreign proper names. See § 28, 34.

*Iacobes*::*gôde* (Psa., lxxxvi, 1, and often); *Iafet*: *gumrincum* (C., 1552); *Iordane*::*grêne* (C., 1921); *Iôbes*::*God* (Met., 26, 47); *gôda*: *geâsne*::*Iudas* (El., 924); *Iudéa*::*God* (El., 209); *gleáp*: *Gode*::*Iuliana* (Jul., 131, and often); *gomen*: *geardum*::*iu* (B., 2459), so frequently *iu*=*geô*, *giô* (formerly) and its compounds; *Hierusolme*::*God* (Ps. C., 50, 134); *gongad*: *gegnunga*::*Hierusalem* (Guth., 785); written *gold*: *Gerusalem*::*Iudéa* (C., 260, 11).

(c.) It is said that *þ* may alliterate with *s* by Dietrich (Haupt Zeit., x, 323, 362). No sure examples found. C., 287, 23, is a defective line.

504. A perfect Anglo-Saxon verse has three alliterating syllables, two in the first section, the other in the second.

**F**rum' | **s**ceaft' | **F**ir' | **a'** || **F**eor' | **r**an' | **r**ec' | **c**an' (B., 91).  
the origin of    men        from far    relate.

(a.) The repeated letter is called the *rime-letter*; the one in the second couplet the *chief-letter*, the others the *sub-letters*. The **F** of *feorran* in the line above is the *chief-letter*; the **F** in *frumsceaft* and *firá* the *sub-letters*.

(b.) One of the *sub-letters* is often wanting.

(c.) Four or more rime-letters are sometimes found.

**L**cânes . . **L**eôhte . . || . . **L**ête . . **L**ange (C., 258).

In pairs: *þæt' he* | *God'e* | *pol'd[e']* || *geong'ra'* | *peort'an'*,  
that he to God would    a vassal be (C., 277), where *g* and *p*  
both rime, and so often.

505. The Anglo-Saxons used line-rime and final-rime as an occasional grace of verse. See § 511.

506. Verse in which alliteration is essential, and other rime ornamental, is the prevailing form in Anglo-Saxon, Icelandic, Old Saxon. Specimens are found in Old High

German. Alliteration in these languages even ran into prose, and is one of the causes of the thoroughness with which the shifting of the initial consonants has affected the whole speech, § 41, B.

507. Verse with final rime, and with alliteration as an occasional grace, is the common form in English and the modern Germanic and Romanic languages. It is common in the Low-Latin verses of the Anglo-Saxon poets, and it is by many supposed to have spread from the Celtic.

### COMMON NARRATIVE VERSE.

508. Beda says of rhythm: "It is a modulated composition of words, not according to the laws of meter, but adapted in the number of its syllables to the judgment of the ear, as are the verses of our vulgar poets. \* \* \* Yet, for the most part, you may find, by a sort of chance, some rule in rhythm; but this is not from an artificial government of the syllables. It arises because the sound and the modulation lead to it. The vulgar poets effect this rustically, the skillful attain it by their skil."—Beda., 1, 57. These remarks on the native poets are doubtless applicable to their Anglo-Saxon verses as well as their Latin; and whatever general rules we may find running through these poems, we may expect to find many exceptional lines, which belong in their places only because they can be recited with a cadence somewhat like the verses around them.

509. The common narrative verse has four feet in each section.

A. 1. An *arsis* falls on every prose accent, § 15, and the last syllable of every section. But note contractions below, 7.

2. At least one *arsis* on a primary accent, or two on other syllables follow the chief alliterating letter, § 504.

3. An *arsis* *should* fall on the former of two unaccented syllables after an accented long (the vowel long or followed by two consonants), and on the latter after an accented short.

*scýld'* | *um'* | *bí'scer'e* | *de'*, || *scýnd'* | *an'* | *ge'ner'e* | *de'* (Rime Song, 84).

4. An *arsis* *should not* fall on an unaccented proper prefix (*á-*, *be-*, *ge-*, etc., § 15), or proclitic monosyllables (*be*, *se*, *he*, etc.), or short endings of dissyllabic particles (*nefne*, *odde*, *þonne*, etc.), or short tense-endings between two accented shorts in the same section.

5. An *arsis* *may* fall on a long, on a short between two accents (after a long frequent, after a short, less so), on the former of two unaccented shorts.

*grorn'* | *torn'* | *græf'* | *ed'*, || *græft'* | *ræft'* | *hæf'* | *ed'* (Rime Song, 66).

*spyle'e* | *gi'* | *gant'* | *ás'* || *há' pid* | *God'e* | *punn'* | *on'* (B., 113).

*nip'e'* | *niht'* | *peard'* || *nyd'e'* | *sceol'* | *de'* (C., 185, 1).

*porð'* | *purð'* | *i'* | *an'*. || *Veól'* | *him'* | *on'* | *inn'* | *an'* (C., 353).

*burh'* | *tum'* | *bre'* | *de'* (C., 2840). Rare with short penult of trisyllable.

B. 6. The *thesis* is mute or monosyllabic; but syncope, elision, synizesis, or synalæpha is often needed to reduce two syllables.

7. An *anacrusis* may introduce any section. It is of one syllable, rarely two, sometimes apparently three, with the same contractions as the *thesis*.

*Lét'on* | *þ(á)* | *of'er* | *fif'el* | *pæg'* || *fám'i'ge* | *scrít'an'* (El., 237).

*puld'or-* | *cyn'ing'es'* | *porð'* | *ge* | *peot'an* | *há' há'* | *pút'(i)gan* | *þrý'* (An., 802).

*spic'od,(e)* | *ymb'* | *há'* | *sáp'le'* || *þe* | *hir'e* | *ær'* | *há'* | *sien'on* | *láh'* (C., 607).

Synizesis of *-anne*, *-lic*, *-scipe*, *þenden*, and the like. *Synalæpha* of *ge*, *þe*, and the like.

*sorh' is* | *mé' tô* | *secg'anne'* || *on' | sef'an | mín'um'* (B., 473).

*prætlíc'ne* | *pund'or* | *-madd'um'* || (B., 2174).

*fyrd'* | *-sear'o* | *fús' | lícu'* || (B., 232).

*eahl'* | *ô don* | *eorl' -scipe'* || (B., 3174).

*pes'an* | *þend'en* | *ic | peald'e'* || (B., 1859).

*þegn'ás* | *synd'on* | *ge | -hpær'e'* || (B., 1230).

*þár'â þe* | *pið' spâ* | *mic' | lum'* || (C., 2095).

*þæt næfre* | *Grend'el' spâ* | *fel'a'* || *gry'ráð ge | frem'e | de'* (B., 591).

So we find *hpædere* (B., 573), dissyllabic; *hine* (B., 688), *ofer* (B., 1273), monosyllabic; and many anomalous slurs in the thesis or anacrusis.

8. The order of the feet is free, varying with the sense. In later poetry, as more particles are used, the fuller thesis grows more common.

9. The Anglo-Saxons like to end a sentence at the cæsura. So Chaucer and his French masters stop at the end of the first line of a rhyming couplet. So Milton says that "true musical delight" is to be found in having the sense "variously drawn out from one verse into another."

10. The two alliterating feet in the first section, and the corresponding pair in the second section, are chief feet. Some read all the rest as thesis.

510. Irregular sections are found with three feet, or two.

1. Sections with contracted words where the full form would complete the four feet.

*heân hûses* = *heâ' | han'* | *hû' | scs'* (B., 116).

*deâdpíc seôn* = *deâð' | pic'* | *seo' | han'* (B., 1275).

2. Sections with three feet and a thesis:

*prym' | (ge) | -frun' | on'* (B., 2).

*lif' | eác' | (ge) | sceôp'* (B., 97).

Heyne finds in *Beowulf* feet of this kind with *â*-, *æt*-, *be*-, *for*-, *ge*-, *of*-, *on*-, *to*-, *þurh*-. Similar sections with proclitic particles are found: *men' | (ne) | cunn' | on'* (B., 50); *(be) | ýð' | láf' | e'* (B., 566); *Lêl' | (se) | heard' | a'* (B., 2977); *(þe) | him' | þæt' | pið'* (C., 707).

3. Sections with Proper Names. Foreign Names are irregular:

*Sem' | and' | Cham' | (C., 1551)*, and so often.

4. Sections with two feet and a thesis:

*man' | (ge) | þeôn'* (B., 25). *Loth' | (on) | fôu'* (C., 1938).

511. Rhyme is found occasionally in most Anglo-Saxon poems. A few contain rhyming passages of some length. One has been found which is plainly a Task Poem to display riming skill. All sorts of rimes are crowded together in it. It has eighty-seven verses.

#### LINE-RIME.

**Half-rime:** *sâr' | and' | sor' | ge'*; || *sûsl' | þrôp' | ed' | on'*,

pain and sorrow; sulphur suffered they (C., 75).

**Perfect-rime :**

Single: *fláh' | máh' | flít'ed', || flán' | mán' | hpít'ed',* [62].  
 foul fiend fighteth, darts the devil whetteth (Rime-song,  
*gást'á' | peard'um'.* || *Hæfild'on' | gleám' and | dreám',*  
 They had light and joy (C.,

Double: *frôð'ne' and | gôð'ne' || fæd'er | Un'pên'es',* [12].  
 wise and good father of Unwen (Trav., 114).

Triple: *fer'ed'e' and | ner'e'de'.* || *Fíf'tén'a' | stód'—,*  
 (God) led and saved (C., 1397).

**FINAL-RIME.**

Half-rime: *spá' | líf' | spá' | deað't', || spá' him | leôf're' | bið't'.*  
 either life or death, as to him liefer be (Ex.,  
 37, 20; Crist., 596, and a riming passage).

**Perfect-rime :**

Single: *né' | forst'es' | fnæst', || né' | fýr'es' blæst',*  
 no frost's rage, nor fire's blast,

Double: *ne' hægl'es' | hryr'e', || ne' hrím'es' | dryr'e',*  
 nor hail's fall, nor rime's descent (Phœnix, 15,  
 16; Ex., 198, 25, where see more).

Triple: *hlúd'e' | hlyn'e'de', || hleód'or' | dyn'e'de',*  
 (The harp) loud sounded; the sound dinned (Rime-song, 28).

**LONG NARRATIVE VERSE.**

512. The common narrative verse is varied by occasional passages in longer verses. The alliteration and general structure of the long verse is the same as of the common; but the length of the section is six feet. Feet are oftenest added between the two alliterating syllables of the first section, and before the alliterating syllable of the second section.

*Spá' | cpæd' | snott'or on | môð'e', ||*  
*ge) sæt' | him' | sund'or' æt | rûn'e'. ||*  
*Til' bið | se'þe his | treôp'e' ge|heald'ed': ||*  
*ne) sceal' | næf're his | torn' tô | ryc'e|ne'*  
*beorn' | of' his | breôst'um' â|eýð'an',*  
*nemð'e hé | ær' þá | bót'e' | cunn'e',*  
*eorl' | mid' | eln'ê' ge|fremm'an':*  
*pel' bið | þam' þe him | ár'e' | sêc'ed',*  
*fróf're' tô | Fæd'er' on | heof'on'um',*  
*þær' ús' | eal' seô | fæst'nung | stond'ed' (Wanderer, 111+).*

(a.) Sometimes a section of four feet is coupled with one of six :

*ge) pinn'es' | pið' | heor'â | palð'end' || pið'e' | þol'iad' (C., 323).*

(b.) Four or more alliterative letters are found oftener than in common verse. Three seldom fail. A secondary weak alliteration is sometimes found in one of the sections.

(c.) This verse is rather a variety of the Common Narrative than another kind.

513. The Common Narrative is the regular Old Germanic verse. Rules 1, 2, 3, 4, 6, 7, of § 509, are rules of that verse. In the 5th the Anglo-Saxon uses greater freedom. It also corresponds with the Old Norse *fornyrðalag*. In it Old English alliterating poems are written.

*In' a | som'er | ses'|on' || whan) soft' | was' the | sonn'|e'*  
*I) shop'e | me' in | shroud'|es' || as) I' a | shep'e | wer'|e'*  
*In) hab'ite | as' an | her'e|mute' || un)hol'|y' of | work'|es'*  
*Went' | wyd'e | m' his | world' || wond' |res' to | her'|e'.*  
*Ac) on' a | May' | morn' yng'|e' || on) Mal'|uern'e | hull'|es'*  
*Me' by|fel' a | fer|ly' || of) fair'|y' me | thouȝt'|e'.*

Piers the Plowman, 1-6.

a.) The *anacrusis* has a tendency to unite with the following accented syllable, and start an *iambic* or *anapæstic* movement. The change of inflection endings for prepositions and auxiliaries has also favored the same movement. In Old English it often runs through the verses. See Final perfect-rime, § 511.

### ALLITERATIVE PROSE.

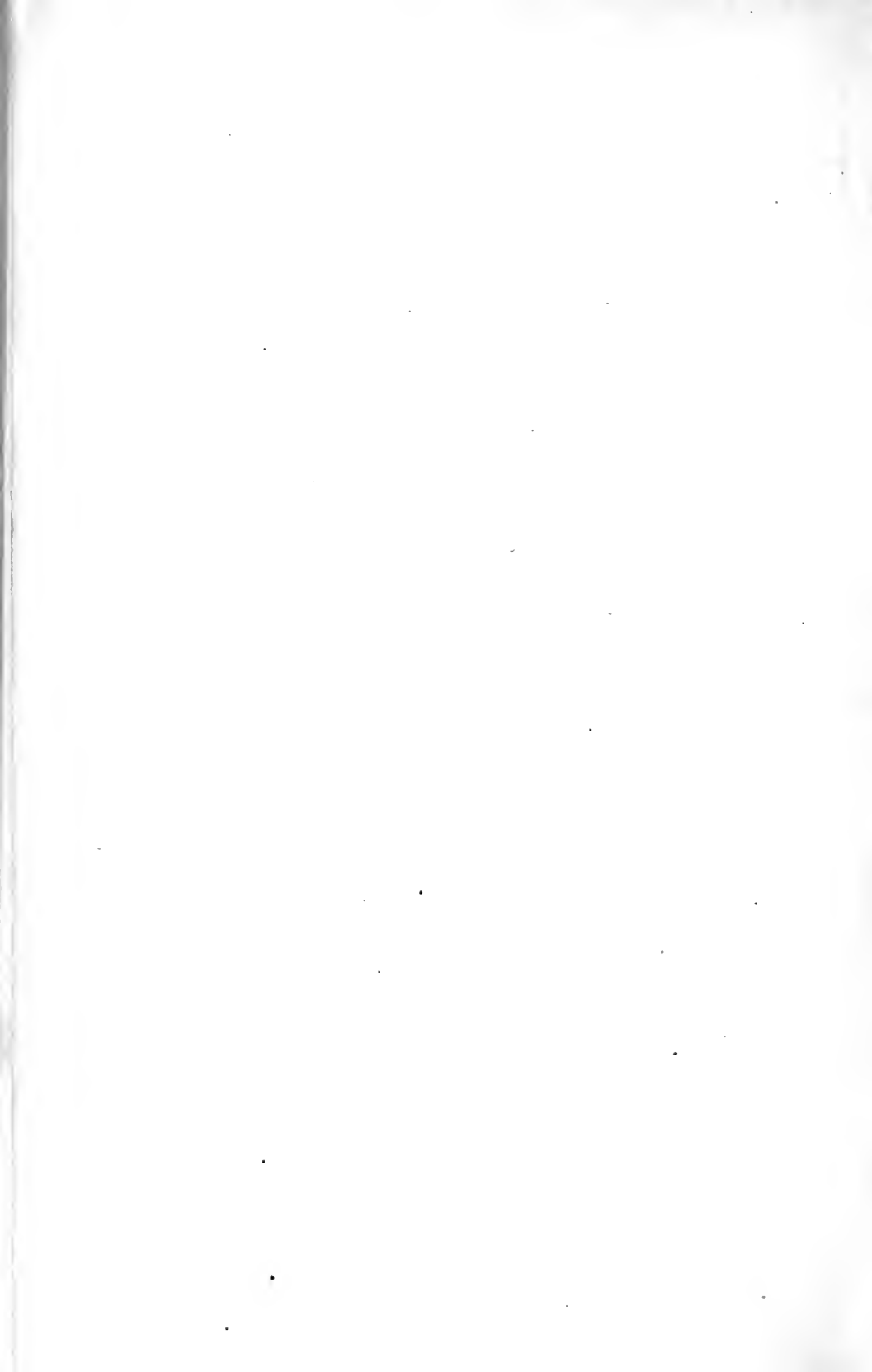
514. Some of the Anglo-Saxon prose has a striking rhythm, and frequent alliteration, though not divided by it into verses. Some of the Homilies of Ælfric are so written (St. Cuthbert). Parts of the Chronicle have mixed line-rime and alliteration.

515. Verses with the same general form as the Anglo-Saxon continued to be written in English to the middle of the fifteenth century. Alliteration is still found as an ornament of our poetry, and the old dactylic cadence runs through all racy Anglo-Saxon English style.

So they went | up to the | Mountains || to be|hold the | gardens and | orchards,  
 The | vineyards and | fountains of | water; || where | also they | drank and | washed themselves,  
 And did | freely | eat of the | vineyards. || Now there | were on the | tops of those | Mountains,  
 Shepherds feeding their flocks; and they stood by the highway side.  
 The pilgrims therefore went to them, and leaning upon their staffs,  
 As is common with weary pilgrims, when they stand to talk with any by the way,  
 They asked, Whose Delectable Mountains are these?  
 And whose be the sheep, that feed upon them?—BUNYAN, *Pilgrim's Progress*.









UNIVERSITY OF CALIFORNIA LIBRARY  
BERKELEY

Return to desk from which borrowed.  
This book is DUE on the last date stamped below.

|                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| DEC 5 1947                      | REC'D LD                   |
| 28 Apr '50 FF                   | APR 9 1963                 |
| 2 Jun '55 AM                    | JUL 1 1963                 |
| MAY 1963                        | REC'D LD                   |
| 30 Jul '56 CT                   | JUL 13 '65 -4 PM           |
| JUL 15 1963 LD                  | JUL 1 1963                 |
| 17 Nov '62 JC                   | REC'D LD JUL 6 '73-3 PM 39 |
| JAN 10 1963                     | MAR 08 1989                |
| LD 21-100 194 Apr '68 385 6)476 | AUTO DISC DEC 03 '88       |

U.C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C006771151

86282

Handwritten text in a cursive script, likely Persian or Urdu, covering the majority of the page. The text is densely packed and written diagonally across the page.

Handwritten text in a cursive script, likely Persian or Urdu, located on the right side of the page. The text is less dense than the main body and appears to be a continuation or a separate section.